

BBC

FOCUS 4

SECOND EDITION

STUDENT'S BOOK

SUE KAY / VAUGHAN JONES / DANIEL BRAYSHAW
BARTOŚZ MICHAŁOWSKI / BEATA TRAPNELL / DEAN RUSSELL



002-50-70-0078 02/02+

	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR	LISTENING
1 Live and learn BBC  61 p. 132 Learning a new skill	pp. 4–5 Education; phrasal verbs; describing teachers and students; collocations Reading: Degree courses you didn't know existed pp. 16–17 Word list	p. 6 Present and past habits GRAMMAR ANIMATION  p. 133 FOCUS VLOG  62 63	p. 7 Memory Vocabulary: Memory Exam Focus: Matching Pronunciation Focus: Sounds and spelling – vowels
2 Human nature BBC  65 p. 134 Nature or nurture?	pp. 20–21 People; personality adjectives; compound adjectives; describing personality Quiz: Know yourself – personality test pp. 32–33 Word list	p. 22 Past Perfect Simple and Continuous GRAMMAR ANIMATION  66	p. 23 An interview with a neuroscientist Vocabulary: Relationship phrases Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation Focus: Sounds and spelling – consonants
3 Living spaces BBC  69 p. 136 Smog-free Mexico City	pp. 36–37 Landscape features; prepositions describing location; describing places; in the city Reading: A small city with big ideas pp. 48–49 Word list	p. 38 Future forms including the Future Perfect Continuous GRAMMAR ANIMATION  p. 137 FOCUS VLOG  610 611	p. 39 Places to live Vocabulary: Collocations and compound nouns Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation Focus: Sentence stress – future question forms
4 Shopping around BBC  614 p. 138 Young entrepreneurs	pp. 52–53 Shopping; phrasal verbs; shopping collocations; verb phrases Reading: 6 ways to buy clothes responsibly pp. 64–65 Word list	p. 54 Question tags and reply questions GRAMMAR ANIMATION  615	p. 55 Market trading Vocabulary: Noun phrases Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation Focus: Long and short vowel sounds
5 Off to work BBC  619 p. 140 Feeling like a leader	pp. 68–69 Work; expressions to do with work; phrasal verbs; adjectives from nouns Reading: Eat that frog! pp. 80–81 Word list	p. 70 Reported speech GRAMMAR ANIMATION  p. 141 FOCUS VLOG  620 621	p. 71 The future of work Vocabulary: Phrases describing change Exam Focus: Matching Pronunciation Focus: Word pairs – nouns and verbs; word stress
6 A matter of fact BBC  625 p. 142 Is social media killing creativity?	pp. 84–85 The media; truth and falsehood; adjective–noun collocations; adverbs Reading: Fake news pp. 96–97 Word list	p. 86 Conditional clauses – alternatives to <i>if</i> GRAMMAR ANIMATION  p. 143 FOCUS VLOG  626 627	p. 87 A street artist Vocabulary: Collocations Exam Focus: Note completion Pronunciation Focus: Word stress in four-syllable words
7 It's not rocket science! BBC  629 p. 144 Blowing in the wind	pp. 100–101 Science; scientific research; prepositions after verbs and nouns; words in science Reading: Female scientists changing the world pp. 112–113 Word list	p. 102 Advanced passive forms GRAMMAR ANIMATION  p. 145 FOCUS VLOG  630 631	p. 103 Problems with technology Vocabulary: Phrasal verbs Exam Focus: Multiple choice Pronunciation Focus: Word stress in word families
8 Costing the earth BBC  635 p. 146 The Global Seed Vault	pp. 116–117 Nature; environmental issues; landscapes; animals Listening: The life journey of a plastic bottle pp. 128–129 Word list	p. 118 Unreal past and regrets – <i>wish, if only, it's time, would rather</i> GRAMMAR ANIMATION  p. 147 FOCUS VLOG  636 637	p. 119 Intelligent animals Vocabulary: Word building Exam Focus: Note completion Pronunciation Focus: Vowel and consonant minimal pairs

pp. 132–147 **Video Worksheets** pp. 148–171 **Grammar** and **Use of English** Reference and practice

WORD STORE BOOKLET Word Stores 1–8, Use of English, Prepositions, Phrasal Verbs, Word building

READING	GRAMMAR	SPEAKING	USE OF ENGLISH	WRITING	FOCUS REVIEW
pp. 8–9 Hidden talents Vocabulary: Collocations; expressions with <i>brain</i> Exam Focus: Gapped text	p. 10 Verb patterns GRAMMAR  64	p. 11 Describing a photo	pp. 12–13 Register – formal and informal language Key word transformation	pp. 14–15 A CV and a covering email Language Focus: Useful phrases for a CV and a covering email	pp. 18–19
pp. 24–25 <i>Me Before You</i> by Jojo Moyes (book extract) Vocabulary: Physical actions; ways of looking Exam Focus: Multiple choice	p. 26 Relative clauses GRAMMAR  p. 135 FOCUS VLOG  67 68	p. 27 Telling a personal anecdote	pp. 28–29 Collocations Open cloze Key word transformation	pp. 30–31 An article Language Focus: Participle clauses to express reason	pp. 34–35
pp. 40–41 I am 16 and live alone in the wilderness Vocabulary: Describing houses; idiomatic expressions Exam Focus: Gapped text	p. 42 Quantifiers GRAMMAR  12	p. 43 Organising a place to live; suggesting, agreeing to and objecting to a course of action ROLE-PLAY  13	pp. 44–45 Determiners Key word transformation Sentence formation	pp. 46–47 A 'for and against' essay Language Focus: Expressing concession	pp. 50–51
pp. 56–57 Earning and raising money Vocabulary: Making and spending money; being rich and poor Exam Focus: Matching	p. 58 Present and past modal structures GRAMMAR  16	p. 59 Making and justifying choices; evaluating options ROLE-PLAY  17	pp. 60–61 Modality – alternative structures Open cloze Multiple choice cloze p. 139 FOCUS VLOG  18	pp. 62–63 A formal email – describing an incident and making a complaint Language Focus: Expressing cause and result	pp. 66–67
pp. 72–73 What if you don't have one dream job? Vocabulary: Choosing a career; verb–noun collocations Exam Focus: Multiple choice	p. 74 Reporting verbs GRAMMAR  22	p. 75 Problem solving; expressing annoyance ROLE-PLAY  23 24	pp. 76–77 Phrasal verbs – advanced points Open cloze	pp. 78–79 An opinion essay Language Focus: Expressing certainty and describing consequences	pp. 82–83
pp. 88–89 A short history of the selfie Vocabulary: Verbs and verb phrases; photography Exam Focus: Note completion	p. 90 Mixed conditionals GRAMMAR  28	p. 91 Discussing ethical issues; expressing opinions tentatively and adding comments	pp. 92–93 Compound nouns and adjectives Key word transformation Multiple choice cloze	pp. 94–95 A review of a TV series Language Focus: Adjectives for reviews	pp. 98–99
pp. 104–105 The human microbiome; Being too clean Vocabulary: Medical conditions; word families Exam Focus: Open-ended questions	p. 106 Passive reporting structures GRAMMAR  32	p. 107 Clarification ROLE-PLAY  33 34	pp. 108–109 Easily confused words Cloze Multiple choice	pp. 110–111 A narrative Language Focus: Speech verbs	pp. 114–115
pp. 120–121 Disaster movies Vocabulary: Severe weather and natural disasters; collocations Exam Focus: Matching	p. 122 Emphasis – cleft sentences and inversion GRAMMAR  38	p. 123 Giving a presentation	pp. 124–125 Prefixes Word formation Cloze Key word transformation	pp. 126–127 A letter to an editor Language Focus: Formal language – review; expressing comparison and contrast	pp. 130–131

p. 172 Pronouns and numerals

p. 173 Irregular verbs

Education • phrasal verbs • describing teachers and students • collocations

I can talk about further education, university courses and educational issues.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the words to make collocations.

1 university/bachelor's/master's

2 attend/have/skip

3 communication/language/people

4 fail/pass/take

5 further/higher/private

6 long/rewarding/successful

☒ b

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

a career

b degree

c education

d exams

e lessons

f skills

2 Write two true sentences and a false one using collocations in Exercise 1. Can your partner guess which one is false?

I'd like to do a master's degree in Business Studies.

3 SPEAKING Look at some traditional fields of study on the signpost. What are the three most/least appealing subjects? Which way would you go? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

4 Read the information on the webpage. Which degree would you like to do the most?

Architecture

Economics

Engineering

Mathematics

Humanities

Law

?

Business Administration

History

Medicine

Modern Languages

Philosophy

Sociology

DEGREE COURSES YOU DIDN'T KNOW EXISTED

Is this you?

You're keen to **go on to** higher education. But none of the traditional subjects appeal.

Don't worry, these days you can

5 **get a degree** in most things. You

like baking? You can **major in**

baking technology management.

More inclined towards fashion?

How about **writing a dissertation** on

10 handbag and accessories design? If

you **have a passion** for something,

you can usually find a course

that specialises in your area.

Here are three courses you never

15 knew existed.

Live and learn

Educating the mind without educating the heart is no education at all.

Aristotle

BBC



LEARNING A NEW SKILL

1 Watch the BBC video.
For the worksheet, go to page 132.

- 5 1.2 Listen to a father and daughter discussing the webpage. What does the daughter find out about her father?
- 6 1.2 Listen again and choose the correct option. Use a dictionary if necessary.
- 1 The daughter is *gifted* / *weak*.
 - 2 The daughter is *lazy* / *a swot* compared to her father.
 - 3 The father couldn't *settle down* / *make friends* in class.
 - 4 The father was *disruptive* / *self-disciplined*.
 - 5 The father nearly *got expelled* / *got a scholarship*.
 - 6 The father had *lenient* / *strict* teachers.
 - 7 The father's teachers *gave up on* / *supported* him.
 - 8 The father was *dyslexic* / *a bully*.
 - 9 The father *did well* / *fell behind* at school.
 - 10 The father *scraped through* / *failed* his exams.
- 7 **SPEAKING** What do you know about your parents' education? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

1 THE SCIENCE OF SUPERHEROES

University of California, USA

- This course is a new, creative way to learn physics. Through studying heroes and villains, you'll learn the answers to important real-life questions such as what the chemical composition of Captain America's armour is. In other words, you'll attend lectures on the real principles of physics, but they'll be given in a more engaging and accessible way.

2 SURF SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

University of Plymouth, UK

- The university website warns that 'You will not be taught how to surf, and it is important to realise that this is an academic course.' That means you don't graduate because you can catch a good wave – you have to sit exams here! Core modules include ecology and scientific aspects of health, fitness and sports nutrition.

3 THE BEATLES, POPULAR MUSIC AND SOCIETY

Liverpool Hope University, UK

- If you enrol on this course, you'll deepen your knowledge of the band's music as well as how it was influenced by the city of Liverpool. The Beatles not only changed the world of music, but they also had a big impact on youth culture and fashion. This course will be of interest to those working in the field of cultural studies and if you want to go into the music industry.

WORD STORE 1A Phrasal verbs

- 8 1.3 Complete WORD STORE 1A with the base form of the phrasal verbs in red in the text and in Exercise 6. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 9 **SPEAKING** Complete the questions with the prepositions in WORD STORE 1A. Ask and answer the questions.
- 1 How often do you only just scrape _____ exams?
 - 2 Have you ever given _____ anything that was important to you?
 - 3 Have you ever fallen _____ at school because of illness or some other issue?
 - 4 If you go _____ university, what subjects do you think you will major _____?
 - 5 In what subject or lesson do you find it most difficult to settle _____ and concentrate?
 - 6 What profession would you like to go _____?

WORD STORE 1B Describing teachers and students

- 10 1.4 Complete WORD STORE 1B with the underlined words in Exercise 6. Use definitions 1–8 to complete the crossword and find the mystery word. Then listen, check and repeat. Which words are used more often to describe a student and which ones to describe a teacher?
- 11 Complete the sentences with the words in WORD STORE 1B.
- 1 Mr Morris is a _____ teacher. He doesn't mind if you hand your homework in late.
 - 2 Jackie is a _____. She spends all her time studying and always gets top marks.
 - 3 Miss Nelmes is very _____. She demands absolute silence in her lessons.
 - 4 May is musically _____. She can play almost any instrument and has a beautiful voice.
 - 5 Barry is quite _____ in class. He shouts out and generally causes problems.
 - 6 Mike is very _____. He always does his homework as soon as he gets home.

WORD STORE 1C Collocations

- 12 1.5 Complete WORD STORE 1C with the base form of the verbs highlighted in the text and in Exercise 6. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 13 Complete the sentences with a suitable noun in WORD STORE 1C. Do you agree or disagree with them?
- 1 Don't enrol on a university _____ unless you have a _____ for it.
 - 2 Sitting _____ is much more stressful than writing a _____.
 - 3 Getting a _____ to study at a foreign university is an impossible dream.
 - 4 Working in the _____ of science and technology is better than being an artist.
 - 5 You don't have to attend _____ to deepen your _____. Just google everything.

- Read about Gillian Lynne's education. What do you think Gillian did when her mum and the psychologist left the room?
- 1.6 **SPEAKING** Listen to two friends talking about Gillian's story and check your ideas in Exercise 1. Discuss what this story teaches us about educating children.
- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Complete the examples in the table using the verb forms in blue in the text in Exercise 1.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 2

Present and past habits

- You can use the **Present Simple** and the **Past Simple** to talk about habits. You also use the Past Simple to talk about single past actions.
She ¹ used to fail all her exams.
Life ² _____ so good.
- You can use **used to** to talk about regular past actions that don't happen anymore or past states that are no longer true.
She ³ _____ and move around instead of listening to the teacher.
Her teachers ⁴ _____ about her disruptive behaviour.
Note: You don't usually ask questions with this use of *will* and *would*.
- You can use the **Present Continuous** or **Past Continuous** with **always** to stress the repetitiveness of an action or to show your annoyance.
She ⁵ _____ people.
She ⁶ _____ and handing in her homework late.

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use *would* where possible. If *would* is not possible, use *used to*. If *used to* is not possible, use the Past Simple.
1 This school used to be (be) smaller than it is now.
2 Mum _____ (take) me to school every day.
3 I _____ (not like) going to school.
4 I _____ (hate) having school lunches.
5 I _____ (go) swimming every week.
6 I _____ (go) on a school trip to England.

- SPEAKING** Ask and answer questions based on the sentences in Exercise 4. Use *used to* or the Past Simple.

1 Did this school use to be smaller than it is now?

6

The right education

Ken Robinson is an educationalist. In his book, *The Element*, he interviews people who have made a successful living doing what they love. This is Gillian Lynne's story.

- Gillian had a successful career in the theatre, but life didn't use to be so good. When she was eight her schoolwork was a disaster, her handwriting was awful, and she used to fail all her exams. Her teachers would complain about her disruptive behaviour: she was always fidgeting and handing in her homework late. They told her mother that she had a learning disorder. So Gillian's mother took her to see a psychologist and listed some of the problems: she never pays attention in class – she'll get up and move around instead of listening to the teacher; she's always disturbing people and her homework's always late. Finally, the doctor turned to Gillian and said, 'Gillian, I need to speak to your mother privately now. Don't worry. We won't be long.' As they left the room, he turned on the radio on his desk ...



- Write sentences comparing your routine at primary school and now. Compare your sentences with a partner. Who has changed the most?

	Primary school	Now
1 For breakfast	I'd _____	I'll _____
2 Before setting off for school	I'd _____	I'll _____
3 At break time	I'd _____	I'll _____
4 At lunchtime	I'd _____	I'll _____
5 After school	I'd _____	I'll _____
6 Before going to bed	I'd _____	I'll _____

1 For breakfast, I'd have cereal with milk in primary school, but now I'll just have a piece of toast.

- Complete the sentences about annoying habits. Use one verb from the box to complete both sentences in each example. Use the Present and Past Continuous with *always*.

(check chew lose talk tell)

- Before, Tim was always chewing the end of his pen. Now, he's always chewing gum.
- Before, Julie _____ her make-up. Now, she _____ her phone.
- Before, Sam _____ about himself. Now, he _____ about his new friends.
- Before, Dave _____ his temper. Now, he _____ his keys.
- Before, Mary _____ lies. Now, she _____ people what to do.

- List the habits in Exercise 7 from the least to the most annoying. Compare your ideas with a partner. Do you know people who had or have any of these habits?

FOCUS VLOG 3 About daily routines

3 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 133.

1.3

LISTENING

Matching

I can identify specific information in a detailed spoken dialogue about memory.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss how good you are at remembering the different things in the box.

(dates and times English words faces
items on a shopping list names song lyrics)

- 2 **1.7** Read about two methods of memorising a shopping list. Choose the best heading for each method. There are three extra headings. Then listen and check.

- A Use your imagination
B Make up a dramatic narrative
C Learn how to give a speech
D Imagine what each item tastes like
E Visualise the items in a familiar place

MEMORY TIPS

Greek philosopher Socrates famously said 'Learning is remembering'. So, how can we improve our memory? The key is to use your imagination. Here are two ways of remembering a shopping list of eight items.

- 1 _ First, imagine a huge loaf of bread, and suddenly, coffee squirts out of the top and makes a fountain of dark brown liquid. After a few seconds, the dark brown changes to white yoghurt. The yoghurt forms a river and it goes under a bridge – the bridge is a steak. Some black and green olives are crossing the bridge and some big brown eggs are chasing them. The olives hide behind a big carton of orange juice. You lift an olive to your mouth to eat and it turns into an onion which tastes horrible. That's it. You've reached the end.

- 2 _ Think of your home and get a mental image of the rooms in your house. Then, put the items on the list, one by one, in specific places in the rooms. For instance, you imagine the bread on the doormat as you come in the door. Then you go into the living room and the coffee is in front of the television, the yoghurt is on the sofa and the steak is stuck to the mirror on a wall. And so on, it's all about making personal associations ... you get the idea. This method isn't just useful for memorising shopping lists. Some famous people have used it to give a speech without using notes.

- 3 **SPEAKING** Test your partner's memory. Follow the instructions to complete the task.

- Write down a shopping list of eight items and give it to your partner.
- Study your partner's list for sixty seconds using one of the methods in Exercise 2.
- Take it in turns to recall your list. Did the tip help?

EXAM FOCUS Matching

- 4 **1.8** Listen to four people talking about memory. Match statements A–E with speakers 1–4. There is one extra statement.

Speaker 1: ☐ Speaker 2: ☐ Speaker 3: ☐ Speaker 4: ☐

The speaker ...

- A refers to someone who is incapable of forgetting anything.
B wanted a family member to confirm whether his/her memory was correct.
C disagrees with someone about how they keep a good memory.
D wishes they could forget witnessing a crime.
E can identify someone after seeing them for a short while.

- 5 **1.8** Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 What is Speaker 1's earliest memory?
2 Does Speaker 2's grandfather have trouble remembering things?
3 Can Speaker 3 remember names and faces well?
4 Does Speaker 4 have a good memory?

WORD STORE 1D Memory

- 6 **1.9** Complete WORD STORE 1D with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 7 **SPEAKING** Complete the questions with the words in WORD STORE 1D. Then ask and answer the questions.

- 1 What's the most _____ memory you have from your childhood? Why do you think you remember it so well?
2 Do you have a photographic _____? Would you like to?
3 Have you ever heard about anyone who's _____ their memory and couldn't remember anything?
4 If people can't remember certain events, are there ways to _____ their memory and help them remember?
5 What do you have the most terrible memory _____? Names? Phone numbers? Anything else?
6 Do you know anyone who has a memory like a _____? Is it difficult to be around such people?

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 8 **1.10** Listen and repeat the words in the box. Do any of the words have the same vowel sound?

(bread clear learn mean steak wear)

- 9 **1.11** Add the words from Exercise 8 to the table. Then listen, check and repeat.

Sound	Typical spelling	Occasional spelling
/i:/	need detail ¹ <u>mean</u>	piece
/ɪə/	here career ² _____	
/ɜ:/	reserved squirt turn	³ _____
/e/	egg	⁴ _____
/eɪ/	made detail pay	⁵ _____
/eə/	pair rare	⁶ _____



READING

Gapped text

I can infer unstated information and understand relationships between ideas in a descriptive text.

1 **SPEAKING** How much do you know about your brain? Do the quiz on page 9 and discuss your ideas with a partner.

2 **1.12** Listen and check your answers.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1 What hidden talents did the five people discover?
- 2 What caused them to discover their hidden talents?
- 3 How do some experts explain the phenomenon?

EXAM FOCUS Gapped text

4 Read the text again. Complete gaps 1–4 with sentences A–E. There is one extra sentence.

- A After a year, he realised he had acquired extraordinary memory skills and could recall the day of the week of any given date.
- B Some of us are athletic, some of us mathematical, some of us artistic, and others musical; some of us are just good, while some are exceptional.
- C We even know where many of the different brain functions, such as memory, sight and smell, are located.
- D However, their existence has led some researchers to argue that there is an undiscovered genius within all of us.
- E Soon afterwards, he noticed that his vision had changed. He also realised that he had developed remarkable mathematical abilities.

WORD STORE 1E Collocations

5 **1.14** Complete WORD STORE 1E with the base form of the verbs in blue in the text. Explain the difference, if any, between the pairs of collocations. Then listen, check and repeat.

6 Complete the questions with the correct form of the verbs in WORD STORE 1E. Then answer the questions.

- 1 What aspects of the human brain _____ a mystery?
- 2 Where was Jason Padgett when he was attacked and _____ unconscious?
- 3 How common is it for savants to lose the new skills they have _____?
- 4 Why did Ben McMahon _____ a coma?
- 5 What was Orlando Serrell doing when he _____ a head injury?
- 6 Where was Tony Cicoria when he _____ by lightning?
- 7 When did Heather Thompson first _____ an urge to paint?
- 8 Did she lose _____ when it happened?

7 **SPEAKING** If you could discover your hidden talent, what would you like that talent to be? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

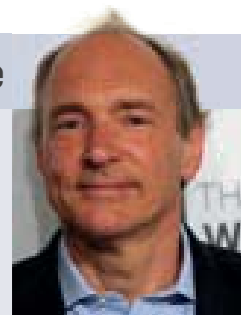
8 **1.15** Complete the expressions with the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then listen, check and repeat.

(behind on rack have)

- 1 be the brains behind sth = be responsible for inventing or organising sth
- 2 brainstorm sth = discuss (new) ideas
- 3 brainy = very intelligent (informal)
- 4 _____ a brainwave = suddenly think of a good idea
- 5 have sth _____ the brain = keep thinking constantly about sth
- 6 _____ your brains = try very hard to remember or to solve sth

9 Complete the text about Tim Berners-Lee with the expressions in Exercise 8. Why isn't he a multi-billionaire?

Tim Berners-Lee



Tim Berners-Lee is proof that you don't have to be a savant to do amazing things. Berners-Lee, a modest engineer and computer scientist is

- 1 _____ the World Wide Web. In 1989 he was working for CERN, the European Organisation for Nuclear Research, in
- 2 _____ Switzerland. An essential part of his job was to
- 3 _____ ideas with his colleagues and then share information with researchers in different geographical locations. It was while he was
- 4 _____ for ways to improve the communication process that he
- 5 _____ – he could use hypertext, a language for sharing text electronically, to allow computers all over the world to talk to each other – through the Internet. The World
- 6 _____ Wide Web was born! But Tim Berners-Lee did not have money
- 7 _____ ! Had he been a more materialistic man, he could have become a multi-billionaire by charging royalties for his invention. Instead, he gave it
- 8 _____ to the world for free.

10 **SPEAKING** Which scientist, inventor or thinker do you most admire? Decide on your top three and give reasons. Compare your ideas with other people in the class.

THE HUMAN BRAIN QUIZ

fact or fiction?

- 1 A larger brain is smarter than a smaller brain.
- 2 On average a person has 70,000 thoughts each day.
- 3 The brain's storage capacity is practically unlimited.
- 4 The brain produces enough electricity to power a small light bulb.
- 5 Most people only use 10 percent of their brain.

HIDDEN TALENTS

1.13

- Despite some recent advances, there is still a great deal about the human brain that **remains a mystery**. We know it is made up of about 100 billion nerve cells, called neurons, connected like wires in a giant telephone exchange. We know messages pass down them like electrical signals and jump from one neuron to the next when chemicals known as neurotransmitters are released. ¹ C But what we don't fully understand are things like consciousness, intelligence and creativity.
- 10 Much of our knowledge comes from studying brain functions when things go wrong. There are some fascinating cases of where a bang on the head has brought about changes in personality or caused a person to become talented in a way they weren't at all before the injury.
- 15 A famous case was Jason Padgett, a furniture salesman from Washington, who was mugged by two men after leaving a karaoke bar. He survived the attack, but **was left unconscious**. ² E Padgett began to see patterns in everything he looked at, and to draw complex geometric figures. He seemed to understand the mathematical nature of the universe despite the fact that he had little formal academic training. The man who had barely scraped through his school exams ended up pursuing a career in mathematics as a number theorist.

Padgett's is a case of acquired savant syndrome, a condition in which brain damage of some kind unlocks extreme mental abilities. All cases of acquired savant syndrome involve a head injury and the special abilities are typically in the fields of maths, languages, music or art. Having **acquired the new skill**, it is extremely rare for a savant to lose it. The change is permanent.

Another example of this syndrome is twenty-four-year-old Ben McMahon from Australia, who **fell into a coma** after a car crash. A week later he woke up speaking Mandarin Chinese. He had studied Chinese at school, but had never been fluent until the accident. McMahon works now as a Chinese-speaking tour guide in Australia.

Orlando Serrell **suffered a head injury** when he was knocked out in a baseball game at the age of ten. When he regained consciousness, he felt OK and finished the game. ³ A

- 40 He has never made a mistake. For instance, ask him about 11 February 1983 and he says 'Friday. It was raining that day. I had a pizza – pepperoni sausage.'

Some knocks on the head are more dramatic than others. Tony Cicoria, an orthopaedic surgeon, **was struck by lightning** as he was leaving a public payphone. Luckily there was a nurse nearby and she saved his life. Several weeks after the accident, Cicoria developed a strong desire to listen to classical piano music and play the piano even though he'd never wanted to play a musical instrument before. He is now a successful pianist and composer.

Although cases of female savants are not as common as those of males, there are some examples. Heather Thompson, a successful businesswoman from Washington, was loading her supermarket shopping into her car when the boot door crashed down onto her head. Although she never **lost consciousness**, the accident changed her life. Soon afterwards she **felt an urge** to paint, and overnight she became a talented abstract artist. She explained that her hands simply knew how to use colour and white spaces – it felt natural to her to paint.

60 There is no single theory to explain each case, but many researchers believe that acquired savant syndrome happens when the right side of the brain compensates for an injury to the left side. The condition is rare – fewer than one hundred cases have been identified. ⁴ D The challenge is how to access that hidden knowledge and skill without experiencing a bang on the head.

1.5

GRAMMAR

Verb patterns

I can use a wide range of different verb patterns.

- 1 1.16 Listen to Part 1 of a podcast about being left-handed. What jobs seem to be more suited to 'lefties'?
- 2 1.16 Listen to the podcast again. Are statements 1–4 true (T) or false (F)?
- No one knows what **makes someone use** their right or left hand. ☐
 - Left-handers **tend to choose** creative professions. ☐
 - Dominance of the left hemisphere **enables left-handers to be** better at 3D perception. ☐
 - Rafa Nadal **keeps winning** because he is naturally left-handed. ☐
- 3 Read GRAMMAR FOCUS I and complete it using the verb forms in blue in Exercise 2.

GRAMMAR FOCUS I

Verb patterns

- verb + to + infinitive: **tend to choose**
- verb + object + to + infinitive: _____
- verb + object + infinitive without to: _____
- verb + -ing: _____

- 4 Match the verbs in the box with verb patterns 1–4 in GRAMMAR FOCUS I. Check the lists on page 149 if you are not sure.

advise ☐ allow ☐ arrange ☐ avoid ☐
 can't afford ☐ can't help ☐ can't stand ☐ cause ☐
 decide ☐ encourage ☐ expect ☐ fancy ☐
 force ☐ imagine ☐ intend ☐ let ☐ manage ☐
 offer ☐ refuse ☐ remind ☐ seem ☐
 spend/waste time ☐ use ☐ warn (not) ☐

- 5 1.17 Complete Part 2 of the podcast with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then listen and check. How many left-handed people do you know?

So that's the good news about being left-handed. The bad news is that manufacturers don't remember to make tools and machinery for left-handers. Society ¹ _____ (force/us/use) objects that are designed for right-handed people and this ² _____ (make/us/look) clumsy.

As a child I don't remember deciding that I was left-handed. But when my primary school teacher saw me using my left hand for writing and drawing she ³ _____ (encourage/me/swap) hands. She didn't ⁴ _____ (manage/change) my natural inclination, and I didn't stop writing with my left hand. Why ⁵ _____ (waste time/try) to change someone's natural handedness? Just ⁶ _____ (let/them/use) the hand they feel comfortable with – you can't ⁷ _____ (expect/people/do) what isn't natural to them!

I once heard someone say that left-handed people were strange. But when you stop to think about famous historical figures who were left-handed, you can't ⁸ _____ (avoid/conclude) that they were brilliant! I'm sure Leonardo da Vinci, Mahatma Gandhi, Albert Einstein, Winston Churchill and Marie Curie would agree!

- 6 Read GRAMMAR FOCUS II. Find examples of verb patterns with **remember**, **stop**, **hear** and **see** in Exercise 5. Explain the changes in meaning.

GRAMMAR FOCUS II

Verb patterns – change in meaning

- You can use **remember**, **forget**, **stop** and **try** with the -ing form or a to + infinitive, but with a change in meaning.

*I **remember doing** my homework. Sadly, I **didn't remember to hand** it in.*

*Jim **will never forget going** on that school trip. He **forgot to take** any money.*

*'I've **stopped eating** chocolate.' 'Really? Why **did you stop to buy** some on the way home?'*

*I **tried to convince** Jane but she doesn't want my advice. Why don't you **try talking** to her?*

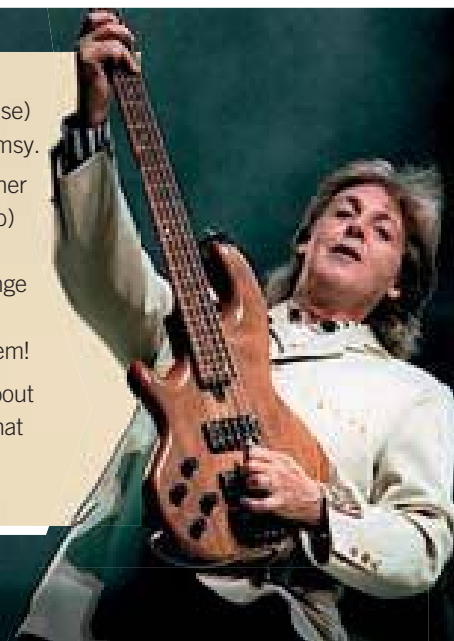
- You use **feel**, **hear**, **see**, **watch** + object + -ing to describe ongoing actions or the same verbs + object + infinitive without to to describe finished actions.

*I **watched Dan playing** football and **saw him score** the winning goal.*

- 7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Which sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

- I often forget **to bring** (bring) my pens to school.
- I'll never forget _____ (meet) my best friend.
- I don't remember _____ (learn) how to swim.
- I always remember _____ (switch) my phone off in lessons.
- I stopped _____ (take) piano lessons a while ago.
- I usually stop _____ (buy) sweets on my way.
- If my laptop freezes, I try _____ (turn) it off and on again.
- I tried _____ (work), but I was tired.
- I've never seen my father _____ (lose) his temper.
- I often see my neighbour _____ (drive) to work.

Grammar page 149



Describing a photo

I can describe a photo and speculate about hypothetical situations.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the adjectives in the box. Tell your partner about the last time you experienced these feelings while you were learning something.

confused determined enthusiastic
frustrated relieved terrified thrilled

The last time I felt really confused was when I was trying to understand when to use the Present Perfect tense in English! But, fortunately, I understand it now ...

- 2 **SPEAKING** Take turns to describe and speculate about photo A.

- Say what the photo shows.
- Speculate about the people and their feelings.
- Speculate about the situation just before and/or just after the photo was taken.



- 3 **1.18** Listen to someone describing photo A. Does the speaker have the same ideas about the situation as you?

- 4 **1.18** Read the SPEAKING FOCUS. Complete the description of photo A with one word in each gap. Then listen again and check.

This is a photo of a teenage girl driving a car. It's ¹ _____ to be sure whether she's having a driving lesson or taking her driving test. The middle-aged man sitting in the passenger seat to her left has got some official looking papers and a pen, so the ² _____ are he's an examiner rather than an instructor. ³ _____ on his body language, I'd say they might be ⁴ _____ to crash! ⁵ _____, something is wrong. It looks ⁶ _____ if he's absolutely terrified. He's covering his face and hiding behind his papers. He could've ⁷ _____ seen a car pull out in front of them or, even worse, a pedestrian step out into the road. The girl doesn't ⁸ _____ to be as scared as him, so maybe she hasn't noticed the problem yet. Hopefully, she'll be able to stop in time. ⁹ _____ by the examiner's reaction, I don't think she's going to pass her driving test this time!

SPEAKING FOCUS

Speculating about people

Based on ..., I'd say he's/she's/it's ...

Judging by ..., I (don't) think ...

It looks/seems as if/as though ...

He/She/It appears/doesn't appear to be ...

The chances are (that) he's/she's/it's ...

Showing certainty

Clearly, (there's a problem/something is wrong).

It's obvious/clear (from the expression on his/her face) that ...

He/She/It is definitely/certainly (not) ...

Showing uncertainty

It's hard to be sure (whether/if ...)

It's not easy to say (whether/if ...)

I can't really tell (whether/if ...)

Speculating about the situation

He/She could/might have ('ve) just + Past Participle (recent past)

He/She could/might be + -ing (present)

He/She could/might be about to + infinitive (near future)



- 5 **SPEAKING** Take turns to describe and speculate about photo B. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

- 6 **1.19** Listen to a teenager answering a question. Which of these questions has she been asked?

- 1 Which school subject do you feel is the most useful and why?
- 2 Is it important for you to learn to drive? Why?/ Why not?
- 3 In your opinion, what qualities should a good teacher or instructor have?
- 4 Given the choice, which new subjects or skills would you like to learn and why?

- 7 **1.19** Listen again. Which phrases do you hear?

Personally, I think ... I intend to ...
In my opinion ... For this reason, I feel ...
Actually ... That's why I think ...
To be honest ...

- 8 **SPEAKING** Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 6. Use the phrases in Exercise 7 to help you.



USE OF ENGLISH

1.7

Register

I can use formal and informal language appropriately.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Read UK TODAY. Discuss why you think fewer UK students are studying foreign languages these days. What is the situation in your country?

UK TODAY

International exchange trips

- Young people can experience life with a host family and at a local high school, new places, customs and people.
- 62 percent of UK students decided to study languages at university after an exchange trip, but ...
- Only 30 percent of state secondary schools organise international exchange trips these days and ...
- Fewer than 8 percent of UK students study a foreign language until age eighteen and the numbers are falling.



- 2 Read Texts 1 and 2 and answer the questions.

- 1 What is happening at Stoneberry School?
- 2 What is the purpose of Text 1 and Text 2?
- 3 Which text is formal/informal? Why?

- 3 Complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with the examples in blue in Texts 1 and 2.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Register – formal and informal language

Formal language is more common in written English, e.g. in official documents, business letters and invitations. It is also used in certain spoken contexts such as announcements, presentations or speeches. Informal language is more common in spoken English. It's also used in some written contexts, e.g. in informal emails, blogs or postcards.

Formal

No contractions or abbreviations:

*I have been thinking ...
To be confirmed*

Greater use of the Passive:

³*This will be followed*

More use of indirect questions:

Do you think you could say a few words?

Informal

Contractions and abbreviations:

¹*I've been thinking ...*
²

Less use of the

Passive:

We'll follow this ...

More use of direct questions:

⁴*Could you say a few words?*

To: Jill Duncan (Head of English)

From: Angie Dalton (School Exchange Organiser)

Text 1

Hi Jill,

- I've been thinking* about having a welcome party for the Swiss exchange students. They can come to a get-together in the main hall. Make sure all your staff come along and also could you say a few words? – you know, say hello and tell the visitors a bit about the school and the town. We'll follow this with a bit of food (menu TBC).
- ¹⁰ They can come in through the main entrance and we can get our students to say hello and then they can show the exchange students around the school.

BTW, I've already posted a map and directions on the website.

- ¹⁵ Thanks, Jill 😊

Angie



Stoneberry School

Text 2

You are invited to attend a reception in honour of the exchange group from Switzerland.

The reception will be held in the school assembly hall from 5 p.m. to 6:30 p.m.

- ⁵ All English teaching staff will be present and in addition the Head of English will give a welcome speech.

This will be followed by light refreshments. A map and directions have been posted on the website.

- ¹⁰ Please enter through the front entrance where student representatives will greet you.

Visitors will be given a guided tour of the school.

- 4 There are twelve more underlined examples of formal and informal equivalents in Texts 1 and 2. Write them down in a new formal/informal table.

Formal

More complex noun phrases:

light refreshments

More verbs of Latin origin:

⁶
Complex prepositional phrases:
a reception ⁷in honour of
the exchange group

More formal linkers:

⁸
incidentally

Informal

Simpler noun phrases:

⁵

More phrasal verbs:

come in

Simple prepositions:

*a welcome party
for the exchange
students*

Neutral linkers:

*also
BTW (by the way)*

- 5 Read an email from one of the Swiss exchange students to the student in her English host family. Choose the correct option.

¹Dear Miss Natalie Brown, / Hi Natalie,

²Sorry for not writing earlier / I apologise for the delay in writing to you, but ³I've been up to my eyes in / I have been extremely busy with my school work. ⁴I am delighted to be invited / Thanks for inviting me to stay in your house for three weeks.

⁵I'd like / Please allow me to tell you a bit about myself.

⁶I was raised / I grew up in Basel and I have quite a big family. ⁷There are / It consists of three children – two girls and a boy. ⁸In addition / Also, we have two dogs.

⁹BTW / Incidentally, have you ever ¹⁰considered / thought about learning German? You could come and stay with me in Basel.

¹¹Anyway / In conclusion, my train ¹²gets in to / arrives in London at 2:30 p.m. and ¹³so / consequently I should be at your house by 3:30 p.m. I hope ¹⁴that is acceptable / that's OK.

¹⁵CU soon, / Yours sincerely,

Annika

- 6 Rewrite the sentences in the Passive using the more formal equivalents of the underlined phrasal verbs. Use the verbs in the box.

(address demolish omit postpone
reject reprimand tolerate)

- I will not put up with bad behaviour.
Bad behaviour will not be tolerated.
- You can leave out question 7.
- I'll deal with those issues tomorrow.
- They are pulling down the old hall next week.
- Unfortunately, the city council turned down our proposal.
- We've put off the decision till next week.
- I've told him off twice already.

- 7 Complete the more formal version of each question.

- Is there a swimming pool at the school?
I was wondering. _____
- Are we going to London?
Do you know _____?
- Where can I change some money?
Could you tell me _____?
- What time does school start in the morning?
I'd like to know _____.
- Are we allowed to wear trainers to school?
Do you think _____?

- 8 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word in capitals. Do not change the word given.

- It's fantastic you've chosen our school for your exchange trip. **DELIGHTED**
We _____ chosen our school for your exchange trip.
- You must wear school uniform at all times during school hours. **WORN**
_____ at all times during school hours.
- What is your favourite school subject? **IS**
I'd like to know what _____.
- Turn off your mobile phones, otherwise we will take them away from you. **CONFISCATED**
Turn off your mobile phones, otherwise _____.
- A meeting for parents is planned so that we can provide them with the necessary information. **ORDER**
A meeting for parents is planned _____ provide them with the necessary information.

- 9 **USE OF ENGLISH** Read about the Tower of London and use the information to complete the informal email. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Visit the TOWER OF LONDON

Guided tours every day

Visitors will be given a guided tour. You will be accompanied by a Beefeater who will recount stories of the history of the Tower. Prepare to be dazzled by the Crown Jewels. This will be followed by the Ceremony of the Keys.

We recommend allowing a minimum of three hours to complete your visit.

The tours start at 9 a.m. The last tour commences at 2:30 p.m. in winter and 3:30 p.m. in summer. Please be aware that in poor weather conditions, the tour will be given in the Chapel.

If you require more information please consult our website.

Hi Annika,

I think visiting the Tower of London is a great idea. They

¹ _____ us a guided tour of the Tower, and we can ² _____ our tour any time in the morning. We need at ³ _____ three hours to see everything. A Beefeater will take us around the Tower and he'll ⁴ _____ stories about its history. We'll start with the Crown Jewels – they're amazing! And ⁵ _____ we'll see the Ceremony of the Keys. If the weather's ⁶ _____, the tour will be in the Chapel. If you want to know anything else, we can just ⁷ _____ it up on the website.

Cheers,
Natalie

- 10 **SPEAKING** Discuss your own experiences or views about international exchange trips.

- What are the pros and cons?
- What countries would you most like to have an exchange with?
- Where would you take an exchange student in your area?

A CV and a covering email

I can write a CV and covering letter to describe my skills, education and work experience.

1 SPEAKING Discuss the questions.

- 1 What kind of part-time or summer jobs do students in your country do?
- 2 Have you ever applied for a part-time or summer job?
- 3 Have you got a CV? How are CVs different from covering letters/emails?

2 Read Sigrid's CV and covering email. What position is she applying for? Which skills and experience make her an appropriate candidate for the job?

SIGRID HALVERSON

14 Cherry Tree Drive, Mob: 1101 351 191
Chatfield, CH17 3QP. s.halverson3@mymail33.com
DOB: 23.10.02

1 Bright and responsible sixth-former with **practical experience of** caring for young children and a **proven ability to** work well in a team.

- 2**
- **well-developed** communication skills
 - **excellent command of** Danish and Spanish
 - **competent user of** Microsoft Office

3 **Currently:** Queen Anne's College, Chatfield
Level 3 NVQ Childcare

2012–2019 Stoneferry School, Chatfield
GCSEs Maths (grade 5), English Language (grade 7), Spanish (grade 8),
Combined Science (grades 5-6), History (grade 5), Geography
(grade 6), Art and Design (grade 7), English Literature (grade 6)

4 **Summer 2019** Work experience: Chatfield Kindergarten, Childcare
Assistant

- **dedicated member of** care team assisting learning through play
- relevant knowledge of health and safety regulations

2017–2019 Babysitting two preschoolers for family friends

5 Art and design, mountain biking, cross-training, animals

6 Mrs C. Waters
Manager, Chatfield Kindergarten
c.waters@cfk.com

Mrs D. Sommer
Course Coordinator (Childcare)
Queen Anne's College, Chatfield
d.sommer@qac.co.uk

3 Complete the headings in Sigrid's CV with the phrases in the box.

Education and qualifications Interests
Employment history Personal profile
Referees Skills and achievements

4 Discuss the questions. Then read **WRITING FOCUS I** and check.

- 1 How long is Sigrid's CV and how has she made it easy to follow?
- 2 Why does she avoid using full sentences, e.g. ~~I have a~~ good command of English?
- 3 How are her referees linked to her experience?

From: s.halverson3@mymail33.com
Subject: Sigrid Halverson – summer work application
Attachments: Sigrid Halverson CV

Dear Ms Laver,

5 I am writing in response to your online advertisement seeking staff for Chatfield Zoo's summer activities programme. I wish to apply for the position of children's activity coordinator.

I am an eighteen-year-old childcare student and I
10 am passionate about working with children. I intend to pursue a career as a kindergarten teacher when I finish my education. With this in mind, I hope to gain as much relevant experience as possible while I am still a student. I would welcome the opportunity to
15 work with and learn from a successful organisation such as Chatfield Zoo.

I gained considerable work experience at a local kindergarten last summer. During my work placement there, I worked alongside teachers, contributed to
20 classes and supervised the children at break times. I also sat in on staff meetings and coordinated a very successful sports day. Additionally, as a keen athlete and artist, I feel confident I possess relevant skills and would be well suited to the position.

25 I would be delighted to attend an interview at your convenience and have attached my CV for your consideration. Please do not hesitate to contact me if you require any further information.

Yours sincerely,

30 Sigrid Halverson



WRITING FOCUS I

Organising a CV

- A CV should be one to two pages long.
- Save space and make your CV concise by avoiding full sentences.
- Use headings and bullet points to organise your CV logically.
- Use positive language to describe your skills and experience.
- Choose referees linked to your education and work experience.
- Check whether a photo is required in the country where you are applying for a job.

- 5 Read WRITING FOCUS II. Find examples of each point in Sigrid's covering email. Has she followed all the advice?

WRITING FOCUS II

Organising a covering email

- Use full sentences and a variety of positive language.
- Say why you are writing and which job you are applying for.
- Give details about yourself and explain why you want the job.
- Explain more about your relevant skills and experience (don't just repeat what's on your CV).
- Mention availability for interview and any attachments you are sending e.g. your CV.

- 6 Complete the examples in LANGUAGE FOCUS I with information from Sigrid's CV.

LANGUAGE FOCUS I

Use these phrases to give concise information on your CV. Avoid full sentences.

- 1 competent user of Microsoft Office
- 2 dedicated member of _____
- 3 excellent command of _____
- 4 practical experience of _____
- 5 proven ability to _____
- 6 well-developed _____

- 7 Complete the list of skills with phrases from LANGUAGE FOCUS I.

- 1 _____ meet deadlines
- 2 _____ leading a team
- 3 _____ image editing software
- 4 _____ leadership skills
- 5 _____ Mandarin Chinese
- 6 _____ school athletics team

- 8 Make a similar list of your skills and abilities. Compare your list with a partner. Which of your skills and abilities might help you get the job Sigrid is applying for?

- 9 Read LANGUAGE FOCUS II and complete the examples with the underlined verbs in Sigrid's email. Then match the verbs with their meanings.

LANGUAGE FOCUS II

Use these phrases to explain more about your work experience in a covering email. Use full sentences.

- 1 I gained considerable work experience. ☐
- 2 I _____ teachers. ☐
- 3 I _____ to classes. ☐
- 4 I _____ the children at break times. ☐
- 5 I _____ staff meetings. ☐
- 6 I _____ a sports day. ☐

- a attended but didn't take part in
- b helped to organise
- c got
- d gave my ideas, time and effort
- e watched/checked
- f worked together with

- 10 Complete the extracts from covering emails with words from LANGUAGE FOCUS II.

- 1 Two classmates and I _____ the end-of-term party for our year at school.
- 2 While volunteering at the animal hospital, I _____ valuable knowledge of common pet illnesses.
- 3 I _____ a group of younger students during a field trip to a museum.
- 4 During my work placement at the theatre, I _____ rehearsals and watched the director.
- 5 I am proud to say I _____ to some ideas that the company used in their marketing campaign.
- 6 I learned a lot because I _____ some of the most experienced members of staff.

- 11 Find other useful phrases in Sigrid's covering letter.

- 12 **SPEAKING** Make notes on your ideal summer job. What is it? What skills and experience would be helpful? Discuss your ideas with a partner.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 13 Do the writing task. Use the ideas in WRITING FOCUS I and II, LANGUAGE FOCUS I and II and Exercise 12 to help you.

Write a one-page-long CV and a covering email to apply for your ideal summer job.

Part 1 – CV

- Use the headings from Sigrid's CV.
- Invent any necessary details.
- Check that the CV is one-page long.

Part 2 – Covering email

- Use Sigrid's email as an example.
- Give more details of your skills and experience than in the CV.

1.1 Vocabulary **4.1**

accessible /ək'sesəbəl/
 appeal /ə'pi:l/
 appealing /ə'pi:liŋ/
 armour /'ɑ:mə/
 attend a lecture /ə,tend ə 'lektʃə/
 be of interest to /,bi əv 'intrəst tə/
 bully /'buli/
 chemical composition /,kemikəl
 ,kɒmpə'ziʃən/
 core /kɔ:/
 deepen your knowledge /,di:pən jə
 'nɒlɪdʒ/
 design /dr'zeɪn/
 disruptive /dɪs'rʌptɪv/
 dyslexic /dɪs'leksɪk/
 engaging /ɪn'geɪdʒɪŋ/
 enrol on a course /ɪn,rəʊl ɒn ə 'kɔ:s/
 fall behind /,fɔ:l br'haɪnd/
 get a degree /,get ə dr'ɡri:/
 get a scholarship /,get ə 'skɒləʃɪp/
 get expelled (from school) /,get
 ɪk'speld (frəm ,sku:l)/
 get top marks /,get tɒp 'mɑ:ks/
 gifted /'ɡɪftɪd/
 give a lecture /,ɡɪv ə 'lektʃə/
 give up on /,ɡɪv 'ʌp ɒn/
 go into /,ɡəʊ 'ɪntə/
 go on to /,ɡəʊ 'ɒn tə/
 graduate /'ɡrædʒueɪt/
 have a passion for /,hæv ə 'pæʃən fə/
 have an impact on /,hæv əv 'ɪmpækt
 ɒn/
 hero /'hɪərəʊ/
 inclined towards /ɪn'klaɪnd tə,wɔ:dz/
 keen to do sth /,ki:n tə 'du: ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 lenient /'li:niənt/
 major in /'meɪdʒə(r) ɪn/
 management /'mænɪdʒmənt/
 music industry /'mju:zɪk ,ɪndəstri/
 nutrition /nju:'trɪʃən/
 principle /'prɪnsəpəl/
 scrape through /,skreɪp 'θru:/
 self-disciplined /,self 'dɪsɪplɪnd/
 settle down /,setl 'daʊn/
 sit an exam /,sɪt ən ɪɡ'zæm/
 strict /strikt/
 swot /swɒt/
 villain /'vɪlən/
 work in the field of /,wɜ:k ɪn ðə 'fi:ld
 əv/
 write a dissertation /,raɪt ə ,dɪsə'teɪʃən/
 youth culture /'ju:θ ,kʌltʃə/

1.2 Grammar **4.2**

annoying /ə'noɪ-ɪŋ/
 complain about /kəm'pleɪn ə,baut
 disturb /drɪ'stɜ:b/
 educationalist /,edʒu'keɪʃənəlɪst/

fidget /'fɪdʒət/
 hand in /hænd 'ɪn/
 handwriting /'hænd,rʌɪtɪŋ/
 learning disorder /'lɜ:nɪŋ dɪs'ɔ:də/
 lose your temper /,lu:z jə 'tempə/
 make a successful living /,meɪk ə
 sək,sesfəl 'lɪvɪŋ/
 pay attention in class /,peɪ ə,tənʃən
 ɪn 'kla:s/

1.3 Listening **4.3**

accurately /'ækjərətli/
 association /ə,səʊsi'eɪʃən/
 chase /tʃeɪs/
 earliest memory /,ɜ:liəst 'meməri/
 give a speech /,ɡɪv ə 'spi:tʃ/
 have a clear memory of /,hæv ə ,kliə
 'meməri əv/
 have a distant memory of /,hæv ə
 ,dɪstənt 'meməri əv/
 have a good memory for /,hæv ə
 ,ɡʊd 'meməri fə/
 have a memory like a sieve /,hæv ə
 'meməri laɪk ə ,sɪv/
 have a photographic memory /,hæv
 ə ,fəʊtə,ɡræfɪk 'meməri/
 have a terrible memory for /,hæv ə
 ,terəbəl 'meməri fə/
 have a vague memory of /,hæv ə
 ,veɪɡ 'meməri əv/
 have a vivid memory of /,hæv ə
 ,vɪvəd 'meməri əv/
 improve your memory /ɪm'pru:v jə
 'meməri/
 jog your memory /,dʒɒɡ jə 'meməri/
 lose your memory /,lu:z jə 'meməri/
 make up /,meɪk 'ʌp/
 memorise /'meməraɪz/
 narrative /'nærətɪv/
 squirt /skwɜ:t/
 visualise /'vɪʒʊəlaɪz/
 witness /'wɪtnəs/

1.4 Reading **4.4**

a great deal /ə 'ɡreɪt di:l/
 academic training /,ækə'demɪk
 ,treɪnɪŋ/
 acquire a skill /ə,kwaɪə(r) ə 'skɪl/
 advance /əd'vɑ:ns/
 bang on the head /,bæŋ ɒn ðə 'hed/
 be found unconscious /bi ,faʊnd
 ʌn'kɒnʃəs/
 be hit by lightning /bi ,hɪt baɪ
 'laɪtnɪŋ/
 be left unconscious /bi ,left
 ʌn'kɒnʃəs/
 be made up of /bi ,meɪd 'ʌp əv/
 be struck by lightning /bi ,strʌk baɪ
 'laɪtnɪŋ/

be the brains behind sth /bi ðə
 'breɪnz bɪ,haɪnd ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 boot /bu:t/
 brainstorm /'breɪnstɔ:m/
 brainy /'breɪni/
 bring about /,brɪŋ ə'baut/
 charge royalties /,tʃɑ:dʒ 'rɔɪəltɪz/
 come out of a coma /,kʌm ,aʊt əv ə
 'kəʊmə/
 compensate for /'kɒmpənsət fə/
 complex /'kɒmpleks/
 develop a desire /dɪ'veləp ə dr'zaɪə/
 essential part /ɪ'senʃəl ,pɑ:t/
 fall into a coma /,fɔ:l ɪntə ə 'kəʊmə/
 feel an urge /,fi:l ən 'ɜ:dʒ/
 geometric pattern /,dʒi:ə,metrɪk
 'pætən/
 get an urge /,get ən 'ɜ:dʒ/
 have a brainwave /,hæv ə 'breɪnweɪv/
 have sth on the brain /,hæv ,sʌmθɪŋ
 ɒn ðə 'breɪn/
 knock sb out /,nɒk ,sʌmbɒdi 'aʊt/
 lose consciousness /,lu:z 'kɒnʃəsnəs/
 modest /'mɒdəst/
 nerve cell /'nɜ:v sel/
 neurotransmitter /,njʊərəʊtrænz'mɪtə/
 number theorist /'nʌmbə ,θɪərəst/
 overnight /,əʊvə'nait/
 payphone /'peɪfəʊn/
 personality /,pɜ:əsə'næləti/
 rack your brains /,ræk jə 'breɪnz/
 recall /rɪ'kɔ:l/
 recover from an injury /rɪ,kʌvə frəm
 ən 'ɪndʒəri/
 regain consciousness /rɪ,ɡeɪn
 'kɒnʃəsnəs/
 release /rɪ'li:z/
 remain a mystery /rɪ,meɪn ə 'mɪstəri/
 remarkable /rɪ'mɑ:kəbəl/
 savant syndrome /'sævənt ,sɪndrəʊm/
 sharpen a skill /,ʃɑ:pən ə 'skɪl/
 solve a mystery /,sɒlv ə 'mɪstəri/
 suffer an injury /,sʌfə əv 'ɪndʒəri/
 telephone exchange /,teləfəʊn
 ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/

1.5 Grammar **4.5**

clumsy /'klʌmzi/
 enable /ɪ'neɪbəl/
 fancy /'fænsi/
 handedness /'hændɪdnəs/
 hemisphere /'heməsfiə/
 left-handed /,left 'hændɪd/
 left-hander /,left 'hændə/
 natural inclination /,nætʃərəl
 ,ɪŋklə'neɪʃən/

perception /pə'sepʃən/
swap /swɒp/
tend to do sth /'tend tə ,duː ,sʌmθɪŋ/
urge sb to do sth /'ɜːdʒ ,sʌmbədi tə ,duː ,sʌmθɪŋ/

1.6 Speaking 🔊 4.6

appear /ə'piə/
based on /'beɪst ɒn/
certainly /'sɜːtnli/
certainty /'sɜːntnti/
clearly /'kliəli/
confused /kən'fjuːzd/
definitely /'defɪnətli/
determined /drɪ'tɜːmænd/
enthusiastic /ɪn'θjuːzi'æstɪk/
expression /ɪk'spreʃən/
hard to be sure /'hɑːd tə bi ,ʃɜː/
intend to /ɪn'tend tə/
judging by /'dʒʌdʒɪŋ baɪ/
obvious /'ɒbvɪəs/
pedestrian /pə'destriən/
pull out /,pʊl 'aʊt/
relieved /rɪ'liːvd/
thrilled /θrɪld/
uncertainty /ʌn'sɜːntnti/

1.7 Use of English 🔊 4.7

address /ə'dres/
announcement /ə'naʊnsmənt/
assembly hall /ə'sembli ,hɔːl/
be up to your eyes in /bi 'ʌp tə jə ,aɪz ɪn/
chapel /'tʃæpəl/
consist of /kən'sɪst əv/
custom /'kʌstəm/
confiscate /'kɒnfɪsket/
dazzle /'dæzl/
deal with /'diːl wɪð/

delighted /drɪ'laɪtəd/
demolish /dɪ'mɒlɪʃ/
exchange student /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ ,stjuːdənt/
exchange trip /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ ,trɪp/
get-together /'get tə ,geðə/
greet /griːt/
guided tour /,gaɪdɪd 'tuə/
hold /həʊld/
host family /'həʊst ,fæməli/
in honour of /ɪn 'ɒnər əv/
incidentally /ɪnsə'dentəli/
leave sth out /,liːv ,sʌmθɪŋ 'aʊt/
omit /əʊ'mɪt/
postpone /pəʊs'pəʊn/
pull down /,pʊl 'daʊn/
put sth off /,pʊt ,sʌmθɪŋ 'ɒf/
put up with /,pʊt 'ʌp wɪð/
reception /rɪ'sepʃən/
refreshments /rɪ'frefmənts/
reject /rɪ'dʒekt/
reprimand /'reprəmaɪnd/
require /rɪ'kwaɪə/
tell sb off /,tel ,sʌmbədi 'ɒf/
the Crown Jewels /ðə ,kraʊn 'dʒuːəlz/
turn sb down /,tɜːn ,sʌmbədi 'daʊn/
welcome party /'welkəm ,pɑːti/
welcome speech /'welkəm ,spiːtʃ/

1.8 Writing 🔊 4.8

apply for a position /ə'plai fər ə pə'zɪʃən/
at your convenience /ət jə kən'viːniəns/
be passionate about /bi 'pæʃənət ə ,baʊt/
childcare /'tʃaɪldkeə/
competent user of /,kɒmpɪtənt 'juːzər əv/

considerable /kən'sɪdərəbəl/
contribute to /kən'trɪbjʊt tə/
coordinate /kəʊ'ɔːdɪneɪt/
covering letter /,kʌvərɪŋ 'letə/
dedicated member of /,dedɪkeɪtɪd 'membər əv/
excellent command of /,eksələnt kə'mɑːnd əv/
gain work experience /,geɪn wɜːk ɪk'spəriəns/
health and safety regulations /,helθ ən 'seɪfti ,regjuːleɪʃənz/
image editing software /,ɪmɪdʒ 'edɪtɪŋ ,sɒftweə/
in response to /ɪn rɪ'spɒns tə/
kindergarten /'kɪndəɡɑːtn/
lead a team /,liːd ə 'tiːm/
leadership skills /'liːdəʃɪp ,skɪlz/
meet deadlines /,miːt 'dedlaɪnz/
part-time job /,pɑːt 'taɪm 'dʒɒb/
practical experience of /,præktɪkəl ɪk'spəriəns əv/
preschoolers /priː'skuːlə/
proven ability to /,pruːvən ə'bɪləti tə/
pursue a career /pə,sjuː ə kə'riə/
relevant /'reləvənt/
sit in /sɪt 'ɪn/
staff /stɑːf/
summer job /'sʌmə dʒɒb/
supervise /'suːpəvaɪz/
valuable /'væljuəbəl/
volunteer /,vɒlən'tɪə/
welcome an opportunity /,welkəm ən ,ɒpə'tjuːnəti/
well suited /,wel 'suːɪd/
well-developed /,wel di'veləpt/
work alongside /'wɜːk ə ,lɒŋ ,saɪd/
work placement /'wɜːk ,pleɪsmənt/

MY WORD LIST

STUDYING

MEMORY AND THE BRAIN

OTHER

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Match the verbs in box A with the prepositions in box B to make phrasal verbs, then complete the sentences with the phrasal verbs.

A fall go major settle scrape

B behind down in into through

- After the lunch break, the kids were excited and took time to settle down.
- Maths wasn't my best subject and I just managed to scrape through the exam.
- If you miss a few classes, it's easy to _____. Then it's hard to catch up.
- He enjoys working with kids and he'd like to _____ teaching as a career.
- She wants to major in Biology at university, then get a job at a nature reserve.

- 2 Choose the correct option.

- Many students can't afford to go to university unless they get a *degree* / *scholarship* / *dissertation*.
- I have a very *vague* / *clear* / *photographic* memory of my first day at school – I remember it really well.
- Amy fainted, but thankfully after just a few seconds she *remained* / *lost* / *regained* consciousness.
- George got bored quickly and his teachers complained he was *disruptive* / *gifted* / *expelled* in class.
- Our sports coach is pretty *lenient* / *self-disciplined* / *strict*; she makes us work really hard in training.
- You can't possibly be hungry again – you always have food *on* / *in* / *inside* the brain!

- 3 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

THE SCHOOL REUNION

Last week I went to a school reunion and I was amazed how different the school looks now. The building where we ¹ _____ to have PE classes has been demolished and a new sports centre has been built instead.

I clearly remember how we ² _____ beg our sports teacher to allow us to play games in the old building! Then I bumped into Caroline who I ³ _____ always having arguments with. I hardly recognised her. She didn't ⁴ _____ to look so glamorous. But one thing hasn't changed about her. She ⁵ _____ always talking about others behind their back. It's so unpleasant. The reunion also reminded me of the importance of punctuality that the school head teacher talked about so often. I got used to certain things so much that even now I ⁶ _____ arrive at meetings at least fifteen minutes earlier than necessary!

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If you need more details, try _____ (look) online for information. Maybe you'll find something.
- The Music Academy exam board first listened to us all _____ (sing) and then they announced who was admitted.
- I'm sorry, sir. I forgot _____ (check) if my essay is within the word limit you required.
- Do you think our Chemistry teacher will let us _____ (use) the lab to carry out our own experiments?
- We were warned _____ (not/touch) any of the exhibits.

USE OF ENGLISH

- 5 Read the text. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

New research suggests that having a smartphone on your desk when you are studying tends ¹ _____ a negative effect on your ability to concentrate. It ² _____ that in IQ tests where candidates had a smartphone nearby, even when they did not actively use it, they ³ _____ less well than those without. It is thought that we have become accustomed to being alert to updates and notifications on our mobile devices. Thus, just having a smartphone in sight may be enough to ⁴ _____ our attention from the task at hand.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 1 A to having | B you to have |
| C have had | D to have |
| 2 A has been shown | B was showing |
| C is shown | D has shown |
| 3 A made | B got on |
| C performed | D got through |
| 4 A put off | B distract |
| C omit | D mess with |

- 6 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to four words in each gap, but do not change the word in capitals.

- So, did you get that email I sent you about the new course? **WONDERING**
I was wondering whether/if you got that email I sent you about the new course.
- Teachers are typically more aware of dyslexia now than they were in the past. **TEND**
Teachers tend to be more aware of dyslexia now than they were in the past.
- Our English teacher often took us to the cinema to watch foreign films. **WOULD**
Our English teacher would take us to the cinema to watch foreign films.
- My best friend has a very irritating habit of chewing gum loudly. **ALWAYS**
My best friend is always chewing gum loudly.
- I'm not sure if I've told my parents about the school trip. **REMEMBER**
I can't remember telling my parents about the school trip.

READING

- 7 Read the text. Complete gaps 1–5 with sentences A–F. There is one extra sentence.

NEW YORK

BROOKLYN FREE SCHOOL

A school with no grades, no homework, no tests and no obligation to attend classes. That's the Brooklyn Free School, a learning institution that follows a 'free' education philosophy. Neither the school's head teacher nor the teaching staff, who are known as advisers, tell the students what to do.

¹ ____ This is based on the school's belief that learning only happens when it is self-directed and not imposed by others.

The school is open to students from three to eighteen years of age. It encourages them to get involved in everything that concerns the school. In order to do so, students attend a Democratic Meeting where they have equal votes with the staff. This get-together is at the heart of the school's philosophy. ² ____ Announcements are made, issues are raised and everyone cooperates for the well-being of the school. Attendance at the weekly meeting is one of the few school rules. Though some of the younger students don't pay much attention, preferring to read or draw instead, they must be present.

A typical school day is different for every student. They can paint, play video games or work on laptops. Some prepare for the school's annual play by rehearsing or building stage sets. In the kitchen, others might be baking a cake or sorting rubbish for recycling. Traditional classroom lessons are also available if students wish to attend. ³ ____ By offering these choices, the school accommodates all needs. Being part of a group of classes on a regular basis fits some students best, while doing individual projects is what suits others.

The school's philosophy is a radical one. Parents hope it will make their children independent thinkers and problem solvers. However, the school's system has its share of opponents. ⁴ ____ This is due to the enormous freedom students have, which can lead to laziness and lack of discipline. Furthermore, they believe that students whose families cannot afford to hire private tutors have fewer chances of gaining college entry. It's believed that the school's academic preparation is inadequate. This seems to be supported by the fact that there are parents who have had to hire help to make sure their children learn the basics. ⁵ ____ Since then, however, enrolments have increased and people are regaining confidence in the idea of self-regulated education and the school's mission.

- A Also, in its first academic year, a third of the original students left, as did the teachers.
- B These are best for students who prefer a structured day along with a weekly timetable.
- C Many students go there to escape the stress and exam pressures of conventional schools.
- D Taking place every Wednesday, it gives staff and students an opportunity to be heard.
- E Their main criticism is that it does not, in fact, adequately prepare students for real life.
- F It's entirely up to them to choose what they learn and how they wish to learn it.

LISTENING

- 8  1.20 Listen to four people talking about classes they attend. Match the speakers with the statements. There is one extra sentence. You will hear the recording twice.

- Speaker 1: ☐
 Speaker 2: ☐
 Speaker 3: ☐
 Speaker 4: ☐

The speaker ...

- A is looking to develop a professional goal.
- B is struggling with the amount of work on the course.
- C is motivated by feedback from the tutor.
- D is thinking of quitting the course.
- E is surprised by the attitude of the tutor.

SPEAKING

- 9 Look at photos where people are learning new things at different ages. Discuss when it's more difficult to learn new things: when you're a child or an elderly person. Why?

A



B



WRITING

- 10 Read the writing task and write a covering email.

Your town is going to host an international sport event during the summer holidays. The organisers are looking for English-speaking volunteers to assist the participants. Write a covering email for this post. Explain why you would like to do this job and why you are well-suited for it.

2

Human nature

We are what we repeatedly do. Excellence, then, is not an act, but a habit.

Aristotle

BBC



NATURE OR NURTURE?

5 Watch the BBC video. For the worksheet, go to page 134.

VOCABULARY

2.1

People • personality adjectives • compound adjectives • describing personality

I can talk about people and describe their personalities.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Write positive and negative adjectives for each noun in the box.

ambition friendliness honesty kindness patience
politeness responsibility sensitivity

ambition, ambitious, unambitious

2 **SPEAKING** Discuss the qualities in Exercise 1 that you admire most/least and the qualities you think you possess.

KNOW YOURSELF



PERSONALITY TEST

How well do you really know yourself? Read each sentence carefully and circle the symbol next to it if you feel it truly describes the real you.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 ★ I learn new things fast. | 11 ★ I come up with new ideas. |
| 2 ♥ I feel others' emotions. | 12 ● I make new friends easily. |
| 3 ■ I do jobs straight away. | 13 ▲ I prefer small groups of people. |
| 4 ▲ I like being alone. | 14 ♥ I have a soft heart. |
| 5 ★ I have a vivid imagination. | 15 ● I usually start conversations. |
| 6 ♥ I make people feel relaxed. | 16 ♥ I love helping others. |
| 7 ● I like telling funny stories. | 17 ★ I enjoy the arts. |
| 8 ▲ I know myself well. | 18 ■ I keep my things tidy. |
| 9 ■ I pay attention to detail. | 19 ▲ I think before I speak. |
| 10 ● I love partying. | 20 ■ I plan things in advance. |

KEY

The symbols represent five different personality types. How many of each symbol did you choose?



- 3 Do the personality test and then read the key.
- 4 **SPEAKING** Write a short sentence that summarises your results. Compare your results with a partner and then discuss the questions.

I am quite deep and fairly conscientious.

- How accurate do you think this personality test is?
- Why do you think people like doing personality tests?
- Can you learn more about a person from a fifteen-minute personality test or a fifteen-minute chat?



AGREEABLE

You're kind-hearted and sensitive to the needs of others. Being relaxed, trusting and laid-back, you work well with others. In difficult situations, you're tactful and avoid hurting people. In fact, you're very good at making people feel at ease. You're affectionate and show your feelings. You're good-natured, friendly and popular.



IMAGINATIVE

You're artistic and creative and so you have the ability to think outside the box. You're daring and you're not afraid to do adventurous things. You're also quite perceptive and intellectual and have a love of learning.



ORGANISED

You're thorough – you like to plan things carefully. Being quite strong-willed, you usually get what you want. You're level-headed and you think things through carefully. In future, you will excel in leadership positions.



DEEP

You're a deep thinker and you're not comfortable with small talk. You're not insecure, but you are quite humble, and you can be a little self-conscious or even self-critical at times. You enjoy your own company, but you're not a loner – you like being with close friends. Above all, you're fair-minded and if you feel strongly about something, you're not afraid to speak up.



SOCIABLE

You're the life and soul of the party and love being the centre of attention. People enjoy your company because you're witty and spontaneous. You're larger than life and good fun to be around. However, on bad days you can be moody and short-tempered. Also, there are times when you appear a little self-centred and full of yourself.

WORD STORE 2A Personality adjectives

- 5 **1.21** Complete WORD STORE 2A with the adjectives in red in the quiz. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 6 Read the descriptions and choose the correct option. Use WORD STORE 2A to help you.
- Megan is brave enough to say things that shock people. She's quite *daring* / *insecure*.
 - Janet understands difficult concepts and enjoys debating serious topics. She's *intellectual* / *witty*.
 - Tom is diplomatic and is unlikely to upset or embarrass people. He's very *thorough* / *tactful*.
 - Sue has a very gentle, loving nature. She's extremely *perceptive* / *affectionate*.
 - Rick never talks about his achievements. He's very *humble* / *moody*.
 - Harry believes that most people are good and honest. He's very *spontaneous* / *trusting*.

WORD STORE 2B Compound adjectives

- 7 **1.22** Complete WORD STORE 2B with the underlined words in the quiz. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 8 Match each comment with an appropriate compound adjective in WORD STORE 2B.
- 'Everyone seems really stressed. I'm cool. No problem.'
 - 'I'm not going to change my mind, I'm determined.'
 - 'I'm happy to fit in with what everybody else thinks.'
 - 'I was hopeless. I should have done so much better.'
 - 'I can see both sides of the argument.'
- 9 Which compound adjectives in WORD STORE 2B are positive and which are negative? Which describe you?
- Kind-hearted and good-natured are positive, but short-tempered and self-centred are negative.*
I think I'm strong-willed, and sometimes self-critical.

WORD STORE 2C Describing personality

- 10 **1.23** Complete WORD STORE 2C with the highlighted expressions in the quiz. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 11 **SPEAKING** Replace the underlined phrases with an expression in WORD STORE 2C. Which statements do you agree with and why? Discuss with a partner.
- It's up to teachers, not parents, to inspire and encourage a desire for knowledge in children.
 - Computers will never replace humans because they can't view things creatively.
 - People often perform better in oral exam situations when they feel comfortable.
 - People who have a really high opinion of themselves rarely make good friends.
 - Everybody would like to be entertaining on social occasions.

2.2

GRAMMAR

Past Perfect Simple and Continuous

I can talk about a past action or situation that took place before another past action or situation.

- 1 Read the story. Why did Amelie and Steve wait seventeen years to get married?

It was meant to be

Amelie was studying English in the UK when she met Steve. It was love at first sight and they spent a wonderful summer together. Amelie returned to France after her course finished. They tried to keep a long-distance relationship going, but they drifted apart.

- 5 A few years later, Steve wrote to Amelie, but Amelie's mother put the letter on the mantelpiece, forgot to tell Amelie, and it slipped down the back of the fireplace. Many years later, a builder was removing the fireplace when he found the letter. It had been there for ten years.
- 10 During that time, Amelie had remained single and had never forgotten the love of her life. Meanwhile, Steve had been working in a factory in his home town. He had been thinking about Amelie too, but he assumed she had got married to somebody else.

When she finally read the letter, Amelie was too nervous to call as so much time had passed. But she finally plucked up courage and they arranged to meet.

- 10 They got married seventeen years after they had first met.



- 2 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Match the underlined examples in the story in Exercise 1 with rules 1–4.

GRAMMAR FOCUS



Past Perfect Simple and Continuous

You use the **Past Perfect** to make it clear that an activity took place before the main events in a story.

- You use the **Past Perfect Simple** to describe a completed action.
- You use the **Past Perfect Continuous** to describe an activity in progress.
- You use the **Past Perfect Simple** (NOT **Continuous**) with state verbs (*be, have, know, etc.*).
- You don't have to use the **Past Perfect** if a time expression (i.e. *before* or *after*) makes the order of events clear.

- 3 Find other examples of the Past Perfect in the story and discuss why the simple or continuous forms have been used.

- 4 Choose the correct option.

- Amelie didn't know that Steve *wrote / had written* to her.
- Steve didn't know that Amelie *had never received / had never been receiving* his letter.
- Steve thought Amelie *had got / got* married to somebody else.
- Amelie found the letter and realised it *was lying / had been lying* behind the fireplace for ten years.
- Amelie was nervous about calling Steve because they *hadn't seen / didn't see* each other for a long time.

- 5 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Make any changes necessary, but do not change the order of the words.

- The roads were wet this morning. It had been raining (it/rain) all night.
- Yesterday I was tired. I _____ (not/sleep) well the previous night.
- I went to the doctor last week because I _____ (not/feel) well.
- I _____ (have/same/phone) for ages so I got a new one last month.
- I didn't understand yesterday's homework because I _____ (not/listen/teacher) in class.
- By the time I arrived, _____ (lesson/already/start).

- 6 Are any sentences in Exercise 5 true for you? Write three of your own sentences using Past Perfect forms.

- 7 Complete the story with the Past Perfect Simple or Continuous form of the verbs in the box. Why did Eric and Vilma wait forty years to get married?

(grow hear know live make meet)
(move search see work)

Eric and Vilma 40 YEARS ON



Vilma was my wife's best friend. They, ¹ had known each other since childhood. When Vilma moved away we lost touch, but she ² _____ a big impression on me. So when my wife and I separated, I decided to ask my friends if anyone ³ _____ from her, but no one had. Vilma was a very compassionate person so I imagined that she ⁴ _____ to Tibet and ⁵ _____ for a charity for a few years. Finally, my niece called to say she ⁶ _____ Vilma's profile on Facebook. I rang her and found that she ⁷ _____ in Paris, so I ⁸ _____ in the wrong place! We met up and when we saw one another it was magical. We ⁹ _____ older, but that didn't matter. She was widowed and didn't have children. I proposed immediately. Forty years after we ¹⁰ _____ for the first time, we got married.

- 8 Write questions about the story from the prompts. Then answer the questions.

- How long / Eric's ex-wife / know / Vilma?
How long had Eric's ex-wife known Vilma?
- any of Eric's friends / hear / from Vilma / after she / move away?
- Why / Eric / think / Vilma / move / to Tibet?
- Where / Vilma / live / since Eric / lose touch / with her?
- Vilma / have / any children / with her late husband?

2.3

LISTENING

Multiple choice

I can understand the details of an extended radio interview with a neuroscientist.

- 1 **SPEAKING** 'What is love?' is one of the most popular searches on Google. Match the people 1–4 with their definition of love in the memes A–D. Which definition do you like best? Why?

- 1 A novelist
2 A charity worker
3 A parent
4 A neuroscientist

- 2 **1.24** Listen to an interview with a neuroscientist and answer the questions.

- 1 What does she specialise in?
2 How does she define love?
3 Does her research affect her own feelings about love?

EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 3 **1.24** Listen to the interview again. For questions 1–5, choose the correct answer A–D.

- 1 Dr Ruby Niverton studies how
A emotions influence the brain.
B chemical reactions in the brain affect us.
C data about the brain can be collected.
D the brain is linked to the heart.
- 2 According to Dr Niverton, romantic love
A is linked to hunger and thirst.
B isn't very powerful.
C is like an addiction.
D is a characteristic of all addicts.
- 3 The scanner showed that when someone is in love
A there is only activity in one area of the brain.
B the strength of their passion has no effect on brain activity.
C two parts of the brain are activated.
D their brain activity is similar to when they think about chocolate.
- 4 Experiments found that when a person is heartbroken, the love-related activity in their brain
A stops completely.
B is significantly reduced.
C continues in a different part of the brain.
D can be increased.
- 5 Dr Niverton's findings demonstrate that strong romantic emotions
A are usually of shorter duration than hunger.
B are not always related to brain activity.
C cause brain reactions that can be scientifically measured.
D rarely lead to obsession.

WORD STORE 2D Relationship phrases

- 4 **1.25** Complete WORD STORE 2D with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.



- 5 Match the phrases in WORD STORE 2D with their definitions. Can you put these possible stages in a relationship in a logical order?

- 1 fancy sb = _____
2 adore sb = _____
3 end a relationship = _____
4 fall in love with sb = _____
5 start seeing sb = _____
6 worship sb = _____

- 6 In pairs, write a short love story. Use phrases from Exercise 5. Read the love stories written by other students. Decide which is the best one.

When Harry met Sally ...

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 7 **1.26** Listen and repeat the words in the box. Write pairs of words with the same consonant sound.

(church confusion courage feature)
Japan measure official pressure

church – feature

- 8 **1.27** Complete the table with the words from Exercise 7. Then listen, check and repeat.

Sound	Typical spelling	Example
/ʃ/	sh ti + vowel ci + vowel ss	shrine worship attention emotional 1 <u>official</u> passionate 2 _____
/ʒ/	s + ion s + ure	3 _____ decision 4 _____ pleasure
/tʃ/	ch t + ure	5 _____ match 6 _____ picture
/dʒ/	j g	7 _____ journey 8 _____ marriage

- 1 Look at the book genres in the box. Which books do you often (✓)/sometimes (?)/never (X) read? Compare with a partner.

adventure ☐ (auto)biographies ☐ crime ☐
 fantasy ☐ historical fiction ☐ horror ☐
 mystery ☐ romance ☐ science fiction ☐

- 2 **SPEAKING** Look at the screenshots from a film based on the book *Me Before You* by Jojo Moyes and discuss the questions with a partner.
- What kind of a story do you think it is?
 - What is the relationship between the two characters?
- 3 Read the information about Jojo Moyes and the extract. Check your ideas in Exercise 2 and match the characters with the adjectives.
- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 Mrs Traynor ☐ | 3 Nathan ☐ |
| 2 Lou Clark ☐ | 4 Will ☐ |
- a level-headed, responsible, professional
 b strange, short-tempered, dependent
 c neurotic, worried, formal
 d shocked, self-conscious, nervous

EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 4 Read the extract again. For questions 1–5, choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.
- Mrs Traynor was hoping that
 - Lou would make an effort with her clothes.
 - Lou and she would become friends.
 - Lou could be good company for Will.
 - Lou could help Will use his digital devices.
 - After she spoke to Mrs Traynor and before she went in to meet Will, Lou thought that
 - she had nothing in common with him.
 - Will was into Hollywood comedies.
 - she could develop a friendship with Will.
 - Will was like her other disabled friends.
 - When Mrs Traynor opened Will's door, Lou saw
 - a spacious elegantly furnished room.
 - a small room with colourful furniture.
 - a room with a glass door that was open.
 - a room with a sheepskin on the floor.
 - When Lou entered Will's room,
 - Will was the first to speak.
 - Lou spoke to Will confidently.
 - Lou shook hands with Will.
 - Will ended up greeting her politely.
 - The passage shows
 - Lou's ability to be a good carer to Will.
 - the challenges facing Will in his day-to-day life.
 - what sort of relationship Will has with his mother.
 - what kind of situation Lou is getting herself into.

- 5 **1.29** Complete the definitions with the base form of the verbs and phrases in blue in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- bend low = *crouch down*
 - appear for a short time (e.g. on a face) = _____
 - react suddenly = _____
 - move an arm from side to side = _____
 - make an ugly face = _____
 - hold firmly = _____
 - pause nervously = _____
 - make a low sound of pain = _____
 - handle or control sth = _____
 - make a movement as if drink is going down your throat = _____
- 6 Complete the questions with the correct forms of the verbs from Exercise 5. Then answer the questions.
- Why does Will find it hard to _____ the remote control and _____ it?
 - Why did Mrs Traynor _____ before knocking on Will's door?
 - Who was _____ to adjust Will's feet on the wheelchair?
 - How did Mrs Traynor react when Will _____ a _____?
 - Why did Lou try not to _____ when Will was _____ and crying out?
 - Why did Lou _____ instead of shaking Will's hand?
 - When did a smile _____ Will's face?
- WORD STORE 2E** **Ways of looking**
- 7 **1.30** Complete WORD STORE 2E with the words *glance*, *gaze* and *stare* from the extract. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 8 Choose the more likely verbs to complete these example sentences from the *Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English*.
- We *peeped* / *gazed* through a crack in the fence and saw Mrs Finley talking to a strange-looking man.
 - He *stared* / *glanced* over his shoulder, the man was coming towards him, pushing through the crowd.
 - I lay back on the sand and *glanced* / *gazed* at the stars above.
 - From the corner of my eye, I *glimpsed* / *stared* at a man running out of the store.
 - She sat there *staring* / *peeping* into space.
 - Roger *peered* / *gazed* into the dark corridor to see what was making the noise.
- 9 **SPEAKING** Tell your own story with a partner.
- Say a sentence including at least one word or phrase from WORD STORE 2E or Exercise 5.
 - Your partner says another sentence to continue the story.
 - Take turns to develop and conclude the story in up to eight sentences.
 - Compare your story with other pairs.

From me before you

by Jojo Moyes

1.28



Jojo Moyes

is an English journalist, novelist and screenwriter. She was a journalist for ten

years before becoming a full-time novelist in 2002. She's written numerous best-selling novels, and her book *Me Before You* won several awards and has gone on to sell over eight million copies worldwide. *Me Before You* is a love story between Will Traynor, paralysed after a motorcycle accident, and Louisa Clark, his new carer. The film based on the book was also a huge box-office success. Jojo lives and writes on a farm in Essex, England, with her husband and their three children.

Mrs Traynor looked at my clothes, as if for the first time. I was wearing the very shaggy waistcoat thing that Dad says makes me look like an emu. I tried to smile. It seemed like an effort.

'Obviously I would hope that you could ... get on with each other. It would be nice if he could think of you as a friend rather than a paid professional.'

'Right. What does he ... um ... like to do?'

'He watches films. Sometimes he listens to the radio, or to music. He has one of those digital things. If you position it near his hand, he can usually **manipulate** it himself. He has some movement in his fingers, although he finds it hard to **grip**.'

I felt myself brightening. If he liked music and films, surely we could find some common ground? I had a sudden picture of myself and this man laughing at some Hollywood comedy, me running the Hoover around the bedroom while he listened to his music. Perhaps this was going to be okay. Perhaps we might end up as friends. I had never had a disabled friend before – only Treen's friend David, who was deaf, but would put you in a head-lock if you suggested that meant disabled.

'Do you have any questions?'

'No.'

'Then let's go and introduce you.' She glanced at her watch. 'Nathan should have finished dressing him now.' We **hesitated** outside the door and Mrs Traynor knocked. 'Are you in there? I have Miss Clark to meet you, Will.'

There was no answer.

'Will? Nathan?'

A broad New Zealand accent. 'He's decent, Mrs T.' She pushed open the door. The annexe's living room was deceptively large, and one wall consisted entirely of glass doors that looked out over open countryside.

A wood burner glowed quietly in the corner, and a low beige sofa faced a huge flat-screen television, its seats covered by a wool throw. The mood of the room was tasteful, and peaceful – a Scandinavian bachelor pad.

In the centre of the room stood a black wheelchair, its seat and back cushioned by sheepskin. A solidly built man in white collarless scrubs was **crouching down**, adjusting a man's feet on the footrests of the wheelchair. As we stepped into the room, the man in the wheelchair looked up from under shaggy, unkempt hair. His eyes met mine and after a pause, he **let out a bloodcurdling groan**. Then his mouth twisted, and he let out another unearthly cry.

I felt his mother stiffen.

'Will, stop it!'

He didn't even glance towards her. Another prehistoric sound emerged from somewhere near his chest. It was a terrible, agonizing noise. I tried not to **flinch**. The man was **grimacing**, his head tilted and sunk into his shoulders as he stared at me through contorted features. He looked grotesque, and vaguely angry.

I realized that where I held my bag, my knuckles had turned white.

'Will! Please.' There was a faint note of hysteria in his mother's voice. 'Please, don't do this.'

Oh God, I thought. I'm not up to this. I **swallowed**, hard. The man was still staring at me. He seemed to be waiting for me to do something.

'I – I'm Lou.' My voice, uncharacteristically tremulous, broke into the silence. I wondered, briefly, whether to hold out a hand and then, remembering that he wouldn't be able to take it, **gave a feeble wave** instead. 'Short for Louisa.'

Then to my astonishment his features cleared, and his head straightened on his shoulders.

Will Traynor gazed at me steadily, the faintest of smiles **flickering across** his face. 'Good morning, Miss Clark,' he said. 'I hear you're my latest minder.'



Relative clauses

I can identify and use different types of relative clauses.

- SPEAKING** Discuss the advantages or disadvantages of being the firstborn child in a family.
- Read Part 1 of a text about birth order. Are any of the things you discussed in Exercise 1 mentioned?

WHAT BIRTH ORDER SAYS ABOUT YOU

Part 1

Birth order is the key ¹that can unlock your personality. Here are some generalisations that have come out of research ²carried out over the years.

The firstborn

Parents ³learning to bring up their first child tend to be extremely attentive and protective. Firstborn children, ⁴who have their parents' undivided attention, are responsible, reliable and well-behaved. Firstborns tend to be perfectionists bursting with confidence, ⁵which makes it hard for them to admit when they're wrong.



- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. What types of clauses are examples 1–5 in blue in Part 1 of the text?

GRAMMAR FOCUS 7

Relative clauses

- In **defining relative clauses** you can leave out *who*, *which* or *that* when it is the object of the verb.
Olga is the girl who sits next to me. ('who' is the subject of 'sit')
Olga is the girl (who) I sit next to. ('who' is the object of 'sit')
- In **non-defining relative clauses**, *who*, *which*, *where* or *whose* always come after a comma and you cannot leave them out.
Eva is friends with Sam, who I can't stand. (= 'I can't stand Sam.')
- In **reduced relative clauses** (defining and non-defining) you use a Present Participle for active verbs and a Past Participle for passive verbs.
There's a new teacher teaching Year Four. ('who is teaching')
Josh, taught by the new teacher, is delighted. (= 'who is taught')
- In **comment clauses** you refer to the whole of the main clause using *which*.
Eva is friends with Sam, which I can't stand. (= 'I can't stand the situation.')

Part 2

The middle child

Middle children, ¹which have been / [Ø] given less attention by their parents, are more independent. Middle children ²which / whose older siblings boss them around feel life is unfair. They often believe their other siblings get all the attention, ³which / that can make them feel left out.

The baby of the family

Parents ⁴which are / [Ø] bringing up their youngest children are more lenient, ⁵which / what means that last-borns are rarely told off. Youngest children, ⁶that / who have fewer responsibilities, are carefree and easy-going. The baby of the family, ⁷whose / who is used to having things done for them, tends to be bad at making decisions.

The only child

Only children have many of the same qualities as the oldest child, ⁸that / which is not surprising. Only children, ⁹which / who spend more time with adults, will often act older than their age. The typical only child likes being the centre of attention, ¹⁰which / whose sometimes makes them appear self-centred.

- Read Part 2 of the text and choose the correct option.
- SPEAKING** What about your family? Discuss the comments in Parts 1 and 2. Which statements do you agree with?
- Rewrite the sentences using reduced relative clauses. Tick the statements you agree with.
 - Siblings who share a bedroom tend to be less selfish.
Siblings sharing a bedroom tend to be less selfish.
 - Children who have been brought up as the baby of the family are often fussy eaters.
 - Firstborns, who are accustomed to accepting rules, are better behaved at school.
 - Middle-born children, who grow up with a younger and older sibling, can be argumentative.
 - Only children who spend a lot of time alone tend to be very creative.
 - The youngest child, who is used to being the centre of attention, is usually sociable and good fun to be around.
- Complete the sentences with *who*, *which*, *that*, *where*, *whose* or *Ø* (no pronoun). Which sentences are true for you? Compare with a partner.

- My sister is always leaving her clothes on the floor, *which* is very annoying!
- In my family, the person _____ cooks the most delicious food is my grandmother.
- I'm jealous of people _____ parents let them do whatever they want.
- The only place _____ I can get some peace at home is in the bathroom.
- My mother, _____ thinks I'm still a baby, worries when I go out late.
- I've got several cousins _____ living in the same town as me.
- We live in a house _____ built over 100 years

FOCUS VLOG 8

About important people

8 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 135.

2.6

SPEAKING

Telling a personal anecdote

I can tell a personal anecdote about a memorable day out.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the extract from a website. Discuss which activities you find the most/the least attractive and why.

Home

Events

News

Archives

memorableday.com

Are you tired of doing the same old things with your friends? Why not try something different with one of our alternative days out?

- > Go mountain biking
- > Visit an art gallery or photo exhibition
- > Sing karaoke
- > Rent a rowing boat or kayak
- > Attend a workshop (e.g. dancing or DJing)
- > Go go-kart racing
- > Visit an aquarium or zoo



- 2 **SPEAKING** Describe the photo in Exercise 1 and discuss the questions with a partner.

- What might the people be thinking and feeling?
- In your opinion, what factors make a memorable day out?

- 3 **Order the parts of an anecdote about a memorable day out.**

- Where and when the day took place, and other background information
- Who was involved in the day
- Why the day was so memorable
- What the anecdote is going to be about
- What happened step by step

- 4 **1.31** Listen to someone describing a memorable day out and check your ideas in Exercise 3. Try to retell the anecdote with a partner.

- 5 **1.31** Complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with the words in the box. Then listen again and check.

(All As As soon as blue doubt Funnily Initially place)

SPEAKING FOCUS

Introducing the anecdote

(Right, so) I'm going to tell you about (a great day out).

(OK, so) this is a story about (a day I'll never forget).

This took ¹place about (a month ago).

Sequencing events in the anecdote

² /When/Just after (we got there, the sun came out).

³ /To begin with, (we were the only people there ...)

As/While (we were sitting there ...)

Suddenly/⁴ of a sudden, (the weather changed).

Describing events vividly

Predictably/⁵ expected (other people soon started ...)

Unexpectedly/Out of the ⁶, (it started pouring with rain).

Luckily/Fortunately, (after it stopped raining, the sun came out again).

Finishing the anecdote

Without a ⁷, it was (one of the best days I've had in ages).

When I look back (on that day) now, I feel ...

It turned out to be (an unforgettable day out).

Strangely/⁸ enough, (the best days are often the ones you don't really plan).

- 6 **1.32** Read the anecdote and choose the correct option. Then listen and check.

Right, so this ¹took place / is a story about a day I'll never forget. I've always loved music and last month my friend and I went to a DJing workshop. ²To begin with / Just after, we learnt about the equipment. We can't afford our own stuff yet but, ³fortunately / out of the blue, we were able to use the decks, mixers and laptops at the centre. ⁴When / While we had understood the basics, it was time to have a go. ⁵Strangely / Predictably, it was really difficult at first, but after a while I started to get the hang of it. It feels and sounds fantastic when you get it right. It turned out to be an ⁶unexpected / unforgettable day. I can't wait for the next workshop.



- 7 **SPEAKING** Follow the instructions below. Take turns to be Student A and Student B.

Student A: Tell a personal anecdote about a memorable day out. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

Student B: Listen to your partner's anecdote and think of a question to ask them when they have finished.

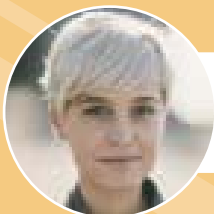
- 1 **SPEAKING** Read Lisa's post and comment on her last sentence. Discuss whether you could share a flat with Lisa. Give reasons for your answer.

Home

New posts

Friends

Profile



Lisa is looking for a flatmate

[Message](#) [Send invitation](#)

I'm a twenty-one-year-old student with a spare room to rent. It's a big room with a bed, a wardrobe and a desk. The flat has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Only people who meet the requirements below should apply.

- 5 You need to be on a full-time course because I don't want you hanging around the flat in the daytime.

I lead a healthy lifestyle. I'm a vegan and I don't like people cooking meat in my kitchen. It's equally important that there are no cooking smells during the weekend.

- 10 If you expect me to be your friend, you'll be **bitterly disappointed**. I'm painfully shy and I can't stand being the **centre of attention**. I don't need a soulmate, I just want a quiet life.

I **sleep badly**, so I don't want you to binge-watch TV programmes or roar with laughter late at night. Lights go out here at 11 p.m.

- 15 Basically, I'd like you to use your common sense. If I've gone to bed, I expect you to **keep quiet**.

Friends are okay, but if more than three **guests turn up**, it's too much.

I set **high standards** of cleanliness here. I like people who are

- 20 **neat and tidy**. When you move in, we can **reach an agreement** about how we share the cleaning.

I'm quite easy-going.

- 2 Read the LANGUAGE FOCUS and complete it with the examples in blue in Lisa's post.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Collocations

- A collocation is a central feature of any language. It refers to typical, frequently occurring combinations of words. For example, you can have *strong feelings*, but not **tough feelings*. You might *burst into tears*, but not **explode into tears*.
- The strength of a collocation can vary. *Have a laugh* is quite weak because you can also *have a day off*, *have a shower* or *have a baby*. *Shrug your shoulders* is strong. You can't really *shrug* anything else!
- Different types of collocations:
 adjective + noun = *nasty habit*, *vivid imagination*, ¹ *high standards*
 verb + noun = *share an interest*, *break the law*, ² _____
 noun + verb = *accidents happen*, ³ _____
 noun + (of/and) noun = *sense of humour*, ⁴ _____
 verb + adjective = *look miserable*, ⁵ _____
 adjective + adjective = *loud and clear*, ⁶ _____
 verb + adverb = *smile politely*, ⁷ _____
 adverb + adjective = *perfectly normal*, ⁸ _____
- Choosing the right collocation will make your English sound more natural.

- 3 Look at the underlined collocations in Lisa's post. What type of collocation are they? Add them as examples in the LANGUAGE FOCUS box.



- 4 **USE OF ENGLISH** Read the posts from Anna and Martin and complete the texts with one word in each gap. Which person would be more suitable to share a flat with Lisa?

Home

New posts

Friends

Profile

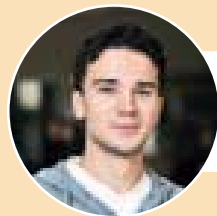


Anna's looking for a room

Message

Send invitation

I'm sociable, so I'd love to live with like-minded people. I hope we may ¹ the same interests. I have an excellent sense of ² and I like to ³ a laugh. I don't have any nasty ⁴ and I've never ⁵ the law 😊. My private life is perfectly ⁶.



Martin's looking for a room

Message

Send invitation

I'm a medical student, so I work long hours at the hospital. I usually go back to my home town to visit my parents two weekends a month or whenever I ⁷ a day off. I eat out a lot because I can't cook. I'd like to live with somebody who has ⁸ standards of cleanliness and is ⁹ and tidy like me. Please get in touch if you like my profile.

- 5 **1.33** Match a word from box A with a word from box B to make six common collocations. Then listen to the conversation between Lisa and Dave and check your answers.

A

(casual deeply free good highly supremely)

B

(acquaintance company confident depressed intelligent spirit)

casual acquaintance,

- 6 **SPEAKING** Discuss the ideal qualities for somebody to share a flat with. Use the collocations from Exercise 5.

I would/wouldn't like to live with someone who is (a/an) ...

- 7 Choose the correct option, A, B, C or D. Which sentences are true for you?

- Dad says it's important to set _____ standards for yourself.
A fine B tall C high D big
- My sister has a _____ imagination and draws incredible pictures.
A vivid B detailed C sharp D strong
- The last film I saw was rubbish. I was _____ disappointed.
A totally B absolutely C bitterly D completely
- Most of my online friends are best described as _____ acquaintances.
A occasional B casual C nearby D relaxed
- I eat well and try to lead a _____ lifestyle.
A strong B fit C wise D healthy

- 8 Complete the questions with one word in each gap.

- Do you sometimes doubt yourself or are you always _____ confident?
- Are you messy or _____ and tidy?
- Are you shy or do you like being the _____ of attention?
- Are you a good citizen? Have you ever _____ the law?
- Are you emotional? How likely are you to _____ into tears?
- Can you remember the last time you _____ with laughter?

- 9 **SPEAKING** Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 8. Give reasons for your answers.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1-2

- 10 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word in capitals. Do not change the word given.

- People describe me as independent or rebellious. **FREE**
People describe me as _____.
- Students at our school don't have to wear school uniform. **REQUIRED**
Students at our school _____ to wear school uniform.
- My best friend is very shy and hates it when everybody looks at her. **ATTENTION**
My best friend is very shy and hates _____.
- Someone's posted a funny video on the school website. **BEEN**
A funny video _____ on the school website.
- If my parents shouted at me when I was younger I used to start crying. **INTO**
If my parents shouted at me when I was younger I used to _____.
- My last exam results were extremely disappointing. **BITTERLY**
I _____ my last exam results.



WRITING

2.8

An article

I can write an article attracting the reader's attention using participle clauses.

- 1 Look at the photos. Which aspects of adolescence do they illustrate?

- 2 **SPEAKING** Read *Last week's competition* on the *Psychology Magazine* website and discuss the questions with a partner.
 - 1 Why is adolescence described as a 'roller coaster ride'?
 - 2 What are the best things about being a young adult?
 - 3 What new challenges do you face as a young adult?
- 3 Read the winning article on the magazine website and discuss the questions with a partner.
 - 1 Did the author mention any of the pleasures or challenges you discussed in Exercise 2?
 - 2 What is the author's conclusion? Do you agree?

Psychology Magazine

Home | Latest news | Competitions | Near you | Photos

Search 🔍

Have Your Say

Last week's competition

The journey from teenager to adult can bring joy and pain, success and failure, friendship and heartbreak. If you are riding the roller coaster of adolescence right now, then *Psychology Magazine* wants to hear from you.

Send us an article in which you describe some of the very best things about coming of age and discuss the most challenging aspects of life for people living through these 'in-between' years.

As usual, a selection of articles will be published in an upcoming edition of *Psychology Magazine*.

The winning article:

Adolescence: Pain and Pleasure in Equal Measure

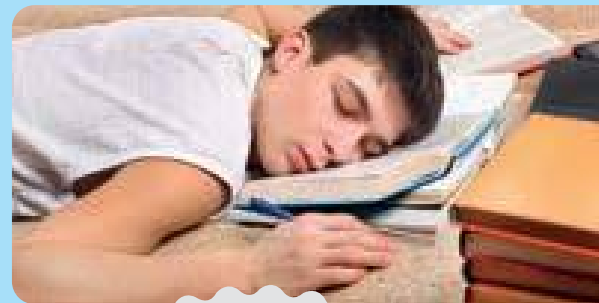
by Josh Payne

Remember when you were little and school summer holidays seemed to go on forever? Being children, most of us lived carefree and happy lives. Sadly, this does not last and we must all grow up. I can reliably report that the process brings pain and pleasure in equal measure.

First, there is the pain. Adolescence is a time of huge physical and emotional change. For many of us this change is accompanied by feelings of self-doubt, envy and embarrassment. Apparently, we are neither children nor adults; asked to act like 'grown ups' in certain situations, but not in others. 'Be responsible and act your age ... but be home by 9 p.m.!' These mixed messages can be hard to deal with. Add to this the pressure of schoolwork, and it is no wonder we sometimes feel unable to cope.

Thankfully, alongside the pain, there is also pleasure. Though we have to study, few of us need to worry about bills or housework. As a result, whether it is playing sport or online games, we have time to enjoy ourselves. On top of this, we have our friends. Pleasure and pain alike, can be shared with those who know exactly how we feel.

Despite the challenges, as far as I am concerned, the pleasure of being a young adult outweighs the pain. Although it may not always seem so now, perhaps in the future we will look back on adolescence as 'the best days of our lives'.



This week's competition

There are many unfair gender-based stereotypes concerning the interests and attitudes of adolescents. Write an article of 200–250 words in which you describe some of these common stereotypes and challenge them by explaining why they are untrue or unfair. As usual, a selection of articles will be printed in an upcoming edition of *Psychology Magazine*.



- 4 Read the **WRITING FOCUS** and look at the article again. Decide which techniques the author used for writing the title, the introduction and the conclusion.

WRITING FOCUS

An article

Title

Attract the reader's attention from the start:

- 1 ask a question (*Are These the Best Days of Our Lives?*)
- 2 use vivid adjectives (*Adolescence: Thrilling and Terrifying*)
- 3 summarise the topic (*The Pains and Pleasures of Adolescent Life*)
- 4 use rhyme/wordplay (*Top Ten Tips for Troubled Teens*)

Introduction

Define the topic and hold the reader's attention:

- 5 ask a question
- 6 tell a short anecdote
- 7 give an interesting or surprising fact or figure
- 8 give a quotation

Main paragraphs

Develop the topic and discuss all the issues mentioned in the question.

Conclusion

Give your personal opinion and leave the reader with something to think about:

- 9 ask a question
- 10 refer to the future
- 11 make an appeal or suggestion
- 12 return to the idea in the title or the introduction

Note: Articles tend to be written in a formal or semi-formal style. In a formal article avoid: informal phrases (*I think* = *As far as I am concerned* ...), colloquial language (*Most parents reckon that* ... = *In most parents' opinions* ...) and contractions (*don't* = *do not*).

- 5 Read the example article introductions and conclusions. Decide which techniques 5–12 in the **WRITING FOCUS** the authors used.

Introductions:

- a It's easy to forget that 100 percent of adults alive today were once teenagers like us. As a young man, my 'sensible' father was a real rebel. He rode a motorbike and got a tattoo at the age of sixteen.
- b In his famous book, American author John Gray said that 'Men are from Mars, women are from Venus'. Does this also apply to adolescents? Are younger men and women really so different from each other?

Conclusions:

- c As I began by saying, men and women differ in many ways, but individuals also differ regardless of their gender. We should be wary of stereotyping, respect each other and cooperate to use our strengths for a common good.
- d So, as a regular teenage girl, am I really that different from the boy sitting opposite me in class? Perhaps not. Whether we will become more or less alike in later life remains to be seen.

- 6 Read the **LANGUAGE FOCUS** and rewrite the underlined fragments using participle clauses.

- 1 Because they want to look stylish, many adolescent boys also enjoy shopping for clothes.
- 2 Because they attend mixed schools, most adolescent boys and girls receive the same education.
- 3 Because I grew up with three sisters, I know something about the differences between boys and girls.
- 4 Because they are stereotypes, such statements do contain an element of truth, of course.
- 5 Because I have always got on well with boys, I think I understand some of their attitudes.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Participle clauses to express reason

You can use **participle clauses** in formal writing to express the **reason** for a statement made in the main clause.

- Use a **Present Participle (verb + ing)** when states or actions occur at the same time.
Being children, most of us lived carefree and happy lives.
= *Because we were children* (past), most of us lived carefree and happy lives. (past)
- Use a **Perfect Participle (having + Past Participle)** when one state or action occurs before another.
Having grown physically, many adolescents expect to be treated as adults.
= *Because they have grown physically* (past), many adolescents expect to be treated as adults. (present)

- 7 **SPEAKING** Read the statements and decide if they are stereotypes about adolescent girls or boys. Do they reflect reality? Discuss in groups.

- They find it difficult to talk about their feelings.
- They are always gossiping.
- They love fashion and shopping.
- They love sports and gadgets.
- They are kind and considerate.
- They are rude and aggressive.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 8 You are going to reply to *This week's competition* on the *Psychology Magazine* website. Look at page 30, read the topic on the website and think about the following:

- Where will your article appear and who will read it?
- Choose two or three gender-based stereotypes you think are untrue or unfair (see Exercise 7 for ideas). Note down reasons to support your views.
- Select techniques from the **WRITING FOCUS** to help you attract and hold the reader's attention.
- Make sure you use a formal or semi-formal style.

- 9 Complete the writing task from the website. Include at least one participle clause to express a reason. Use the **WRITING FOCUS** and **LANGUAGE FOCUS** to help you.

2.1 Vocabulary 🔊 4.9

adventurous /əd'ventʃərəs/
 affectionate /ə'fekʃənət/
 agreeable /ə'gri:əbəl/
 daring /'deəriŋ/
 excel in /'ɪksəl ɪn/
 fair-minded /,fiə 'maɪndɪd/
 feel strongly about sth /,fi:l 'strɒŋli ə,baʊt ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 (be) full of oneself /,bi fʊl əv wʌn'self/
 good-natured /gʊd 'neɪtʃəd/
 have a love of learning /,həv ə lʌv əv 'lɜ:nɪŋ/
 honest /'hɒnɪst/
 hopeless /'həʊpləs/
 humble /'hʌmbəl/
 imaginative /ɪ'mædʒənətɪv/
 insecure /,ɪnsɪ'kjʊə/
 intellectual /,ɪntə'lektʃuəl/
 kind-hearted /,kaɪnd 'hɑ:təd/
 laid-back /,leɪd 'bæk/
 larger than life /'lɑ:dʒə ðən ,laɪf/
 level-headed /,levəl'hedɪd/
 make sb feel at ease /meɪk ,sʌmbədi ,fi:l ət 'i:z/
 moody /'mu:di/
 party /'pɑ:ti/
 pay attention to detail /,peɪ ,ə'tenʃən tə dɪ'teɪl/
 perceptive /pə'septɪv/
 plan in advance /,plæn ɪn əd'vɑ:ns/
 self-centred /,self 'sentəd/
 self-conscious /,self 'kɒnʃəs/
 self-critical /,self 'krɪtɪkəl/
 short-tempered /,ʃɔ:t 'tempəd/
 small talk /'smɔ:l tɔ:k/
 sociable /'səʊʃəbəl/
 speak up /,spi:k 'ʌp/
 spontaneous /spɒn'teɪniəs/
 strong-willed /,strɒŋ 'wɪld/
 tactful /'tæktfəl/
 the life and soul of the party /ðə ,laɪf ən ,səʊl əv ðə 'pɑ:ti/
 think outside the box /'θɪŋk aʊt'saɪd ðə 'bɒks/
 thorough /'θʌrə/
 trusting /'trʌstɪŋ/
 witty /'wɪti/

2.2 Grammar 🔊 4.10

assume /ə'sju:m/
 compassionate /kəm'pæʃənət/
 drift apart /,drɪft ə'pɑ:t/
 late /leɪt/
 long-distance relationship /,lɒŋ ,dɪstəns rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp/
 lose touch /,lu:z 'tʌtʃ/
 love at first sight /,lʌv ət ,fɜ:st 'saɪt/
 make an impression /,meɪk ən ɪm'preʃən/
 mantelpiece /'mæntlpi:s/
 pluck up the courage /,plʌk ʌp ðə 'kʌrɪdʒ/

propose to sb /prə'pəʊz tə ,sʌmbədi/
 remain /rɪ'meɪn/
 separate from sb /'sepəreɪt frəm ,sʌmbədi/
 slip down /slɪp daʊn/
 widowed /'wɪdəʊd/

2.3 Listening 🔊 4.11

addiction /ə'dɪkʃən/
 adore /ə'dɔ:/
 be attracted to /bi ə'træktɪd tə/
 confusion /kən'fju:ʒən/
 fall for /,fɔ:l 'fɔ/
 fall in love with /,fɔ:l ɪn 'lʌv wɪð/
 fancy /'fænsi/
 feature /'fi:tʃə/
 generosity /,dʒenə'reɪsəti/
 go out with /,gəʊ 'aʊt wɪð/
 heartbroken /'hɑ:t,breɪkən/
 (be) madly in love with /,bi ,mædli ɪn 'lʌv wɪð/
 measure /'meʒə/
 novelist /'nɒvəlɪst/
 (be) obsessed with /,bi əb'sest wɪð/
 passionate /'pæʃənət/
 pleasure /'pleʒə/
 pressure /'preʃə/
 reduced /rɪ'dju:st/
 relationship /rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp/
 see sb /'si: ,sʌmbədi/
 self-sacrifice /,self 'sækrɪfaɪs/
 shrine /ʃraɪn/
 split up with /,splɪt 'ʌp wɪð/
 unconditional /,ʌnkən'dɪʃənəl/
 worship /'wɜ:ʃɪp/

2.4 Reading 🔊 4.12

adjust /ə'dʒʌst/
 agonizing /'ægənaɪzɪŋ/
 astonishment /ə'stɒnɪʃmənt/
 bachelor pad /'bætʃələ ,pæd/
 be up to sth /bi 'ʌp tə ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 bend /bend/
 bloodcurdling /'blʌd,kɜ:dlɪŋ/
 box-office success /,bɒks ,ɒfɪs sək'ses/
 brighten /'braɪtn/
 broad accent /,brɔ:d 'æksənt/
 carer /'keərə/
 chest /tʃest/
 collarless /'kɒlələs/
 confidently /'kɒnfɪdəntli/
 contorted /kən'tɔ:tɪd/
 crack /kræk/
 crouch down /'kraʊtʃ ,daʊn/
 cushioned /'kʊʃənd/
 deaf /def/
 decent /'di:sənt/
 deceptively /di'septɪvli/
 dependent /dɪ'pendənt/
 disabled /dɪs'eɪbəl/
 emerge /ɪ'mɜ:dʒ/
 entirely /ɪn'taɪəli/

face a challenge /,feɪs ə 'tʃæləndʒ/
 faint /feɪnt/
 feeble /'fi:bəl/
 fence /fens/
 find common ground /,faɪnd ,kɒmən 'graʊnd/
 firmly /'fɜ:mli/
 flicker across /'flɪkər ə,kros/
 flinch /flɪntʃ/
 footrest /'fʊtrest/
 from the corner of your eye /frəm ðə ,kɔ:nər əv jɔ:r 'aɪ/
 furnished /'fɜ:nɪʃt/
 gaze /geɪz/
 get yourself into /,get jɔ:,self 'ɪntə/
 give a wave /,gɪv ə 'weɪv/
 glance /glɑ:ns/
 glimpse /glɪmps/
 grimace /'grɪməs/
 grip /grɪp/
 have nothing in common /,həv ,nʌθɪŋ ɪn 'kɒmən/
 hesitate /'hezəteɪt/
 keyhole /'ki:həʊl/
 knuckle /'nʌkləl/
 let out a groan /,let aʊt ə 'grəʊn/
 make an effort /,meɪk ən 'efət/
 manipulate /mə'nɪpjəleɪt/
 minder /'maɪndə/
 neurotic /nɜ:'rɒtɪk/
 passage /'pæsɪdʒ/
 peaceful /'pi:sfəl/
 peep /pi:p/
 peer /piə/
 position /pə'zɪʃən/
 push through /,pʊʃ 'θru:/
 put sb in a head-lock /pʊt ,sʌmbədi ɪn ə 'hed lɒk/
 screenwriter /'skri:n,raɪtə/
 scrubs /skrʌbz/
 shaggy /'ʃægi/
 sheepskin /'ʃi:p,skɪn/
 solidly built /,sɒlɪdli 'bɪlt/
 spacious /'speɪʃəs/
 stare /steə/
 steadily /'stedəli/
 stiffen /'stɪfən/
 straighten /'streɪtn/
 swallow /'swɒləʊ/
 tasteful /'teɪstfəl/
 tilt /tɪlt/
 tremulous /'tremjələs/
 twist your mouth /,twɪst jə 'maʊθ/
 uncharacteristically /ʌn,kærɪktə'rɪstɪkli/
 unearthly /ʌn'ɜ:θli/
 unkempt /,ʌn'kempt/
 wonder /'wʌndə/
 wood burner /'wʊd ,bɜ:nə/
 wool throw /,wʊl 'θrəʊ/

2.5 Grammar 🔊 4.13

accustomed to /ə'kʌstəmd tə/
 argumentative /,ɑ:gjə'mentətɪv/

attentive /ə'tentɪv/
boss sb around /,bɒs ,sʌmbəʊdi ə'raʊnd/
bursting with confidence /,bɜːstɪŋ wɪð 'kɒnfɪdəns/
carefree /'keəfri/
carry out research /,kæri ,aʊt rɪ'sɜːtʃ/
(be) the centre of attention /,bi) ðə ,sentə əv ə'tenʃən/
feel left out /,fiːl 'left ,aʊt/
firstborn /'fɜːstbɔːn/
fussy eater /,fʌsi 'i:tə/
protective /prə'tektɪv/
reliable /rɪ'laɪəbəl/
sibling /'sɪblɪŋ/
undivided attention /,ʌndɪ ,vaɪdəd ə'tenʃən/
well-behaved /,wel bi'heɪvd/

2.6 Speaking 4.14

all of a sudden /,ɔːl əv ə 'sʌdn/
attend a workshop /ə'tend ə 'wɜːkʃɒp/
funnily /'fʌnəli/
get the hang of /,get ðə 'hæŋ əv/
have a go /,həv ə 'gəʊ/
initially /ɪ'nɪʃəli/
memorable /'memərəbəl/
out of the blue /,aʊt əv ðə 'bluː/
pour with rain /,pɔː wɪð 'reɪn/
predictably /prɪ'dɪktəbli/
unexpectedly /,ʌnɪk'spektɪdli/

2.7 Use of English 4.15

accidents happen /'æksɪdənts ,hæpən/
binge-watch /'bɪndʒ wɒtʃ/
bitterly disappointed /,bɪtəli ,dɪsə'pɔɪntəd/
break the law /,breɪk ðə 'lɔː/

burst into tears /,bɜːst 'ɪntə 'tɪəz/
casual acquaintance /,kæʒuəl ə'kweɪntəns/
common sense /,kɒmən 'sens/
deeply depressed /,diːpli dɪ'prest/
deeply disappointed /,diːpli ,dɪsə'pɔɪntəd/
equally important /,iːkwəli ɪm'pɔːtənt/
free spirit /,friː 'spɪrɪt/
full-time course /,fʊl taɪm 'kɔːs/
go out /,gəʊ 'aʊt/
good company /,ɡʊd 'kʌmpəni/
hang around /,hæŋ ə'raʊnd/
have a baby /,həv ə 'beɪbi/
have a day off /,həv ə 'deɪ ɒf/
have a laugh /,həv ə 'lɑːf/
have a shower /,həv ə 'ʃaʊə/
healthy lifestyle /,helθi 'laɪfstɑɪl/
high standards /,haɪ 'stændədz/
highly intelligent /,haɪli ɪn'telədʒənt/
keep quiet /,kiːp 'kwaɪət/
like-minded /,laɪk 'maɪndɪd/
look miserable /,lʊk 'mɪzərəbəl/
loud and clear /,laʊd ən 'kliə/
meet the requirements /,miːt ðə rɪ'kwaɪəmənts/
miserable /'mɪzərəbəl/
nasty habit /,nɑːsti 'hæbɪt/
neat and tidy /,niːt ən 'taɪdi/
painfully shy /,peɪnfəli 'ʃaɪ/
perfectly normal /,pɜːfɪktli 'nɔːməl/
post a video /,pəʊst ə 'vɪdɪəʊ/
quiet life /'kwaɪət ,laɪf/
reach an agreement /,riːtʃ ən ə'ɡriːmənt/
roar with laughter /,rɔː wɪð 'lɑːftə/
roommate /'ruːm ,meɪt/
sense of humour /,sens əv 'hjuːmə/

set high standards /set ,haɪ 'stændədz/
share an interest /,ʃeər ən 'ɪntrəst/
shrug your shoulders /,ʃrʌɡ jə 'ʃəʊldəz/
sleep badly /,sliːp 'bædli/
smile politely /,smaɪl pə'laɪtli/
soulmate /'səʊlmeɪt/
spare room /,speə 'ruːm/
strong feeling /,strɒŋ 'fiːlɪŋ/
supremely confident /sʊ ,priːmli 'kɒnfədənt/
turn up /,tɜːn 'ʌp/
vivid imagination /,vɪvəd ɪ ,mædʒə'neɪʃən/

2.8 Writing 4.16

apparently /ə'pærəntli/
attract sb's attention /ə'trækt ,sʌmbədɪz ə'tenʃən/
come of age /,kʌm əv 'eɪdʒ/
cope with /'kəʊp wɪð/
differ /'dɪfə/
embarrassment /ɪm'bærəsmənt/
envy /'envi/
for the common good /fər ðə ,kɒmən 'ɡʊd/
gender-based stereotype /,dʒendə ,beɪst 'steriətaɪp/
gossip /'ɡɒsɪp/
heartbreak /'hɑːtbreɪk/
hold sb's attention /,həʊld ,sʌmbədɪz ə'tenʃən/
in equal measure /ɪn ,iːkwəl 'meʒə/
outweigh /aʊt'weɪ/
regardless of /rɪ'ɡɑːdləs əv/
roller coaster ride /'rəʊlə ,kəʊstə ,raɪd/
self-doubt /,self 'daʊt/

MY WORD LIST

PERSONALITY

ACTIONS OF THE BODY

OTHER

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1 Complete the sentences with words from the unit. The first and last letter of each word is given.

- The hero in action films is traditionally d g and prepared to take risks.
- She plays the type of detective who's especially p e and notices the smallest of details.
- My favourite character is the brother because he's very I k. When everyone else is getting stressed, he doesn't seem worried.
- I didn't like the main character because she's so s d. Everything's about her and she doesn't care how it affects the others.
- There's a scene where the uncle points out the problems with Joe's plan. He's really t I though and does it without discouraging his nephew.
- When Billy first dances in front of an audience, he's really s- s, but over time, he gains confidence.

2 Choose the correct option.

- It's important that an interviewer makes the candidate feel at ease / eased / at rest.
- She's confident, but not too filled with / full of / full with herself. She'll always acknowledge when she doesn't know something.
- When my uncle saw his future wife for the first time, he was immediately attracted with / to / at her.
- When Mum saw my new haircut, a look of shock hesitated / grimaced / flickered across her face.
- I only briefly glimpsed / glanced / gazed the message on her phone, but I'm sure it was from Bianca.

3 Complete the sentences with the Past Perfect Simple or Past Perfect Continuous forms of the words in brackets.

- Joshua _____ (already/be) married twice before he met Carol.
- I asked Martha and Sue to organise my wedding because they _____ (prepare) quite a few before.
- Stewart was really exhausted because he _____ (look) after the twins the whole afternoon.
- Dad, how long _____ (you/date) Mum before you got engaged?
- I stopped talking to my brother after we _____ (have) a serious argument for the third time that week.
- When I saw Jane, I could see she _____ (cry), but I didn't know why.

4 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- Maria accepted Niko's invitation to the cinema, _____ made him really happy.
- Last week I bumped into the Smiths, _____ son used to be in my class at school.
- Would you like to meet my cousin _____ I told you about yesterday?
- Here are some lovely photos from Greece _____ on our honeymoon.

USE OF ENGLISH

5 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(deep equal full health perfect polite)



In parks around the world, it's become ¹ _____ normal to come across hundreds of people gathering every Saturday morning to run their weekly five kilometres. Since it started in 2004, parkrun has become a global phenomenon with events taking place in hundreds of locations in more than twenty countries across the world. Parkruns attract people of all ages and for a whole range of different reasons. Most participants see running as part of a ² _____ lifestyle. For many, the social side of the events is ³ _____ important. People who start off as casual acquaintances nodding to each other and smiling ⁴ _____, can end up as firm friends.

6 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- Let me introduce you to the woman _____ husband originally set up the gallery.
A who
B whose
C that
- _____ the village where she grew up, my granny enjoyed living in the city.
A Leaving
B Had left
C Having left
- When we got to the reception, we realized that we _____ the present for the newlyweds at home. We felt extremely embarrassed.
A had left
B left
C have left
- How long _____ for a reply to his email before he realized he wasn't going to get a response?
A Tom waited
B did Tom wait
C has Tom waited
- Mark says he never has time to make his bed in the morning, _____ me a lot. He should get up earlier.
A which irritates
B who irritates
C that irritates

- 7 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to five words in each gap, but do not change the word in capitals.

- 1 First we went for a meal and then we went to the cinema. **BEEN**
After we _____, we went to the cinema.
- 2 Dan wasn't at the party and Cathy's parents were extremely upset. **BITTERLY**
Cathy's parents _____ Dan wasn't at the party.
- 3 I first met Sally at the restaurant over there. **WHERE**
That's the restaurant _____ Sally.
- 4 After working for ages, I decided to take a break. **SO**
I'd _____
_____ I decided to take a break.

LISTENING

- 8  1.34 You will hear a talk with a psychologist Adam Martins. Listen and complete the notes with information from the talk. Use a word or a short phrase. You will hear the recording twice.

- 1 The reporter asks if it is true that twins have a special mental and emotional _____.
- 2 Some reports suggest that the special psychic bond is shared mostly by _____.
- 3 However, the existence of psychic powers has not been _____.
- 4 When Adam and _____ were fifteen, they drew very similar pictures while sitting on opposite sides of a classroom.
- 5 According to studies, some twins tend to be a bit _____ than regular siblings or only children.
- 6 During childhood, twins compete with each other mostly for _____.
- 7 Studying different subjects, at different universities often in different countries is one way in which twins try to establish a greater _____.
- 8 Research shows that the most important factor responsible for our psychological characteristics is _____.

SPEAKING

- 9 Do the task in pairs.

A



B



Student A

Look at photo A. Describe the photo and answer the questions.

- What do you think is going to happen next? Why?
- Do you get on better with boys or girls in your family? Why?
- Tell me about a situation in which you or someone you know was involved in a family argument.

Student B

Look at photo B. Describe the photo and answer the questions.

- How do you think the man is feeling? Why?
- What's the most challenging thing about living on your own? Why?
- Tell me about the household chores that you or somebody you know had to do when you were a child.

WRITING

- 10 Read this announcement on an international students' website and write an article in reply.

Do parents and teenagers in your country always have the same opinion about different topics?

Write an article about the most common things teenagers and parents in your country disagree about. We'll put the best articles on the website next month!

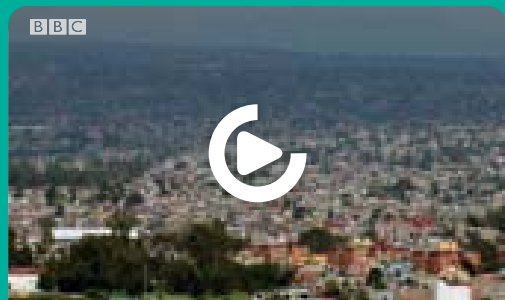
3

Living spaces

A city is not a concrete jungle, it is a human zoo.

Desmond Morris

BBC



SMOG-FREE MEXICO CITY

Watch the BBC video.
For the worksheet, go to page 136.

VOCABULARY

3.1

Landscape features • prepositions describing location • describing places • in the city

I can describe cities and talk about city life.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

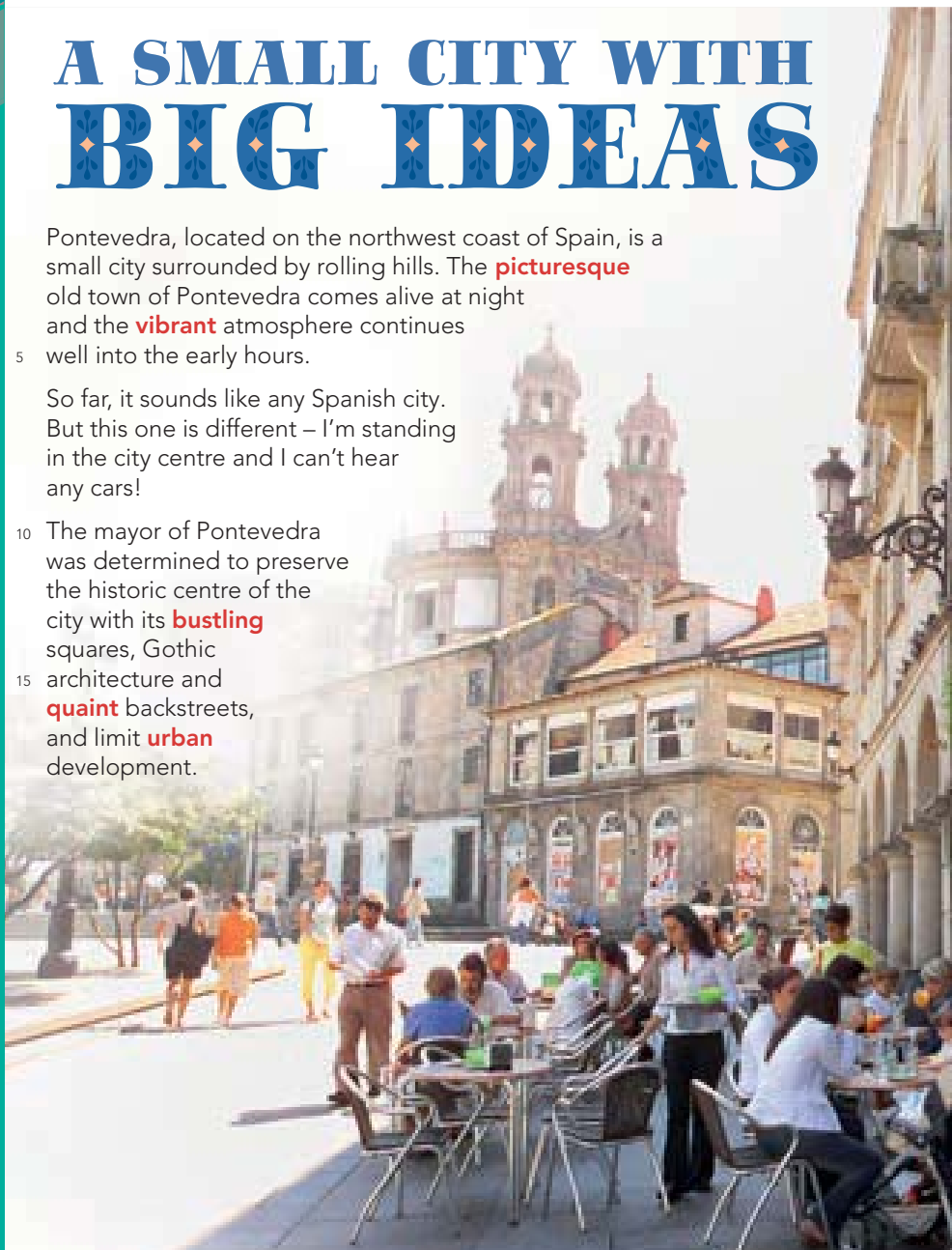
- Which of these townscape and landscape features can you find near your school? Discuss with a partner.
 { a breathtaking view a bridge a canal a fast-flowing river
 a historic monument a housing estate a market square
 a shopping centre a waterfront restaurant slums }
- Discuss how far you would need to go to see features in Exercise 1 that are **not** near your school.
- SPEAKING** A city in Spain has banned cars from the city centre. Discuss the possible advantages and disadvantages. Then read the text and compare your ideas. Use the text to make a final list of good and bad points.

A SMALL CITY WITH BIG IDEAS

Pontevedra, located on the northwest coast of Spain, is a small city surrounded by rolling hills. The **picturesque** old town of Pontevedra comes alive at night and the **vibrant** atmosphere continues well into the early hours.

So far, it sounds like any Spanish city. But this one is different – I'm standing in the city centre and I can't hear any cars!

- The mayor of Pontevedra was determined to preserve the historic centre of the city with its **bustling** squares, Gothic architecture and **quaint** backstreets, and limit **urban** development.



- 4 **2.1** Read the questions and make sure you understand the meaning of the underlined collocations. Then listen to a phone-in programme and answer the questions.

- How has Ryan's daily commute changed?
- According to Jack, what can a reliable network of buses replace?
- Where does Sarah want planners to put in cycle lanes?
- Why is Julia's home town very popular with tourists?
- Why can't ancient cobbled streets have cycle lanes, according to Julia?

- 5 **SPEAKING** Think about your own local town or city. Discuss the questions:

- How doable/desirable would it be to ban all cars from the centre?
- What changes would have to be made before the ban and in what order?
- Compare the advantages and disadvantages. Use the list in Exercise 3 to help you. Which list is longer?

- So he banned cars – completely! He transformed the **medieval** centre into a pedestrian zone. He felt that the historical centre was dead. It was a city in decline, polluted, with a lot of traffic accidents. He got rid of on-street parking and opened underground car parks on the outskirts of the city within walking distance of the centre. With pedestrianisation, the **shabby** city centre got a facelift: roundabouts replaced traffic lights and pavements, drainage systems, public lighting and street furniture were all renovated.
- The benefits of all these changes are numerous: deaths in traffic accidents in the city centre have dropped to zero and CO₂ emissions are down by 70 percent. The city centre is growing with 12,000 new inhabitants who have moved there while other cities in the region are getting smaller. By not allowing big shopping malls to be built in the centre, small businesses have flourished. Noise pollution has been replaced with the tweeting of birds and the sound of human voices.

WORD STORE 3A Prepositions describing location

- 6 **2.2** Complete WORD STORE 3A with the prepositions in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 7 Complete the sentences with the prepositions in WORD STORE 3A. Name an example for each sentence. Compare your answers with a partner.
- Name ...
- a big city located _____ the coast.
 - a café _____ walking distance of where you are.
 - a famous monument _____ the city centre of your capital city.
 - a town located _____ the border of your country.
 - a school, a shopping centre or a sports centre located _____ the suburbs of a nearby city.
 - a park or play area _____ easy reach of your house.

WORD STORE 3B Describing places

- 8 **2.3** Complete WORD STORE 3B with the adjectives in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 9 **SPEAKING** Replace the words in bold in the description of Norwich with an adjective from WORD STORE 3B. Would you like to visit Norwich? Discuss with a partner.

NORWICH - a cathedral city

Visit Norwich, one of England's most **1beautiful** cathedral cities. During the middle ages Norwich was England's second city and there are some spectacular examples of **212th–15th century** architecture in the city. See the cathedral, of course, but don't miss the **3nice, old-fashioned** backstreets behind it. Norwich is also famed for its huge, **4busy and noisy** open-air food market as well as its **5exciting** nightlife. Less than two hours from the capital, Norwich should definitely become your next destination.



WORD STORE 3C In the city

- 10 **2.4** Complete WORD STORE 3C with the underlined collocations and compound nouns in the text and in Exercise 4. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 11 **SPEAKING** Complete the sentences with the collocations or compound nouns in WORD STORE 3C. Would such measures improve your home town? Discuss with a partner.
- All _____ should be replaced by smooth modern surfaces like tarmac.
 - _____ should be limited to residents only.
 - _____ should be for people on foot only.
- No cycling!
- There should be more _____ to take cars off the street.
 - There should be a lot more _____ to encourage people to use bikes.
 - Anybody causing _____ should be heavily fined.

3.2

Future forms including the Future Perfect Continuous

I can use a variety of forms to talk about the future.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the pairs of sentences. Which alternative is more likely? Discuss with a partner. Give reasons for your answers.

In three years' time ...

- 1 a I'll still be living at home with my parents.
b I won't be living at home with my parents.
- 2 a I'll have moved to another part of the country.
b I won't have moved to another part of the country.
- 3 a I'll have been studying at university for a year.
b I won't have been studying at university for a year.

- 2 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS and do the task.

- 1 Translate example sentences 1–3 into your own language.
- 2 Discuss the difference in meaning between the sentences.
- 3 Look at Exercise 1 and name the future verb forms in blue.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 10

Future forms

- You use the **Future Continuous** to talk about unfinished actions in progress at a time in the future. It often refers to future events that are fixed or expected.

1 At 11 a.m. tomorrow, I'll be doing an exam.

- You use the **Future Perfect Simple** to talk about an action that will be completed before a certain time in the future.

2 By 11 a.m. tomorrow, I'll have done an exam.

- You use the **Future Perfect Continuous** to talk about how long an action will have been in progress before a certain time in the future.

3 By 11 a.m. tomorrow, I'll have been doing an exam for an hour.

- 3 Read Part 1 of the story about the Franklin family plans. Complete the text with 'I'll, be, been or have. Then discuss the questions.

- 1 What problems do the children predict?
- 2 Which child seems more positive about the voyage?

THE VOYAGE OF A LIFETIME



Part 1

In a few weeks' time, the Franklin family will ¹be embarking on a three-year sailing voyage. We asked the children how they felt about the adventure. Mandy (aged seventeen) said, 'We'll ² missing a lot of school, but I think that by the end of this trip we'll ³ learnt more than in a classroom. We'll have ⁴ travelling for three years and we ⁵ have seen places with our own eyes. We won't ⁶ just read about them in books.'

Mandy had a few worries: 'The worst thing is that I'll ⁷ spending three years in a small space with my untidy brother.'

Jake (twelve years old) was less keen than his sister: 'By the time we go, I'll have ⁸ playing basketball for my school team for two years, and I want to become a professional in the future. I'll ⁹ practising whenever I can, but it's not easy on a boat.'

- 4 Complete Part 2 with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Future Continuous, Future Perfect Simple or Future Perfect Continuous. Would you like to go on a voyage like this? Why?/Why not?

Part 2

Eileen Franklin told us 'We're not in a hurry, so after leaving San Francisco we ¹will be travelling (travel) down the coast of Mexico for a few weeks. After that, we ² (sail) across the Pacific and we ³ (end) our journey in Indonesia. It's a long voyage, but by the time we leave we ⁴ (plan) for several years, so I think we're as prepared as we can be.'

'Yes', added Bob. 'And by the time we set off, we ⁵ (do) everything possible to make this a safe trip: Jake ⁶ (improve) his swimming and Eileen ⁷ (do) an advanced first-aid course. On the boat, we ⁸ (use) top-of-the-range technology to chart our route. It's the trip of a lifetime, so we ⁹ (not take) any chances!'

- 5 Read REMEMBER THIS. Then rewrite questions 1–6 using the Future Continuous to make them more polite.

REMEMBER THIS

You can also use the **Future Continuous** to make polite enquiries. Compare:

Will you be staying in tonight? = I just want to know. (polite)

Are you going to stay in tonight? = I'd like a decision. (more direct)

- 1 Are you going home straight after school?
- 2 Are you doing anything interesting this evening?
- 3 Who do you plan to see at the weekend?
- 4 When will you go on your next holiday?
- 5 Are you going to have a party for your eighteenth birthday?
- 6 Do you think you'll leave home permanently before you're twenty-five?

- 6 **SPEAKING** Ask and answer the questions you have rewritten in Exercise 5.

FOCUS VLOG 11 About dreams

11 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 137.

3.3

LISTENING

Multiple choice

I can identify specific information in a detailed spoken dialogue about places to live.



A Freedom Ship



B Co-housing



C Smart home

- 1 Match photos A–C with descriptions 1–3. Use the photo captions to complete the texts.

- In the _____ of the future, all appliances will be connected through wireless networking systems. The house and car would use power that is collected through solar panels and stored.
 - _____ is a housing development where each household has a self-contained house or flat. People have the opportunity to eat together and meet regularly in a large communal house.
 - The _____ is designed to be twenty-five storeys high. If the concept became reality, it would feature a casino, an art gallery, a park, a shopping centre and accommodation for 80,000 people. It would cost \$12 billion to build.
- 2 **SPEAKING** Discuss which house in Exercise 1 you would most/least like to live in. Give reasons for your answers.
- 3 **2.5** Listen to three recordings. In which order are places A–C in Exercise 1 mentioned?
- 1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐

EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 4 **2.5** Listen again. For questions 1–3, choose the correct answer A–C.
- Which statement is an opinion and NOT a fact?
 - Over a third of British people don't know their neighbours.
 - In Denmark, tens of thousands of people live in co-housing developments.
 - The neighbourly relations at Springhill will be 100 percent better.
 - The speakers think that the Freedom Ship project is
 - unlikely to happen.
 - not big enough for 80,000 people.
 - a good investment opportunity.
 - Choose the most appropriate headline for this news report.
 - SMART HOMES MEAN LESS SHOPPING
 - SMART HOMES SAVE TIME AND MONEY
 - SMART HOMES NEED SMART PHONES

WORD STORE 3D Collocations and compound nouns

- 5 **2.6** Complete WORD STORE 3D only with vowels. Use these definitions to help you. Then listen, check and repeat.
- a task to be done regularly at home, such as cleaning, washing, etc.
 - an electrical device you have at home which helps you do the cooking, vacuuming, etc.
 - a number of houses or flats built close together at the same time
 - a car park consisting of several levels
 - a district where people live
 - an additional house, e.g. a holiday home
 - a flat which has all the necessary facilities needed for living, e.g. a kitchen, bathroom, toilet, etc.
 - a tall building divided into separate flats or offices
- 6 Complete the collocations with the words in WORD STORE 3D. Then complete the sentences to make them true for you. Compare with a partner.
- My least favourite _____ chore is ...
 - The nearest _____ car park is ...
 - The one _____ appliance I couldn't live without is ...
 - The newest _____ development in my neighbourhood is ...
 - The tallest _____ block in my city is ...
 - The _____ area I'd most like to live in is ...
 - I'd love to have a _____ home in ...
 - I'd prefer to live in a small _____ flat than ...

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 7 **2.7** Listen and complete the chants in section A. Listen again. Repeat, paying attention to the rhythm.
- A ■ ■ ■ ■ ■
- What will you be doing?
 What _____ seen?
 Where _____ going?
 Where _____ been?
- B ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ (■)
- How long _____ learning?
 How much _____ learnt?
 How long _____ earning?
 How much _____ earned?
- 8 **2.7** Complete the chants in section B with *you* and correct auxiliary verbs. Then listen and check. Repeat, paying attention to the rhythm.

3.4

READING

Gapped text

I can infer unstated information and understand relationships between ideas in a descriptive text.

- 1 2.8 Look at the list of words and phrases. Which ones would you use to describe your house or flat? Use a dictionary if necessary. Then listen and repeat.

A house has ...

- 1 a canvas camp bed ☐
- 2 central heating ☐
- 3 an en suite bathroom ☐
- 4 a fireplace ☐
- 5 a fitted kitchen ☐
- 6 running water ☐

A house is ...

- 7 cramped ☐
- 8 damp ☐
- 9 draughty ☐
- 10 inaccessible ☐
- 11 minimalist ☐
- 12 snug ☐

- 2 Complete the table with the words from Exercise 1. Add six words of your own. Then compare your ideas with a partner.

House of my dreams!	House of my nightmares!

- 3 Look at the photo of Zeki and the map. Which words from Exercise 1 would you use to describe his 'house'?
- 4 Read the article and check your ideas in Exercise 3. Then answer the questions.
- 1 Where does Zeki come from?
 - 2 Who taught him to live in the wilderness?
 - 3 Where is he living at the moment?
 - 4 What is he studying?
 - 5 What is his daily routine?
 - 6 Does he miss his friends?
 - 7 What does he like about his lifestyle?
 - 8 What would you like/hate most about Zeki's lifestyle?

I am 16 and live alone in the wilderness

2.9

I live alone on the Isle of Skye in a tipi almost impossible to find without detailed directions. It might seem unusual for someone of sixteen, but I love my own company and I'm passionate about preserving wild spaces. I grew up with my mum, Ghillie, and older sister, Yazzie, in a remote and sometimes inaccessible home in the Scottish mountains, using cross-country skis to drag food and supplies to the house.

Mum, a cookbook writer, taught us about possible dangers and how to cope with them, then let us **run wild** from an early age.

¹ _____. I spent so much time with tribes who rely on the land

that this **became second nature to me**. When I gained a place at the School of Adventure Studies on the Isle of Skye last year, I decided to live in a tipi, **practising what I preach**.

- I sleep on an ancient canvas camp bed my grandfather gave me, with two old army blankets and some skins I tanned myself for warmth. I have an open fire and spend my evenings tanning animal and fish skins, and carving wood. I store clothes and books in an old metal trunk of my mum's – it's covered in stickers from her travels. I wash my clothes in the river and dry them in the wind or in the heat from the fire. I have a bush shower using water from the river.



EXAM FOCUS Gapped text

5 Read the article again. Complete gaps 1–4 in the text with sentences A–E. There is one extra sentence.

- A A few people were exhausted and had to be taken off the mountain by the leaders, but I felt comfortable in the mountains and enjoyed the challenge.
- B We also travelled abroad regularly, visiting remote tribes and cultures, where we lived for weeks as Mum studied food and recipes to write about.
- C I'd like to see more people look after the land and not be scared of getting outside, getting wet, learning how to survive. When my studies are over, I'll move the tent back to Mum's house.
- D Eating things in nature is not something to play around with – if you make a mistake it can be quite a serious one. I sometimes eat too much of something and I get a stomach ache.
- E There's usually some fire left from the previous day, so the fire is soon blazing while I have cereal for breakfast. I collect wood for later in the day, then I wash at the river.

WORD STORE 3E Idiomatic expressions

- 6 2.10 Complete WORD STORE 3E with the expressions in blue in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 7 Which of the expressions in WORD STORE 3E does Zeki use to describe ...
- 1 ... something he was allowed to do as a child?
 - 2 ... the reason why he decided to live in a tipi?
 - 3 ... his feelings about being on his own?
 - 4 ... the long-lasting effect that visiting remote tribes had on him?
 - 5 ... something that doesn't suit everybody?
 - 6 ... the state of being alert and prepared for any new situation?
 - 7 ... the ability to stay calm in a stressful situation?
 - 8 ... some of the frightening experiences he has had?
- 8 Rewrite the questions by replacing the underlined phrases with the appropriate form of the expressions in WORD STORE 3E.
- 1 When was the last time you experienced something really frightening or dangerous?
 - 2 When you were a child, did your parents allow you to behave exactly as you wanted to?
 - 3 Are there times when you like being by yourself more than being with others?
 - 4 When do you have to be alert and focussed in your daily life?
 - 5 When was the last time you did something that you advise other people to do?
 - 6 What kind of everyday actions do you do easily without having to think about them?
 - 7 Are you capable of staying calm in stressful situations or do you panic?
 - 8 Is camping in the wild something that appeals to you?
- 9 **SPEAKING** Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 8 with a partner. Give reasons for your answers.

I wake at 6 a.m. and get the fire on straight away using flints and steel. ² _____. Sometimes I just jump in, especially when there's frost on the ground. When I rush back to the tipi, it's like a sauna. I get my backpack organised, including any food and kit I need
 25 for the day, cover the fire to keep it low, but alive and walk thirty minutes to the school. There are twelve of us on the course, of all ages, and we've just finished mountaineering. We're about to start whitewater kayaking.

I've **had a few hairy moments**. Once I was on the hills when the
 30 weather turned bad and I became disoriented, but thanks to Mum's training, I knew I had to **keep a cool head**. My classmates and I recently had a two-day test in horrible weather. ³ _____. However, I'm aware that I need to **keep my wits about me** and be prepared.

My friends used to love coming to our home and running wild with
 35 me, so they are used to the way I live. I hope some of them will visit me soon. People ask if I miss the Internet, but I never used to use it much, or watch television. I am sociable, but I have always **enjoyed my own company**. I use my mobile every few weeks to catch up with friends and my mum, who I usually see once a month.

40 What I'm doing **isn't everyone's cup of tea**, but it makes me happy. ⁴ _____. Until then, I'm happiest sitting by the flickering fire, carving a spoon in perfect silence and watching the stars through the open tipi door.



3.5

GRAMMAR

Quantifiers

I can use a range of different quantifiers correctly.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Describe your bedroom to a partner. On a scale of 1–10 (1=extremely tidy, 10=extremely untidy), what score is your bedroom?
- 2 **2.11** Read and listen to Part 1 of a vlog post. Why does the vlogger want to tidy her room?

Part 1

Welcome fellow teens to my video blog. Today's vlog is called 'How to tidy your room in ten minutes!' I'm sure **all of you** know what I'm talking about – your room's a total nightmare. It looks as if a bomb has exploded. There's **loads of dirty washing** – in fact the whole floor is covered. There's **no space** anywhere. You have **plenty of clothes**, but you don't wear half of them because you can't find them. **Most of them** are in a pile because there are not enough drawers to put them in. You've had **a number of opportunities** to tidy your room but you haven't, and now the very cool new friend you like is coming round. **Very few of your friends** know what a slob you are and you want to keep it like that. You don't have **much time**, so here are **a few speed-cleaning tips**.

- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then find more examples in blue of rules 1–3 in the text.

all of you = rule 2

GRAMMAR FOCUS 12

Quantifiers

You can use a wide range of different expressions to talk about quantity:

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns	Both
every, each many a number of*, several a few (very) few both, a couple of* either neither	much, a great deal of* a little (very) little	all most a lot of*, lots of*, loads of*, plenty of* some no, none of*

- 1 Use quantifiers without *of* before nouns: **most people**
 2 Use quantifiers with *of* before determiner + noun: **most of the people**, and before pronouns: **most of them**
 3 *Always use these quantifiers with *of*: **a lot of people**

Note: *all the people* and *all of the people* are possible. You can't use *of* after *no* and *every*. Use *none of* and *every one of*.

- 4 **2.12** Read Part 2 of the vlog post and choose the correct option. Then listen and check.

Part 2

- Find a laundry basket and put ¹*all* / *each* the clothes on the floor into it. Too ²*much* / *many* clothes? OK, get ³*a couple* / *a few* of bin bags and put the rest in there. Then hide ⁴*both* / *either* of the bags in the wardrobe. If the cool friend sees ⁵*plenty* / *either* of the bags, just say it's ⁶*a few* / *few* things you're collecting for charity.
- The whole place smells of snacks, so take ⁷*every* / *some* half-empty drink and stale half-eaten crisp packet to the kitchen immediately. There's a big difference between messy and disgusting.
- There are ⁸*a number* / *several* of things that would give the wrong impression, things like your huge pink teddy bear ... Hide them.
- Make the bed. There's ⁹*no* / *none* excuse for an unmade bed.
- Open ¹⁰*plenty* / *all* the windows – now!

You're ready!

- 5 Discuss with a partner in which sentences *of* is necessary. Then make the sentences true for you by using other quantifiers if necessary. Compare your sentences.

- A couple _____ my friends are quite tidy.
- Some _____ classmates are very untidy.
- Several _____ people I know share a bedroom.
- Very few _____ my neighbours have big gardens.
- Many _____ the buildings in my street are old.
- Every _____ room in my house has Wi-Fi.
- None _____ my friends have a TV in their room.
- Most _____ rooms in my house have paintings on the walls.

- 6 Write one false and two true sentences about yourself. Use a different word in the box in each sentence.

all couple every little loads
lots most none plenty

All of my music is on my phone.

- 7 Work with a partner. Read your sentences from Exercise 6 to each other. Guess which sentence is false.

3.6

SPEAKING

Organising a place to live

I can justify my views when suggesting, agreeing to and objecting to a course of action.

- 1 Put these factors in order of importance when looking for a flat to share with friends.

(decoration/furniture location
privacy rent security size)

- 2 **SPEAKING** Discuss your ideas in Exercise 1 with other classmates. Agree on the final order.
- 3 **2.13** Listen to a conversation between two friends who are talking about a flat to share. Which two factors from Exercise 1 are not mentioned?
- 4 **2.13** Read the **SPEAKING FOCUS** and complete the conversation with one word in each gap. Then listen again and check.

Zoe: I can't believe we've both been accepted into the same university!

Amy: Isn't it great? I'm so excited! And we'll be living together.

Zoe: I know. I can't wait! **Amy:** What do you think ¹ living in halls of _____ residence? To be honest, I'm not sure.

Zoe: No, me neither. Do you know Jay?

Amy: Yep, why?

Zoe: Well, his brother studies there and he says the halls are really old and noisy. Maybe we ought to just look for a place of our own.

Amy: You're ² _____ right.

Zoe: The question is do we want to share with other people. It would probably be cheaper.

Amy: Well yeah, but ³ _____ it be better to get our own place? Obviously, it depends how much it costs, but if we could find the right flat at the right price, I think I'd prefer not to share.

Zoe: I know what you mean, but I'm not ⁴ _____ we'll be able to afford it. Why don't we ⁵ _____ halfway and look for shared accommodation, but in a place where we could have our own rooms?

Amy: I suppose that could ⁶ _____. That way we might even be able to afford something near the university. Given the choice, I'd ⁷ _____ be within walking or cycling distance, and you?

Zoe: Totally. I don't even mind if it's a small room, as long as it's close to the campus.

Amy: That's ⁸ _____ then. So, let's have a look online and see what we can find.

SPEAKING FOCUS

Suggesting a course of action

What do you think about (+ -ing)?

Maybe we ought to (just) ...

What would you say if we (+ Past Simple)?

Given the choice, I'd rather ... , and you?

Objecting

No way!/Absolutely not!/You must be joking! (informal)

Fair? I think it's completely unfair.

(Well yeah, but) wouldn't it be better to ...?

I know/see what you mean/what you're saying, but ...

I'm not convinced (we'll be able to afford it/that's a good idea/that'll work).

Compromising

If you agree to (pay more), I'll (take the smaller room).

We could (split the cost/go halves/share).

Why don't we compromise/meet halfway (and agree that ...)?

I guess so./I suppose that could work.

OK, that seems like a fair compromise.

Agreeing

True./Right./Absolutely./Totally. You are absolutely right.

I fully/completely agree. OK, that's settled then.

- 5 **SPEAKING** Read the situation and discuss the questions with a partner.

You and a friend are moving into a flat together for your first year at university. The flat is unfurnished and needs decorating, but you don't have a great deal of money.

- What furniture/household appliances do you think are the most important to buy?
- What colours would you like in the flat (walls, curtains, carpets etc.)?
- Who will get the bigger bedroom?
- Who will do the decorating?

- 6 Prepare a dialogue in which you discuss the questions in Exercise 5. Try to get what you want, but also be ready to compromise. Use the **SPEAKING FOCUS** to help you.

- 7 Practise the dialogue and act it out.

ROLE-PLAY

13

Organising a place to live

13

Watch the video and practise. Then role-play your dialogue.



1 Read a review of the Hobbiton movie set and answer the questions.

- Where is it located?
- What did the tourists think of it?
- Would you like to go there?

A hobbit fan's PARADISE

If you're a fan of *The Hobbit* movies, you'll love this Hobbiton tour. I was on a family holiday with my parents and my sister in New Zealand. **The whole family** are fans of *The Hobbit* movies and we've seen **every one of them**, so we went to visit the

- 5 Hobbiton movie set which is located on a sheep farm. It's a popular tourist spot – **all the tourists** take hundreds of photos, and so did we! There are forty-four Hobbit holes, and I think we visited **all of them**. **Each Hobbit hole** is different and has a round brightly painted door. A team of four gardeners keep the
- 10 village looking neat and tidy. There were two places to eat and

drink: The Shire's Rest Café and The Green Dragon Inn, and we stopped at **both places**! In fact, the tour ended at the Green Dragon Inn. It was exactly like in the film and **the whole time** we were there,

15 we were expecting Bilbo Baggins to walk in! My sister and I had ginger lemonade. There were **other drinks** like tea and hot chocolate, but we were really thirsty. Mum and Dad had tea and cookies. Mum was so hungry she wanted **another cookie**,

20 but we didn't have time.

2 Read and complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with the examples in blue from the text.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

both, each, every and all; all and whole; another, other, others, each other and one another

	+ noun	+ of + my/the etc. + noun	+ pronoun
both = 2 things or people	both ¹ <u>places</u>	both of the places	both of them
each = 2 or more things or people	each ² _____	each (one) of the Hobbit holes	each (one) of them
every = 3 or more things or people	every Hobbit movie	every one of The Hobbit movies	every ³ _____
all = 3 or more things or people	all the ⁴ _____	all (of) the tourists	all ⁵ _____

each, every and all

- Each, every and all have similar meanings. You use each when you want to emphasise that you are thinking about individual people or things separately:

Each Hobbit hole had a slightly different door and I took a selfie in front of each one.

- You can use every and all (NOT each) with adverbs like almost, nearly, practically.
I've visited practically every country in Asia.

all and whole

- You can use all (of) the or the whole (of the) to talk about 100 percent of something. You don't use the whole ... with plural nouns for this meaning.
all the tourists NOT ~~the whole tourists~~
all the time and the ⁶ _____
all the family and the ⁷ _____

another, other, others, each other and one another

- another ⁸ _____ means 'a different cookie' or 'an additional cookie'.
- other ⁹ _____ means 'different drinks', but not usually 'additional drinks'. (Use *more drinks*.)
- the other(s) and the other one(s) refers to the second of two people or things or to the rest of people or things in a group.
I'll carry this bag. Can you carry the other one?
I can see Tom. Where are the others?
- each other and one another mean the same thing.
My sister and I took photos of each other. = She took a photo of me and I took a photo of her.

3 Complete the questions with the words in the box. Then ask and answer.

(all (x2) both each (x2) every whole (x2))

- Can you write your name with _____ hand?
- Have you got earrings in _____ ears?
- Do _____ your relatives look like you?
- What film has almost _____ student in your class already seen?
- Are you off school for the _____ month of August?
- Do _____ your friends live near you?
- Can you kick a ball with _____ foot?
- When you eat an apple, do you eat the _____ thing?

4 Read about the *Mamma Mia* film locations. Choose the correct option.

Profile
 Holidays
 Messages
 Log out

Posted yesterday

●●●●○

My fantastic *Mamma Mia* trip

If you love Abba, Meryl Streep and picturesque places, you'll love ¹every / all minute of the *Mamma Mia* films. I've seen practically ²each / every film with Meryl Streep in it and I don't know how she manages to be so different in ³each / all the role she plays. I loved *Mamma Mia* and I've just seen *Mamma Mia: Here We Go Again*. ⁴Both / Every of the films are equally good.

For my eighteenth birthday, my parents took me on a trip to Greece to visit the film locations for *Mamma Mia*. There are two main locations: the islands of Skopelos and Skiathos. ⁵Both / Each of the islands are stunning, just like in the films. You can't see ⁶every one / all the places in the films because some of them were built just for the shoot – for instance, Villa Donna, the hotel owned by Meryl Streep, was filmed in studios in the UK. But I wanted to see the church where Sophie gets married. We had to climb 199 steps, but once we got there the view was breathtaking. The ⁷all / whole trip was fantastic – a dream come true! Next year my parents are taking me to Croatia where *Mamma Mia: Here We Go Again* was filmed.

Share
 Like
 Comment

5 **SPEAKING** Discuss your favourite films and make a list of the top three film locations you would like to visit.

6 Match sentences 1–2 with meanings a–b.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| A 1 Have another biscuit. | ☐ |
| 2 Have the other biscuit. | ☐ |
| a There is one biscuit available. | |
| b There are several biscuits available. | |
| B 1 Here's one photo, where's the other ? | ☐ |
| 2 Here's one photo, where are the others ? | ☐ |
| a There's one photo missing. | |
| b There are several photos missing. | |
| C 1 Could I have another coffee? | ☐ |
| 2 Could I have the other coffee? | ☐ |
| a I'd like the same coffee again. | |
| b I'd like the alternative coffee you offered. | |

7 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word in capitals. Are the sentences true for you?

- I've seen nearly all of the James Bond films. **ONE**
I've seen _____ the James Bond films.
- I saw the first *Harry Potter* film, but I haven't seen any of the others. **OTHER**
I saw the first *Harry Potter* film, but I haven't seen _____.
- I think each of *Pirates of the Caribbean* movies is worth seeing. **EVERY**
I think _____ *Pirates of the Caribbean* movies is worth seeing.
- I saw the film twice and I enjoyed it each time. **BOTH**
I saw the film twice and I enjoyed it _____.
- I've never found a film that is fun for all the family. **WHOLE**
I've never found a film that is fun _____.
- I'd like to see *Mission Impossible* in a different cinema – a bigger one. **ANOTHER**
I'd like to see *Mission Impossible* _____ – a bigger one.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1–3

8 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets. Use up to five words in each gap.

- On arrival yesterday, visitors _____ (be/give) a guided tour of the movie set.
- You are reminded that taking photographs _____ (be/strict/forbid).
- Quiet please! Are you going to _____ (chat/another) during the whole visit?
- Most people enjoyed the experience, but I _____ (be/bitter/disappoint).
- One person thought the guide was so amusing that he _____ (keep/roar/laughter).
- At the end, _____ (almost/every) the visitors gave the guide a tip.
- My brother and I love films. _____ (both/we/go) to the cinema as often as we can.
- The last film I saw was so sad. At the end everybody _____ (burst/tears).
- I was wondering whether you _____ (able/come) tomorrow.

A 'for and against' essay

I can write a 'for and against' essay using formal language and expressions of concession.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Read UK TODAY. How similar or different do you think the situation in your country is?

UK TODAY

Halls of Residence

- Most UK universities provide accommodation for first-year students in university-owned halls of residence, on or near the campus.
- There is often a supervisor, whose job it is to maintain order and support students with everyday issues.
- Rooms in these halls are generally small but private, and in most cases, bills are included in the rental price. Kitchen facilities are usually shared.
- In 2018/19 the average cost of renting a room in halls of residence in the UK was about £140 per week.

- 2 Read the comments made by first-year university students. Decide if they refer to advantages or disadvantages of living in halls of residence. Then compare with a partner.

- 1 Freedom! (Ammar, Newcastle)
- 2 It's impossible to get any studying done. (Ian, Edinburgh)
- 3 I'm exhausted. There are parties every night. (Nick, Hull)
- 4 There's a supervisor we can talk to if we have any problems. (Emma, Durham)
- 5 Rules, rules, rules! Keep quiet, clean up, no visitors. (Ollie, Oxford)
- 6 We all help each other out. I've made so many new friends. (Abigail, Liverpool)
- 7 Someone stole my sausages! (Jason, Manchester)
- 8 Our halls are on campus. I fall out of bed and into my lectures. (Anahita, London)
- 9 My room is OK but it's tiny. (Richard, Nottingham)

- 3 Read the essay on living in halls of residence. In pairs, decide which advantages and disadvantages from Exercise 2 the author mentions. Which one is NOT included?

Some university students prefer to live with their families until they graduate and can earn their own living. However, it is also very common for young people beginning university to choose to live together with other students in halls of residence. Although there are several potential **downsides** to this communal way of living, there are also numerous benefits.

- One of the most **convincing** arguments for halls of residence is that they allow students to experience independent living in a safe place with a strong sense of community. Having never lived alone, most new students appreciate this supportive environment. In the same **way**, the presence of an official supervisor is likely to be reassuring for students and their parents.
- 15 **Yet** another plus is that halls of residence are usually very convenient because they are located on or close to university campuses. This allows residents to save time and money.

- Despite these clear advantages, there are also considerable drawbacks. The first downside is that the rooms tend to be very small and bathrooms may sometimes have to be shared. Being full of young people, halls can also be very noisy. This can make them difficult places in which to study. **Likewise**, parties and late nights are common, and can interfere with students' academic progress. Other **minuses** are that food can 'go missing' from shared fridges and cupboards, and communal kitchens are often busy, and sometimes dirty.

- All things **considered**, there are pros and cons to living in halls. Certainly, residents need to be self-disciplined in order to successfully balance study and social life. Personally, I **imagine** the benefits of living closely with other students outweigh the drawbacks.



4 SPEAKING Discuss the questions.

- 1 What is the author's opinion of halls of residence?
- 2 Would you like to live in this type of student accommodation? Why?/Why not?

5 Complete the WRITING FOCUS. Use the words and expressions in purple in the text.

WRITING FOCUS

A 'for and against' essay

Introduction

- Begin with general or factual comments on the topic.
Many young people beginning university choose to live in halls of residence.
- End with a statement that mentions both sides of the issue.
Although there are several potential ¹downsides to ... , there are also numerous benefits.

Main paragraphs

- Present arguments for in one paragraph and arguments against in another.
The first/One/A further/Another/² _____ another benefit/plus/drawback/downside of ...
There are numerous/potential/clear/considerable pluses/³ _____ to ...
One of the most ⁴ _____ /most persuasive/strongest arguments for/against ... is ...
- Develop and support some of your arguments with additional comments or examples.
This allows residents to save time and money.
- Make comparisons.
In the same ⁵ _____ , ...
Similarly,/Equally,⁶ _____ , ...

Conclusion

- Make a summarising statement.
All things ⁷ _____ ,/All in all,/On balance, there are pros and cons to ...
- End with your personal opinion.
Personally, I think/feel/believe/⁸ _____ ...

6 Read the sentences and choose the correct option.

- 1 One of the most *persuasive* / *potential* arguments for living at home is the amount of money that can be saved.
- 2 There are also several *numerous* / *clear* upsides to living independently while at university.
- 3 The daily commute is one of the drawbacks of / for living a long way from the university campus.
- 4 Living alone, students learn to cook and clean for themselves. *On balance* / *Equally* , they gain experience in managing their money.
- 5 *All in all* / *Personally* , there are pluses and minuses to remaining in the family home while at university.

7 Read the LANGUAGE FOCUS and then find two sentences in the essay which express concession.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Expressing concession

You can increase the variety in your written English by including sentences that express concession.

- **Although/Even though + clause**
Although halls of residence are not always the cheapest option, many students prefer them.
Many students prefer halls of residence even though they are not always the cheapest option.
- **In spite of/Despite + noun or -ing**
In spite of the cost, many students prefer halls of residence.
Many students prefer halls of residence despite the cost.
Despite living cheaply, many students still find themselves short of money.

8 USE OF ENGLISH Rewrite the sentences so that they have a similar meaning. Use the words in capitals.

- 1 Although there are numerous arguments for living with your parents while at university, there are also considerable drawbacks. **DESPITE**
Despite the numerous arguments for living with your parents while at university, there are also considerable drawbacks.
- 2 Many students live at home with their parents, even though there are minuses. **SPITE**
- 3 In spite of the cooking facilities in halls of residence, students often survive on fast food only. **ALTHOUGH**
- 4 Although some student accommodation offers good value for money, it is still likely to be cheaper for students to live with their parents. **DESPITE**
- 5 Many teenagers have plenty of freedom despite living with their parents. **THOUGH**

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

9 Do the writing task. Use the WRITING FOCUS, the LANGUAGE FOCUS and the points below to help you.

Many young people who enter higher education choose to study in their hometown and continue living with their parents throughout their university years.

Write an essay in which you present arguments for and against this arrangement.

- What general or factual comments could you make on the topic?
- Write down arguments for and against the topic and choose the ones you want to use. Which argument(s) will you develop and support and how?
- What is your personal opinion on the topic? Where will you include it?
- Choose sentences from Exercises 6 and 8 to adapt for your essay.

3.1 Vocabulary 🔊 4.17

ancient /'eɪnʃənt/
 at the roundabout /ət ðə
 'raʊndəbaʊt/
 at the town hall /ət ðə 'taʊn ,hɔ:l/
 at the traffic lights /ət ðə 'træfɪk
 ,laɪts/
 ban /bæn/
 bustling /'bʌslɪŋ/
 cobbled street /'kɒbəld ,stri:t/
 cycle lane /'saɪkəl ,leɪn/
 daily commute /,deɪli kə'mju:t/
 destination /,destə'neɪʃən/
 determined /dɪ'tɜ:mɪnd/
 drainage system /'dreɪnɪdʒ ,sɪstəm/
 early hours /'ɜ:li 'aʊəz/
 emission /ɪ'mɪʃən/
 famed for /'feɪmd fə/
 fine sb /faɪn ,sʌmbədi/
 flourish /'flaʊɪʃ/
 get a facelift /get ə 'feɪslɪft/
 home town /,həʊm'taʊn/
 in decline /ɪn dɪ'klaɪn/
 in the city centre /ɪn ðə ,sɪti 'sentə/
 in the park /ɪn ðə 'pɑ:k/
 in the suburbs /ɪn ðə 'sʌbɜ:zbz/
 inhabitant /ɪn'hæbɪtənt /
 limit /'lɪmət/
 mayor /meə/
 medieval /,medi'i:vəl/
 noise pollution /'nɔɪz pə'lju:ʃən/
 on the border /ɒn ðə 'bɔ:də/
 on the coast /ɒn ðə 'kəʊst/
 on the outskirts /ɒn ði 'aʊtskaɪts/
 on-street parking /ɒn stri:t 'pɑ:kɪŋ/
 open-air market /,əʊpən,eə
 'mɑ:kət/
 pavement /'peɪvmənt /
 pedestrian zone /pə,destriən 'zəʊn/
 pedestrianisation /
 pə'destriənəɪzəʃən/
 picturesque /,pɪktʃə'resk/
 popular with /'pɒpjələ wɪð/
 preserve /prɪ'zɜ:v/
 quaint /kweɪnt/
 reliable network /rɪ,ləɪəbəl 'netwɜ:k/
 replace /rɪ'pleɪs/
 rolling hills /,rəʊlɪŋ 'hɪlz/
 scenery /'si:nəri /
 shabby /'ʃæbi/
 smooth /smu:ð/
 surface /'sɜ:fəs/
 street furniture /'stri:t ,fɜ:nɪʃə/
 surround /sə'raʊnd/
 tarmac /'tɑ:mæk/
 tweet /twi:t/
 underground car park /,ʌndəgraʊnd
 'kɑ:pɑ:k/
 urban /'ɜ:bən/

urban development /,ɜ:bən
 dɪ'veləpmənt/
 vibrant /'vaɪbrənt/
 vibrant colour /,vaɪbrənt 'kʌlə/
 within 500 metres /wɪðɪn faɪv
 ,hʌndrəd 'mɪtəz/
 within easy reach /wɪðɪn ɪ:zi 'ri:tʃ/
 within walking distance /wɪðɪn
 ,wɔ:kɪŋ 'dɪstəns/

3.2 Grammar 🔊 4.18

chart /tʃɑ:t/
 embark on /ɪm'bɑ:k ɒn/
 first aid course /,fɜ:st 'eɪd kɔ:rs/
 route /ru:t/
 set off /,set 'ɒf/
 take a chance /,teɪk ə 'tʃɑ:ns/
 top-of-the-range /,tɒp əv ðə
 'reɪndʒ/
 voyage of a lifetime /,vɔɪ-ɪdʒ əv ə
 'laɪftaɪm/

3.3 Listening 🔊 4.19

affordable /ə'fɔ:dəbəl/
 casino /kə'si:nəʊ /
 co-housing /kəʊ 'haʊzɪŋ/
 communal /'kɒmjənəl/
 communal house /,kɒmjənəl 'haus/
 disposable income /dɪ,spəʊzəbəl
 'ɪŋkʌm/
 dock /dɒk/
 domestic chore /də,mestɪk 'tʃɔ:/
 homeowner /'həʊm,əʊnə/
 household /'haʊshəʊld/
 household appliance /,haʊshəʊld
 ə'plɑ:ns/
 housing development /,haʊzɪŋ
 dɪ'veləpmənt/
 light fixture /'laɪt ,fɪkstʃə/
 multi-storey car park /,mʌltɪ-,stɔ:ri
 'kɑ:pɑ:k/
 neighbourly /'neɪbəli/
 profitable /'prɒfətəbəl/
 provider /prə'vaɪdə/
 resident /'rezɪdənt/
 residential area /,rezə,denʃəl 'eəriə/
 run low on sth /'rʌn ləʊ ɒn
 ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 second home /,sekənd 'həʊm/
 self-contained flat /,self kən'teɪnd
 'flæt/
 smart house /,smɑ:t 'haus/
 social housing /'səʊʃəl ,haʊzɪŋ/
 solar panel /,səʊlə 'pænl/
 sustainable /sə'steɪnəbəl/
 store /stɔ:/
 tower block /'taʊə blɒk/
 well-established /,wel ɪ'stæblɪʃt/
 wireless /'waɪələs/

3.4 Reading 🔊 4.20

alert /ə'leɪt/
 be/become second nature to sb
 /bi,bɪ,kʌm sekənd 'neɪtʃə tə
 ,sʌmbədi/
 blanket /'blæŋkət/
 blazing /'bleɪzɪŋ/
 canvas camp bed /,kænvəs ,kæmp
 'bed/
 carve wood /,kɑ:v 'wʊd/
 central heating /,sentrəl 'hi:tiŋ/
 cramped /kræmpt/
 damp /dæmp/
 directions /də'rekʃənz/
 drag /dræg/
 draughty /'draʊftɪ/
 en suite bathroom /ɒn ,swi:t
 'bɑ:θrʊm/
 enjoy your own company /ɪn,dʒɔɪ jər
 əʊn 'kʌmpəni/
 fireplace /'faɪəpleɪs/
 fitted kitchen /fɪtəd 'kɪtʃən/
 flickering fire /,flɪkərɪŋ 'faɪə/
 flint and steel /'flɪnt ən ,sti:l/
 have a hairy moment /,hæv ə ,heəri
 'məʊmənt/
 inaccessible /ɪ,nək'sesəbəl/
 keep a cool head /,ki:p ə 'ku:l ,hed/
 keep your wits about you /,ki:p jə
 'wɪts ə,baut jə/
 kit /kɪt/
 minimalist /'mɪnɪməlɪst/
 not be everyone's cup of tea /nɒt bi
 ,evriwʌnz ,kʌp əv 'ti:/
 practise what you preach /,præktɪs
 wɒt jə 'pri:tʃ/
 rely on /rɪ'laɪ ɒn/
 remote /rɪ'məʊt/
 run wild /'rʌn ,waɪld/
 running water /,rʌnɪŋ 'wɔ:tə/
 sauna /səʊnə/
 snug /snʌg/
 supplies /sə'plaɪz/
 tan a skin /,tæn ə 'skɪn/
 tribe /traɪb/
 trunk /trʌŋk/
 wilderness /'wɪldənəs/

3.5 Grammar 🔊 4.21

bin bag /'bɪn ,bæg/
 disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/
 drawer /dɹɔ:/
 excuse /ɪk'skju:z/
 laundry basket /'ləʊndri ,bɑ:skət/
 nightmare /'naɪtmə/
 pile /paɪl/
 slob /slɒb/
 stale /steɪl/

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There is one extra word.

(bustling daily fitted medieval rolling running shabby)

- I'll never forget walking through the bustling market in the centre of Marrakesh, through crowds of people in-between the maze of stalls.
- Some parts of the city are clearly in need of investment with shabby buildings sitting empty and covered in graffiti.
- The Alhambra Palace dates back to the thirteenth century and is an example of medieval architecture.
- The landscape south of the town is quite flat, but to the north there are rolling hills.
- When the office moved to the outskirts of the city, Luke's daily commute increased by thirty minutes.
- She grew up in a remote mountain village without electricity or running water.

- 2 Choose the correct option.

- Our hotel was at / with / within walking distance of the beach.
- My family live in a fairly quiet *domestic* / *housing* / residential area in the suburbs.
- We'd all like to spend less time on domestic / *home* / *residential* chores like cooking and cleaning.
- The downhill sections of the path are slippery, so you need to get / keep / *run* your wits about you.
- The conference venue is at / in / on the outskirts of the city close to the motorway.
- I'm afraid opera isn't my cup of *coffee* / tea / *water*.

- 3 Complete the sentences with the Future Continuous, Future Perfect Simple and Future Perfect Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- Ann and Tim feel so excited. This time next week they will be moving (move) into their new home.
- How many more places do you want to view today? By teatime we will have viewed (view) six flats!
- Will you be putting (you/put) in new bathroom fittings next weekend?
- I hope that by the time Olivia starts living on her own, she will have learnt/learned (learn) to cook.
- I'm truly exhausted. By next week I will have been renovating (renovate) our house for a month.
- By tomorrow the plumber will have fixed (fix) the tap.

- 4 Choose the correct option.

- I've asked six people to help me move. Unfortunately, *no* / none / *neither* of them will have time tomorrow.
- I always have *plenty* / a few / *a little* snacks in the fridge in case friends drop round.
- I'm sure we had two new light bulbs. But now, when I need them, I can't find either / *both* / *all* of them.
- Apparently, the electricity was off for *few* / several / *loads* hours after the storm.
- I've noticed that a great deal / *a number* / *a couple* of furniture has been delivered next door.
- There's only *a few* / a little / *a couple* of paint left. Do you think it will be enough?

USE OF ENGLISH

- 5 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

BRITAIN'S NEW TOWNS

At the end of the nineteenth century, Sir Ebenezer Howard became renowned for what he called 'garden cities': self-contained communities surrounded by a 'green belt', which would provide the best of city and country living. They were thought to be the answer to the overcrowding of Victorian cities. Letchworth and Welwyn Garden Cities were the only two towns based on his vision, ¹ both of them in Hertfordshire, just north of London.

After World War II, the need for inexpensive housing ² within easy reach of larger industrial towns became an urgent matter. In 1945, the British government created a committee to investigate building new self-sufficient towns. The first wave of new towns were mostly located near to London, ³ every one with its mix of residential development and green space. Later, more new towns were built to cope with housing demand from other major cities including Birmingham and Liverpool. In total by 1970, the committee had created twenty-one new towns spread across the ⁴ whole of England.

And now, more than a century after Howard's manifesto, Britain is facing ⁵ another housing crisis. According to current demographic trends, by 2050 at least another 10 million people will ⁶ have moved to Britain. That means that 6 million new houses will need to be built to accommodate all those people.

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use up to five words in each gap and make any changes necessary.

- By Saturday, Rob (design/new) will have designed a new kitchen for us.
- Despite (take out/loan) taking out/having taken out a loan, they still don't have enough money to renovate their house.
- I asked (every/one/friends) every one of my friends to put me up for the night, but none of them was able to do so.
- This house has been for sale for a year now (spite/be) in spite of being relatively cheap.
- There is (deal/accommodation) a great deal of accommodation for rent, but you have to start looking well before the academic year begins.
- Don't call tomorrow afternoon because we (paint/walls) will be painting the walls in my parents' house.

EXTRA ACTIVITIES

- Photocopiable resources 52–53 Open cloze (20 min.) pp. 235, 295–296
- Photocopiable resources 59–60 Sentence formation (12 min.) pp. 236–237, 302–303

- Use of English 3, WORD STORE booklet, p. 6

- Extra digital activities: Reading and Use of English Checkpoints

NEXT CLASS

- Ask students to do Self-check 3.10, WB pp. 50–51, as homework.
- Ask students to prepare for Unit Test 3: Assessment Package, Unit 3.

READING

7 Read the text and answer the questions.

A MODERN CAVE MAN

People have lived in caves since the dawn of time. But if you're picturing a cold, damp and cramped space, you'll need to think again. In Spain, thousands of modern day cave-dwellers call a hole in the ground their home and it's a better home than you thought. There are a large number of luxurious houses carved into the Andalucian mountains which offer more comfort than you might imagine. Why choose to live in a cave? To begin with, cave houses are affordable, easy to heat in the winter and stay cool in the summer. Being carved into stone, their temperature does not fluctuate much but rather a steady 20 degrees Celsius is maintained throughout the year. Each home is unique and, if you purchase a property which is licensed to be modified, it's easy enough to carve yourself out an extra shelf in the wall or even a whole new room. The largest cave home boasts as many as forty rooms and can be had for as little as 200,000 euros.



You don't need such a spacious cavern to feel the charm of a cave home, however. Even those of a much more modest size seem surprisingly open – there is no sense of being underground or feeling locked up. Cave houses bring a warmth and cosiness which is a unique selling point for many buyers: sound is gently muffled and the amount of light seems to ignore common logic. Most cave homes face southward to allow for natural light to enter through the windows cut into the rock face. But due to the ingenious layout of many homes and the white walls, light is easily transmitted throughout. In areas further back, modern builders often use a system of ordinary mirrors to reflect natural light around the interior.

Cave dwelling is also surprisingly safe. They are not prone to fires or earthquakes and they do not tend to collapse, however, while deciding to opt for this accommodation, you have to take into consideration a few factors. Ventilation is important, as a cave home needs to breathe and excess moisture can become problematic and in extreme cases even trigger asthma attacks. Electricity is generally preferred over gas – although when gas fittings are provided, these tend to be closer to the front of the cave for safety reasons.

As cave communities tend to be in small villages, a car is essential for getting around and nightlife is hard to find. Such homes are very much for those who prefer a quiet rural lifestyle, quaint cobbled backstreets and breathtaking views.

- 1 How many people live in cave houses in Spain? *Thousands.*
- 2 Why are the houses easy to heat?
The temperature inside doesn't fluctuate throughout the year.
- 3 What factors contribute to the cosiness of cave houses?
Sound is gently muffled and there is a lot of natural light.
- 4 Why are cave houses safe to live in?
They are not prone to fires or earthquakes and don't tend to collapse.
- 5 What sort of people would appreciate living in such homes the most?
Those who like a quiet rural lifestyle and own a car.

SPEAKING

8 Look at the diagram. It shows different aspects which might be problematic for people when they move to a big town or city. In pairs, follow these steps.

- Talk to each other about why these things might be problematic.
- Say which problem would be most difficult for you.



9 Ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Would you prefer to live in a town, a city or in the countryside? Why?
- 2 Do you think it's a good idea for children to live and study in cities? Why?/Why not?
- 3 Some cities attract a lot of tourists. Do you think this is a good thing for the people who live there? Why?/Why not?
- 4 How important is it to keep old traditional buildings in our cities and towns and not knock them down? Why?
- 5 Which city in the world would you like to live in for a short time? Why?

WRITING

10 Read the writing task and write an essay.

Currently many families are deciding to move from the city centre to the suburbs. Write an essay in which you present arguments for and against this decision.

PROJECT

- How to teach with projects **p. T21**
- Work in groups. Imagine that you live in an unusual place, e.g. on the International Space Station, a desert island, in an igloo, etc. and you want to show what the living conditions are like. Do some research online and

prepare a digital presentation or poster about the place. Then present it to your class.

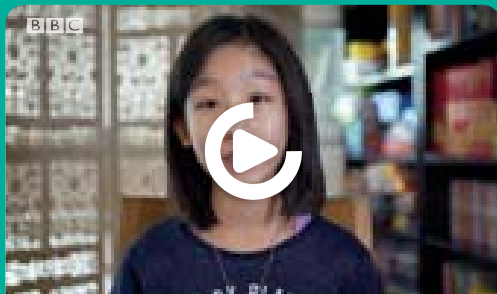
4

Shopping around

Wealth consists not in having great possessions, but in having few wants.

Epictetus

BBC



YOUNG ENTREPRENEURS

14 Watch the BBC video. For the worksheet, go to page 138.

4.1

VOCABULARY

Shopping • phrasal verbs • shopping collocations • verb phrases

I can talk about shops and buying clothes.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with *for, in, on, to* or *up* and tick the ones that are true for you. Compare with a partner.

- 1 I only buy clothes that are **reduced** or _____ **special offer**.
- 2 I pay more attention _____ **price** than **fashion**.
- 3 I often buy clothes _____ **charity shops** or **vintage shops**.
- 4 I buy **designer clothes** and **brands** are important _____ me.
- 5 I never manage to **pick** _____ a **bargain** in the **sales**.
- 6 I look for clothes that are **good quality** and will last _____ ages.

2 Think about all the clothes you have in your wardrobe. Write sentences with **too few**, **enough** and **too many**.

I have too few smart shirts, enough pairs of jeans, too many T-shirts.

6 WAYS to buy clothes responsibly

Most young people are on a limited budget, so it's tempting to go bargain-hunting. When you do, you should consider these six ways to shop more responsibly.

1 Shop locally

- 5 You may have to **pay out** a bit more **for** local brands but it's good to support local producers. Large international **chain stores** can sell the latest fashion at **bargain prices** because they employ people in poor working conditions and pay them low salaries. You can **check up on** a brand's employment policies and avoid those that **have a bad reputation**.

2 Support brands that promote ethical values

Not all chain stores are bad! **Shop around** for stores that encourage recycling. There are new companies that have **sprung up** with more **responsible attitudes** and environmentally-friendly policies – these are the shops you should opt for.

3 Make a list

- 15 When you go shopping, **cut down on impulse purchases** by making a list of clothes you really need. Then, when you
- 20 feel like **treating yourself to** another T-shirt, pause before you **enter your PIN** and look at your list. If it's not on the list, don't buy it ... or at least ask
- 25 the shop assistant to **put** the T-shirt **aside** while you think about it.



- 3 **SPEAKING** Read the FACT FILE. Do you think textile waste is a big problem in your country?
- 4 Read the rest of the text. Mark the six ways to buy clothes responsibly as follows: ✓ (I do this already), ? (I'm not sure) and ! (good idea).

FACT FILE

- The clothing industry is one of the largest polluters in the world.
- Since 2000, global clothes production has more than doubled. The average person now buys 60 percent more clothes every year.
- We live in a throw-away society! Every year the US generates 15 million tonnes of used textile waste – double the amount twenty years ago.
- The average life expectancy of garments today is less than three years.
- Synthetic fabrics can take hundreds of years to decompose – basically, they're like plastic.

4 Think about how you shop

When you shop online, you may think that

- 30 you are cutting down on carbon emissions by not travelling to the shops by car or bus. But online shopping can also mean more vehicles on the road for delivery
- 35 and pick-up when you want to send something back.



5 Choose natural materials

Synthetic fabrics (e.g nylon, acrylic, polyester) are bad news for the environment. Go for organic versions of natural materials. If you buy sportswear,

40 look out for labels that use recycled products.

6 Go for second-hand goods

If you shop in charity or vintage shops, not only will you reduce your environmental impact,

- 45 but you'll get something original, unlike the mass-produced products on the high street.



WORD STORE 4A Phrasal verbs

- 5 **2.14** Complete WORD STORE 4A with the particles in the phrasal verbs in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 6 Replace the underlined word or phrase with the correct form of a phrasal verb in WORD STORE 4A. Then answer the questions about the text.
- 1 Why is it worth spending more on local brands?
 - 2 Why should fi nding information about employment policies influence where you shop?
 - 3 Why is it a good idea to look in different shops for places that recycle?
 - 4 Why might you ask a shop assistant to reserve an item for you?
 - 5 Why don't you reduce carbon emissions when you shop online?
 - 6 Why should you look carefully for sports clothes made from recycled materials?

It's good to pay out for local brands to support local producers, who do not employ people in poor working conditions.

WORD STORE 4B Shopping collocations

- 7 **2.15** Complete WORD STORE 4B with the underlined words in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 8 Complete the statements with your own ideas. Compare your ideas with a partner.
- 1 My favourite chain store is ...
 - 2 A synthetic fabric I am wearing at the moment is ...
 - 3 Impulse purchases are not a good idea because ...
 - 4 We live in a throw-away society because ...
 - 5 The last time I did some online shopping I bought ...
 - 6 A shop near here that always has bargain prices is ...
- I don't have a favourite chain store. I usually buy online or in small local shops.*

WORD STORE 4C Verb phrases

- 9 **2.16** Complete WORD STORE 4C with the highlighted verb phrases in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 10 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in WORD STORE 4C. Are the sentences true for you? Compare with a partner.
- 1 I'm not good at _____ on a limited budget.
 - 2 When I get birthday money, I like to _____ myself to something nice.
 - 3 I agree with the idea of _____ local producers.
 - 4 I can't be bothered to _____ bargain-hunting.
 - 5 I don't think chain stores care if they _____ a bad reputation.
 - 6 I'm always very cautious when I _____ my PIN in public.
- 11 **SPEAKING** Discuss which clothing industry problem is the most serious. Can it be dealt with by e.g. the government? What action could be taken?

4.2

VIDEO 15 GRAMMAR

Question tags and reply questions
I can use question tags and reply questions.



1 **2.17** Listen to a conversation between Laura and her mum. What is Laura's mum concerned about?

2 **2.17** Read GRAMMAR FOCUS I and complete the examples from the conversation with auxiliary verbs. Then listen again and check.

GRAMMAR FOCUS I 15

Question tags

- You normally add a negative tag to a positive statement and a positive tag to a negative statement.
You know it's risky buying tickets online, ¹ don't you? He hasn't passed his driving test, ² _____ he?

Special cases:

- I am ... → aren't I? Let's ... → shall we?*
I'm always careful when I borrow your things, ³ _____ I? Let's go, shall we?
- Negative words such as *never, no, nobody, hardly, rarely*, etc. → positive tag
But you never wear them, ⁴ _____ you?
- Imperatives → *will/would/can/could you?*
Negative imperative → *will you?*
Sit down, will you? (= tell sb to do sth)
Open the door, would you? (= ask sb to do sth)
Don't lose them, ⁵ _____ you?
- With *everybody, somebody, nobody*, etc. use *they*.
With *something, nothing* and *this/that* use *it*.
That's Jamie at the door, isn't it?
Everybody's having a good time, aren't they?

3 **2.18** Complete the conversation between Laura (L) and Jamie (J) with appropriate question tags. Then listen and check. What was Laura concerned about?

- J: This is the place. He said he'd meet me at the main entrance.
L: Did he? So why are we waiting at the staff entrance?
J: Oh no, you're right. Come on, we'd better hurry.
L: Let's call him, ¹ shall we? You took his phone number, ² _____?
J: No, but he's got mine. He'll call me, ³ _____?
L: Yes – I suppose he wants his cash. Don't lose it, ⁴ _____?
J: What cash?
L: ⁵ _____? You haven't paid him yet,
J: Yes, I have – I transferred the money to his account online.
L: Did you? Oh, hey, that's him over there, ⁶ _____?
J: Is it? How do you know?
L: He's holding up a piece of paper with your name on it.

4 **2.19** Complete some things Jamie said at the concert with question tags. Then listen and check.

- We can go in now, can't we?
- Let's get closer to the stage, _____?
- Look after my coat for a minute, _____?
- This is a great concert, _____?
- Everybody's dancing, _____?
- Don't forget where we're sitting, _____?
- Excuse me, nobody's seen a silver earring, _____?

5 Read GRAMMAR FOCUS II. Find three reply questions in the conversation in Exercise 3.

GRAMMAR FOCUS II 15

Reply questions

You use reply questions to react to what somebody has said and to show interest. They usually have rising intonation.

Positive statement + positive reply question

'We're going to a concert.' 'Are you?' ↗

Negative statement + negative reply question

'Beyoncé hasn't played here before.' 'Hasn't she?' ↗

6 Write true sentences about yourself from the prompts. Student A: read your sentences. Student B: react with a suitable reply question.

- I / need / a new phone.
A: I don't need a new phone. B: Don't you?
- Dad / give / me money for my last birthday.
- I / go / shopping recently.
- I / think / I'm a very lucky person.
- Mum / usually / do / the shopping online.
- I / have got / a credit card.

7 Write four more true sentences about yourself and read them out. Your partner reacts with a suitable reply question.

A: I'm saving up to buy a laptop. B: Are you?

8 **SPEAKING** Prepare and act out a dialogue between a teenager and a parent. Use the situations in the box or your own ideas. Include at least five question tags and/or reply questions.

The teenager wants to ...

dye their hair pink form a band
get more pocket money
give up a sport or a musical instrument
go abroad with friends

4.3

LISTENING

Multiple choice

I can understand the main points of a radio interview about market trading.

- SPEAKING** Read UK TODAY and discuss the questions.
 - Do you have similar types of market in your nearest town or city?
 - When did you last go to a market? What did you buy?
 - Do you sometimes buy things in online auctions?
- 2.20** Listen to an interview on the Shopping Programme. What does Martin do for a living?

EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 2.20** Listen to the interview again. For questions 1–5, choose the correct answer A–D.
 - This episode of the programme is about
 - things that you can buy and sell at airports.
 - markets where Martin sells second-hand items.
 - the growing number of bags that are lost at airports.
 - the increased activity in the used goods trade.
 - How does Martin get hold of the second-hand goods he sells?
 - He goes to the market.
 - He buys them from the owners.
 - He bids for them at an auction.
 - He claims them from the airport.
 - What kind of things can Martin find in the suitcases he buys?
 - Designer clothes.
 - Electrical goods.
 - Rotten food.
 - Shoes.
 - The thing that surprises Martin most is that people
 - lose so many bags.
 - check in bags in advance.
 - forget baby items.
 - come to the airport at the last minute.
 - What is Martin most likely to say about the way he earns his living?
 - It makes him feel sad.
 - It's just how he makes money.
 - It's a risky job.
 - It's shocking.

WORD STORE 4D Noun phrases

- 2.21** Complete WORD STORE 4D with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.

UK TODAY

Where do British people go to buy and sell second-hand/pre-owned goods?

- Flea markets** – Camden market is the biggest one in London. It sells second-hand clothes and reasonably-priced new fashion.
- Antiques markets** – London's Portobello Market is located in the fashionable Notting Hill. It specialises in antiques and bric-a-brac (old-fashioned ornaments).
- Car boot sales** – Every weekend thousands of people take their unwanted domestic clutter to car boot sales around the country. One person's rubbish is another person's treasure.
- Online auctions** – More than 17 million people log on to sites like eBay each month to bid for a bargain.



- Complete the sentences with the noun phrases in WORD STORE 4D. Then put the sentences in the correct order to explain what happens to unclaimed lost luggage at Heathrow Airport.
 - Unclaimed _____ property goes to _____ houses where market stall holders bid for them. ☐
 - That's how _____ belongings end up as _____ goods on _____ stalls. ☐
 - Thousands of _____ bags go missing at Heathrow Airport every month. ☐
- SPEAKING** Discuss your ideas about buying pre-owned or second-hand goods. What sort of items would/wouldn't you buy second-hand?

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 2.22** Listen and repeat the words in the box. Then put them in the correct column depending on the vowel sound.

auction boot bought could gone goods lose
put rotten stall through watch

1 /ɔ:/	2 /ʊ/	3 /u:/	4 /ʊ/
auction			

- 2.23** Listen, check and repeat.

4.4

READING

Matching

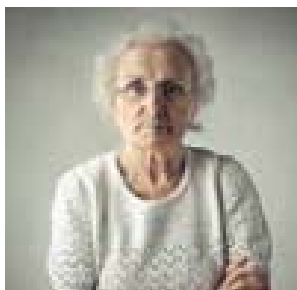
I can scan a set of related texts in order to find specific information.

1 SPEAKING Discuss the questions. Have you ever ...

- a sold clothes online?
- b been to an auction?
- c raised money for charity?

2 Read the list of weirdest things sold at an auction. Which one is not true?

- a ghost in a jar
- the meaning of life
- a grandmother
- Justin Timberlake's half-eaten French toast
- New Zealand
- the tea leaves from the bottom of Queen Elizabeth's teapot



3 2.24 Listen and check your ideas in Exercise 2. In your opinion, which thing on the list is the weirdest?

4 SPEAKING Read the titles of texts A–C and look at the photos. Discuss what you think the texts are about. Then read and check your ideas.

EXAM FOCUS Matching

5 Read the texts again. Match texts A–C with statements 1–4. One text has two matching statements.

In which case do people make or raise money ...

- 1 by understanding young people's consumer behaviour? ☐
- 2 by getting something different than they paid for? ☐
- 3 by appealing to both the rich and the poor? ☐
- 4 by using auctions on the Internet and social media? ☐

6 2.26 Complete the phrases with the base form of the correct verbs in blue in the texts. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 1 bid for sth (in an auction)
- 2 up for auction
- 3 for charity
- 4 an auction
- 5 (your) earnings
- 6 a fortune
- 7 a profit

7 Replace the underlined phrases with phrases in Exercise 6. Then answer the questions.

- 1 How much did someone pay for *Girl with Balloon* when it became available for auction?
- 2 Who offered money for the artwork and what happened as soon as it was sold?
- 3 How are young people earning a lot of money?
- 4 How much money did Scarlett earn on top of what she spent on an on-trend backpack?
- 5 How does Lydia use social media to make more money from selling online?
- 6 Which broadcasting organization collects money for children who need help?
- 7 As well as organising auctions, what other things do people do for Children in Need?

WORD STORE 4E Being rich and poor

8 2.27 Complete WORD STORE 4E with the base forms of the underlined phrases in Text C. Then listen, check and repeat.

9 Complete the sentences and compare with a partner.

- 1 In my city, people who are rolling in money live in ...
- 2 If I had money to burn, I'd buy ...
- 3 If my friends and I are short of money and we want to go out, we ...
- 4 The government helps families who are living from hand to mouth by ...
- 5 I think people who are extremely well-off should ...
- 6 When I'm broke, I earn some money by ...
- 7 Even if I were loaded, I would never ...
- 8 A good idea to save money if you find it hard to make ends meet is to ...

10 SPEAKING Reflect on the three texts and discuss the questions.

- 1 How do you explain the large sums of money people spend on works of art?
- 2 At what age is it OK for young people to start making money?
- 3 Which causes or charities would you like to fundraise for? How would you raise money?

A

PAINTING WORTH MORE AS DAMAGED GOODS



Banksy's famous *Girl with Balloon* has been voted the UK's best loved work of art. It first appeared as graffiti on a wall in East London and the true identity of the artist has never been revealed. When a framed painting of *Girl with Balloon* came up for auction at the famous auction house, Sotheby's in London, it sold for £1.04 million. But then something extraordinary happened – shortly after it was sold, the painting began to pass through a shredder hidden in the frame.

Banksy posted an image on Instagram of the shredded painting, saying that he'd secretly built a shredder into the frame of the painting in case it ever came up for auction.

The auction house refused to reveal the identity of the buyer who successfully bid for the artwork, but suggested that the media attention would increase the value of the painting. 'This is now part of art history in its shredded state and we'd estimate Banksy has added a minimum 50 percent to its value.'

B

TEENS BUILD BUSINESS EMPIRES FROM THEIR BEDROOMS

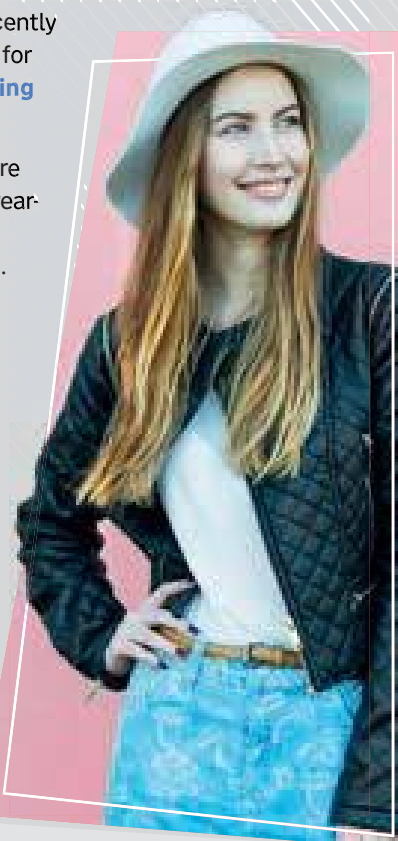
Enterprising teens are selling stuff online and making a fortune! They're buying popular items from streetwear brands and reselling them on Depop, an auction app aimed at young people. Reselling limited edition goods can earn them up to several thousand pounds a month.

Scarlett was fourteen when she started recycling used clothes by selling them online. 'When I didn't wear something any more, I thought I may as well sell it on,' says Scarlett, now fifteen.

These days she buys products from hyped sports labels with a cult following, from boutiques and clothes markets in London and sells them online. She recently bought an on-trend backpack for £120 and sold it for £180, making her a nice profit of £60.

She finds out which products are in-demand by checking streetwear-focused social media groups. She earns around £100 a month. 'Wherever I go, I look out for products to resell. My dad is always asking what I've sold. He thinks it's cool.'

Seventeen-year-old Lydia also caught the bug for selling clothes online. She spends about two hours a day reselling and makes about £1,000 profit every month. To create more publicity and increase her earnings, she models the clothes on Instagram.



C

BBC RAISE MONEY FOR A GOOD CAUSE



BBC Children In Need Telethon is a televised event that fundraises for charity. The Telethon has raised millions of pounds for young people in the UK since it was first broadcast in 1980. The charity supports families who are short of money, or where there's a child with a disability or serious illness. For example, if a family is already living from hand to mouth and they can't afford to buy their disabled child a new wheelchair, Children in Need will step in.

The annual Children in Need Telethon features performances from top entertainers who encourage people to donate money online or on the phone. But it's not only wealthy people with money to burn who donate. Leading up to the telethon, schools all over the UK raise money in different ways: selling cakes, hosting a quiz or film night, holding auctions or simply getting people to guess how many sweets there are in a jar. Another popular way to raise money is to take on a challenge and ask friends' parents – especially those who are rolling in money! – to sponsor them. This means that everyone can contribute, from people who are well-off and can afford to donate, to those who may find it hard to make ends meet themselves, but have raised money in creative ways.

4.6

SPEAKING

Making and justifying choices

I can evaluate options and justify choices with relevant arguments.

1 SPEAKING Look at two different ways of shopping for food and answer the questions.

- What are the pluses and minuses of each option?
- If you were university students doing your own food shopping, which option would you prefer? Why?



2 **2.31** Listen to Emma and Oscar discussing the options above. Do they mention any of the pluses and minuses you discussed in Exercise 1?

3 **2.31** Complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with the words in the box. Then listen again and check.

but choice choose compare
likely opt reason simply

SPEAKING FOCUS

Comparing and contrasting options

X (Going to the market) is ... ¹ **but** Y (shopping online) is ...
X is the only one/option that ...

When you ² _____ the two/X and Y ...

It is (much) more ³ _____ that ...

X is definitely the cheaper/better/more suitable choice.

Choosing an option and justifying the choice

That's why I'd ⁴ _____ for X.

... and therefore, X is probably/clearly the best ⁵ _____.

The main/Another ⁶ _____ ((why) X would be my choice) is that ...

I prefer X mainly/⁷ _____ because ...

This option is (clearly) the most/least + adjective ...
because ...

Explaining reasons for rejecting other options

X might (require less effort), but I wouldn't ⁸ _____ it because ...

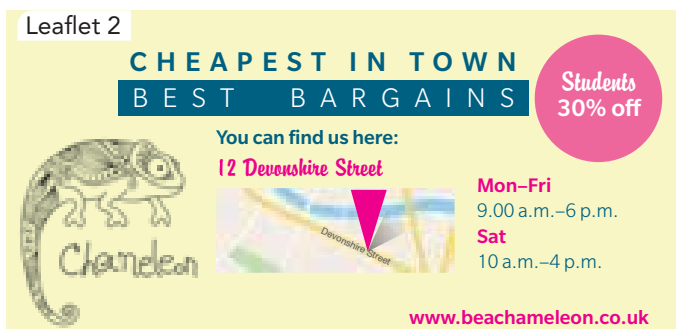
X isn't the best choice if you consider ...

The reason I wouldn't go for/pick/choose X is because ...

4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the words in brackets.

- There's a bigger chance that people will remember this one.
It is _____ (likely) this one.
- This one looks very stylish. That one looks a bit cheap.
This one _____ (but) a bit cheap.
- I'd choose this one because it gives more information.
It gives more information. That's _____ (why/opt) this one.
- I like this one because it's more eye-catching.
I _____ (prefer/simply) more eye-catching.
- This one is no good as it doesn't tell you anything about the shop.
I really don't think _____ (suitable/because) about the shop.
- I wouldn't choose this one because I think it's poorly designed.
The _____ (reason/pick) poorly designed.

5 Look at the leaflets advertising a clothes shop. In your answers to Exercise 4, replace the phrases 'this one' and 'that one' with 'leaflet 1' or 'leaflet 2'. Compare your ideas with a partner.



6 SPEAKING Look at the leaflets again. Your cousin owns a small shop which sells fashionable clothes for young people. She has asked you to help her to advertise the shop.

- Choose the leaflet in Exercise 5 which, in your opinion, is most appropriate and give reasons.
- Explain why you have rejected the other option.

Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

ROLE-PLAY 17

Making and justifying choices

17 Watch the video and practise. Then role-play your dialogue.

4.7

USE OF ENGLISH

Modality – alternative structures

I can use a range of alternative structures to express modality.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Are you 'a saver' or 'a spender'? Do the quiz and discuss the answers with a partner. Do you agree with the results?
- 2 Read the article about Jordan Cox. Answer the questions.
 - 1 How did Jordan travel from Sheffield to Shenfield? Why?
 - 2 Why were Jordan and his mother unable to afford to go out?
 - 3 What gave Jordan the idea for saving money through coupons?
 - 4 Why did he change his mind about going to university?
 - 5 What is Jordan saving for now?
 - 6 How is Jordan's attitude to money different from yours?

News Sport Weather Politics Health Education

Money-saving teen Jordan Cox: From blogging to Berlin

Teenage blogger Jordan Cox claims he **was able to save** £7.72 on his train journey from Sheffield in the north of England to Shenfield in south-east England – by taking a plane via Berlin.



He **was supposed to be** getting the train from Sheffield to Shenfield, but found that it was cheaper to fly from Sheffield to Berlin and from Berlin to Shenfield. He then blogged about his journey on his money-saving blog, and immediately gained 7,000 Twitter followers.

So how did Jordan become an expert in saving money? His story started when his father and mother split up. This meant that he and his mother **were obliged to live** on much less money. Jordan **wasn't allowed to work** because he was too young, and consequently, they **were unable to go out** and enjoy the kind of things they used to do, such as going out for meals or trips.

Then Jordan saw a programme on TV called 'Extreme Couponing' – the reality TV series follows shoppers who **are required to buy** the most shopping for the least money by using money-off vouchers or coupons. Jordan was inspired by the programme and that week he went out and **succeeded in saving** £10 on shopping.

Once he had started saving money, Jordan decided to share his tips on a Facebook page. One of his most impressive 'shopping trips' was when he **managed to acquire** shopping worth £500 for 4p, giving it all away to a charity for disadvantaged families. A few months later he was running money-saving seminars.

A few years ago, Jordan thought he **was likely to go** to university when he was eighteen, but now he's happy to have a job and financial security and is planning to continue spreading his money-saving message. He thinks that if he saves for three years, he **is sure to have** enough to buy a house. Not bad for a teenager!

Me and Money Quiz

- 1) Where do you keep your money?
 - A) In my wallet.
 - B) In a bank account.
- 2) You get your allowance every Friday. What do you do with it?
 - A) I go shopping.
 - B) I put most of it in the bank.
- 3) When you buy something expensive how much time do you spend comparing prices?
 - A) None – I know what I want.
 - B) Days or weeks – I want to make sure I get the best deal.
- 4) You've just won millions in the lottery. What would be the first thing you'd do?
 - A) Buy something luxurious – a car or a house.
 - B) Go to a financial advisor for guidance.
- 5) Which of these statements about money do you most agree with?
 - A) You can't take it with you.
 - B) A penny saved is a penny earned.

Mostly As: You're a spender! You need to learn how to save for a rainy day.

Mostly Bs: You're a saver! Are your parents bank managers?!



- 3 Read and complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with the base form of the phrases in blue in the article.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Modality – alternative structures

As well as using modal verbs, you can express modality with adverbs (*perhaps*, etc.), adjectives or participles (*she's sure to*, *he's obliged to*, etc.) or with other verbs (*we managed to*, etc.)

MODAL VERBS	ALTERNATIVE STRUCTURES
probability can, could, may, might, must	be ¹ <i>likely</i> / be unlikely to do / that ... be bound to do ... be ² _____ to do ... be certain to do ...
ability can, can't, could	be ³ _____ / be ⁴ _____ to do ... ⁵ _____ to do ... ⁶ _____ in doing ...
permission can, could, may	be allowed to do ... be permitted to do ...
prohibition can't, couldn't, may not, shouldn't, mustn't	not be ⁷ _____ to do ... be forbidden to do / from doing ... be banned from doing ...
obligation should, must	have to do ... need to do ... ought to do ... be ⁸ _____ to do ... be ⁹ _____ to do ... be ¹⁰ _____ to do ... be meant to do ...

- 4 Choose the correct option. Then tick the sentences that are true for you and compare with a partner.

- My parents *succeed in* / *are banned from* using my phone under any circumstances.
- I'm *supposed* / *certain* to change passwords regularly when I shop online, but I don't.
- I can't find my wallet, but it's *bound* / *permitted* to turn up sooner or later.
- I *managed* / *was forbidden* to save up for a new phone recently. I'm ordering one tomorrow.
- My mum says I'm *allowed* / *certain* to use her credit card to buy things online.

- 5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals to replace the underlined phrases.

- My online delivery is late. It should be here by now. **MEANT**
My online delivery is late. It's meant to be here by now.
- Janet couldn't persuade her parents to lend her any more money. **SUCCEED**
- Terry should have called me last night, but he forgot. **SUPPOSED**
- Everybody must show their ID when they open a bank account. **REQUIRED**
- Tom will probably waste all his money on new clothes. You know what he's like. **BOUND**
- You can spend up to €100 a day on this store card. **PERMITTED**

- 6 USE OF ENGLISH Complete the dialogue between Ron (R) and Eve (E) with a different word in each gap. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

R: Let's go and have a coffee.

E: I can't afford it! You know me – I never ¹ _____ to get to the end of the week without spending all my pocket money.

R: What happens if you need ² _____ buy something big like a jacket or a new phone?

E: I've got my savings. My parents give me 10 euros a week, but I'm not ³ _____ to spend all of it. I ⁴ _____ to put 30 percent into a savings account. Then, I'm ⁵ _____ to use the money I've saved for those things.

R: So what about money you earn doing babysitting?

E: I ⁶ _____ supposed to save 30 percent of everything I earn, but recently I've been lending it all to my sister. She wants a new phone, but my parents have ⁷ _____ her from using her savings, because she lost the last one. She loses things a lot. If she gets a new phone, she's ⁸ _____ to lose it quickly.

R: So it's a waste of money!

E: Not for me – she's paying me interest on the loan!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1–4

- 7 USE OF ENGLISH Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

THREE MONEY-SAVING TIPS

ONE Don't ¹ _____ an opportunity to get a discount on ² _____ your online purchases. Look for either a coupon or a code ... or both! You can get a reduction in the price, and you're also ³ _____ to get free delivery. In shops, buy things when they're on offer, or just smile and say, 'Excuse me, ⁴ _____ have a small discount please?' It might work!

TWO ⁵ _____ way to save money is to have a present drawer. Buy presents and birthday cards when they're on special offer. If you ⁶ _____ buy something at the last minute, you're unlikely to get a bargain, but if you have a stock of presents, whenever there's a birthday you just open the drawer.

THREE Leave your wallet at home. It's a good idea to have days when ⁷ _____ to spend any money. You'll avoid ⁸ _____ purchases!

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 1 A fail | B miss | C let | D pass |
| 2 A the whole | B every | C each | D all of |
| 3 A likely | B possible | C banned | D permitted |
| 4 A can I | | B do you think could I | |
| | C do you think I can't | D why can't I | |
| 5 A Every | | B The others | |
| | C Other | D Another | |
| 6 A manage | | B are bound to | |
| | C have to | D succeed in | |
| 7 A you're not allowed | | B you're certain | |
| | C your banned | D you're sure | |
| 8 A wishful | B impulse | C reflex | D reactive |

FOCUS VLOG G18 About money

G18 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 139.



WRITING

A formal email

I can describe an incident and make a complaint about it in writing.

- SPEAKING** Would you hang out with your friends in the places mentioned in the box? Why?/Why not?

coffee shop empty building park
 fast-food restaurant shopping centre
 skate park street corner
- Read Jude's post on the *Youth City News* (YCN) website. Do you think he and his friends were treated unfairly? What is the advice given by the YCN?
- Read Jude's email below and answer the questions.
 - Are the main events described in the email the same as those in Jude's message to YCN?
 - How does the style of the email differ from the style of the message?
 - How do you think the Centre Manager will react?

Dear Sir or Madam,

I am writing on ¹ _____ of myself and my friends to ² _____ your attention to an incident that **took place** at the Queen Plaza Shopping Centre last Saturday.

- ⁵ I would like to ³ _____ a formal complaint about the way we were treated by staff at the centre.

Last Saturday, some friends and I met in the centre at Plaza Café. We had bought some drinks and were enjoying ourselves when the manager of the café ¹⁰ **approached** our table and **accused** us of being too noisy. When we tried to **reason with** him, he immediately called security. A moment later, two guards arrived and forced us to leave the café and the shopping centre. To make ⁴ _____ worse, they **threatened** ¹⁵ to call the police and told us not to return in the future.

- We are particularly upset because the ⁵ _____ is we were no noisier than some of the other people in the café. To be honest, we are amazed that the centre security guards are allowed to treat customers in this way. Without doubt, the worst ⁶ _____ of this whole incident was being thrown out of the busy shopping centre like criminals. We were so **humiliated** that we decided to contact you and complain.

- As the manager of the centre, we ⁷ _____ you to ²⁵ reconsider your policies towards teenage customers. It is simply unfair to discriminate against young people in this way. We have contacted the local media about the incident and look forward to your response.

Yours faithfully,

³⁰ Jude Seaborne

YCN Message Board

Got comments? Need advice? This is the place ...



Jude

Last Saturday, my friends and I were kicked out of Queen Plaza Shopping Centre for ... no good reason! We were having a coffee in Plaza Café when the manager came over and told us to be quiet. We honestly weren't being that loud and my friend said this to the manager. Next thing, two security guards arrived and told us to leave or they'd call the police! They walked us to the exit and told us not to come back. It was so embarrassing and a total overreaction. What can we do?

YCN

If you really weren't disturbing anyone, then it does seem unfair, Jude. Why don't you write to the centre management and explain the situation? Be sure to let us know their reaction.

- Read the **WRITING FOCUS** below. Which words complete Jude's email correctly? Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

WRITING FOCUS

A formal email – describing an incident and making a complaint

Introduction

- Say why you are writing and summarise your complaint.

I am writing on behalf of myself and my friends ...

I am writing to draw your attention to ...

I would like to make a formal complaint about ...

Main paragraphs

- Use narrative tenses to describe the incident you are complaining about.
- Give your reaction to the incident.
We are particularly upset because ...
To make matters worse, ...
The truth/fact is (that) ...
Without (a) doubt, the worst part of this whole incident was ...
... I/we decided to contact you and complain.

Conclusion

- Say what you would like to happen.
I/We urge you to (reconsider your policies ...)
I/We ask/demand that you (investigate the matter ...)
- Make a final statement.
It is simply unfair to discriminate against young people in this way.
- Mention that you expect a reply.
I/We look forward to your response.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

Expressing cause and result

You can make your writing more varied by using **so/such** + **that clause** to give information about a cause, and link it to a result:

- **so + adjective + that clause**

We were **so** humiliated **that we decided to contact you and complain.**

- **such + a/an/Ø + (adjective) + noun + that clause**

It was **such a** humiliating situation **that we decided to contact you and complain.**

- 5 Complete the sentences with the appropriate words or phrases in purple from the email. Use the definitions in brackets to help you.

I am writing to complain about an incident that
1 _____ (happened) last night at Skybowl
bowling alley.

a We told her we had paid and tried to 2 _____
her (persuade her to be more sensible). ☐

b She 3 _____ us (said that we had done
something bad) of trying to leave without paying for
our drinks. ☐

c My friends and I had finished our game and were
about to leave when a waitress 4 _____ (came
towards) us. ☐

d All the other customers heard her shouting
and we felt really 5 _____ (ashamed or
embarrassed). ☐

e However, she started shouting at us and
6 _____ (promised to do something bad) to
call the police. ☐

In the end, the manager checked the computer and
found that it was the waitress's mistake. The worst part
of this whole event was that nobody apologised.

- 6 Put sentences a–e in Exercise 5 in the correct order
to form an extract from an email.

- 7 **SPEAKING** Read the LANGUAGE FOCUS and
rewrite the questions with **so** or **such a/an/Ø** (no
article). Then ask and answer.

When was the last time ...

- 1 you were _____ angry that you shouted at
someone?
- 2 you had _____ good time hanging out with
your friends that you didn't want the day to end?
- 3 you felt _____ humiliated that you went red in
the face?
- 4 you received _____ terrible service that you
complained or told someone else about it?
- 5 you had to deal with _____ rude people that
you felt offended?

- 8 You are going to write an email of complaint about
an incident. Imagine you experienced one of the
situations described below. Make notes about:

- The details of the incident (what happened and how
you felt/reacted)
- What you want the manager (of the place/company)
to do.

- 1 A bus driver refused to let you and four friends onto
a bus late at night. He said he recognised you and
that you had caused trouble on the bus the week
before. None of you had been on the bus the week
before.
- 2 You and your friends were asked to leave the cinema
after a member of staff accused you of throwing
popcorn around. It was actually some young children
sitting a few rows in front of you.
- 3 You were leaving a supermarket when the security
alarm went off. The security guards were very
aggressive and searched all your bags. After keeping
you there for half an hour, they found there was
a fault with the alarm.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 9 Choose one of the situations in Exercise 8 and
complete the writing task. Use your notes from
Exercise 8, the WRITING FOCUS and LANGUAGE
FOCUS to help you.

Write a formal email complaining about the way you
were treated.

- Describe the incident.
- Say what actions you expect the recipient of the
email to take.

4.1 Vocabulary 4.25

average /'ævərɪdʒ/
 bargain price /'bɑːgən ,praɪs/
 be on a limited budget /bi ɒn ə
 'lɪmɪtɪd 'bʌdʒət/
 carbon emission /'kɑːbən ɪ,mɪʃən/
 cautious /'kɔːʃəs/
 chain store /'tʃeɪn stɔː/
 check up on /,tʃek 'ʌp ɒn/
 clothing industry /'kləʊðɪŋ ɪndəstri/
 cut down on /,kʌt 'daʊn ɒn/
 decompose /,diːkəm'pəʊz/
 delivery /dɪ'lɪvəri/
 double /'dʌbəl/
 enter your PIN /'entə jə 'pɪn/
 ethical values /,eθɪkəl 'væljuːz/
 employment policy /ɪm'plɔɪmənt
 ,pələsi/
 environmental impact /ɪn,vairən,mentl
 'ɪmpækt/
 garment /'gɑːmənt/
 generate /'dʒenəreɪt/
 go bargain-hunting /,gəʊ ,bɑːgən
 'hʌntɪŋ/
 have a bad reputation /,hæv ə bæd
 ,repjə'teɪʃən/
 high street /'haɪ stri:t/
 impulse purchase /'ɪmpʌls ,pɜːtʃəs/
 latest /'leɪtɪst/
 life expectancy /laɪf ɪk'spektənsi/
 local brands /'ləʊkəl brændz/
 look out for /'lʊk aʊt fə/
 mass-produced product /,mæs
 prə'djuːst ,prɒdʌkt/
 online shopping /,ɒnlain 'ʃɒpɪŋ/
 opt for /'ɒpt fə/
 pay out /,peɪ 'aʊt/
 pick-up /'pɪk ʌp/
 polluter /pə'ljuːtə/
 put sth aside /put ,sʌmθɪŋ ə'saɪd/
 responsible attitude /rɪ'spɒnsəbəl
 'ætətjuːd/
 responsibly /rɪ'spɒnsəbli/
 send sth back /,send ,sʌmθɪŋ 'bæk/
 shop around /,ʃɒp ə'raʊnd/
 shop locally /,ʃɒp 'ləʊkəli/
 sportswear /'spɔːtsweə/
 spring up /,sprɪŋ 'ʌp/
 support local producers /sə,pɔːt
 ,ləʊkəl prə'djuːsəz/
 synthetic fabric /,sɪn'thetɪk 'fæbrɪk/
 tempting /'temptɪŋ/
 textile waste /,tekstail 'weɪst/
 throw-away society /,θrəʊ ə'weɪ
 sə,saiəti/
 treat yourself to /'triːt jɔːself tə/

4.2 Grammar 4.26

be concerned about /bi kən'sɜːnd
 ə,baut/
 dye your hair /,daɪ jɔː 'heə/
 form a band /,fɔːm ə 'bænd/
 hold sth up /,həʊld ,sʌmθɪŋ 'ʌp/

risky /'rɪski/
 staff entrance /,stɑːf 'entrəns/
 stage /steɪdʒ/
 transfer money /,træns'fɜː 'mʌni/

4.3 Listening 4.27

antiques market /æn'tɪːks ,mɑːkət/
 auction house /'ɔːkʃən haʊs/
 bric-a-brac /'brɪk ə ,bræk/
 car boot sale /,kɑː 'buːt seɪl/
 checked bag /,tʃekt 'bæg/
 claim sth /'kleɪm ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 clutter /'klʌtə/
 domestic /də'mestɪk/
 fashionable /'fæʃənəbəl/
 flea market /'fliː ,mɑːkət/
 get hold of /,get 'həʊld əv/
 lost property /,lɒst 'prɒpəti/
 market stall /'mɑːkət ,stɔːl/
 old-fashioned /,əʊld 'fæʃənd/
 online auction /,ɒnlain 'ɔːkʃən/
 ornament /'ɔːnəmənt/
 personal belongings /,pɜːsənəl
 bɪ'ləŋɪŋz/
 pre-owned goods /,priː 'əʊnd ,gʊdz/
 reasonably-priced /,riːzənəbli 'praɪst/
 rotten food /,rɒtn 'fuːd/
 second-hand clothes /,sekənd ,hænd
 'kləʊðz/
 stall holder /'stɔːl ,həʊldə/
 unclaimed /,ʌn 'kleɪmd/
 unwanted /ʌn'wʌntɪd/
 used goods trade /,juːzd ,gʊdz 'treɪd/

4.4 Reading 4.28

afford to do sth /ə'fɔːd tə duː
 ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 annoying /ə'noɪ-ɪŋ/
 annual /'ænjuəl/
 available /ə'veɪləbəl/
 be broke /bi 'brəʊk/
 be loaded /bi 'ləʊdəd/
 be rolling in money /bi ,rəʊlɪŋ ɪn
 'mʌni/
 be short of money /bi ,ʃɔːt əv 'mʌni/
 be well-off /bi ,wel 'ɒf/
 bid /bɪd/
 bid for sth (in an auction) /'bɪd fə
 ,sʌmθɪŋ (ɪn ən 'ɔːkʃən)/
 broadcast /'brɔːdkɑːst/
 business empire /'bɪznəs ,empaɪə/
 catch the bug /,kætʃ ðə 'bʌg/
 cause /kɔːz/
 come up for auction /,kʌm ,ʌp fər
 'ɔːkʃən/
 consumer behaviour /kən,sjuːmə
 bɪ'heɪvjə/
 contribute /kən'trɪbjʊt/
 cuddly /'kʌdli/
 cult following /,kʌlt 'fɒləʊɪŋ/
 disability /,dɪsə'bɪləti/
 disabled /dɪs'eɪbəl/
 donate /dəʊ'neɪt/

enterprising /'entəpraɪzɪŋ/
 entertainer /,entə'teɪnə/
 fetch /fetʃ/
 find it hard to make ends meet
 /,faɪnd ɪt 'hɑːd tə ,meɪk ,endz 'miːt/
 fundraise for charity /'fʌnd,reɪz fə
 ,tʃærəti/
 have money to burn /hæv 'mʌni tə
 ,bɜːn/
 hold an auction /,həʊld ən 'ɔːkʃən/
 human trafficking /,hjuːmən
 'træfɪkɪŋ/
 hyped /haɪpt/
 increase (your) earnings /ɪn,kriːs (jər)
 'ɜːnɪŋz/
 in demand /ɪn dɪ'mɑːnd/
 jar /dʒɑː/
 label /'leɪbəl/
 leftover /'leftəʊvə/
 limited edition /,lɪmɪtɪd ɪ'dɪʃən/
 live from hand to mouth /,lɪv frəm
 ,hænd tə 'maʊθ/
 make a fortune /,meɪk ə 'fɔːtʃən/
 make a profit /,meɪk ə 'prɒfɪt/
 make money /,meɪk 'mʌni/
 meaning of life /'miːnɪŋ əv ,laɪf/
 on trend /ɒn 'trend/
 place a bid /pleɪs ə'bɪd/
 publicity stunt /pʌ'blɪsəti ,stʌnt/
 put sth up for sale /,put ,sʌmθɪŋ ʌp
 fə 'seɪl/
 raise money /,reɪz 'mʌni/
 refuse /rɪ'fjuːz/
 resell /,rɪː'sel/
 reveal /rɪ'viːl/
 shredder /'ʃredə/
 step in /step ɪn/
 streetwear /striːtweə/
 sum of money /,sʌm əv 'mʌni/
 take on a challenge /,teɪk ,ɒn ə
 'tʃæləndʒ/
 winning bid /'wɪnɪŋ ,bɪd/
 wheelchair /'wiːltʃeə/
 value /'væljuː/

4.5 Grammar 4.29

bother /'bɒðə/
 bracelet /'breɪslət/
 exchange /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/
 in advance /ɪn əd'vɑːns/
 it's a pity/it's a shame /ɪts ə 'pɪti/ /ɪts
 ə 'feɪmi/
 rash /ræʃ/
 receipt /rɪ'siːt/
 take sth back /,teɪk ,sʌmθɪŋ 'bæk/

4.6 Speaking 4.30

can't be bothered to do sth /,kɑːnt
 bi ,bɒðəd tə 'duː ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 choice /tʃɔɪs/
 delivery truck /dɪ'lɪvəri ,trʌk/
 eye-catching /'aɪ ,kætʃɪŋ/
 get the message /,get ðə 'mesɪdʒ/

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1 Many consumers are trying to cut | ☐ |
| 2 New shops are starting to spring | ☐ |
| 3 Think about the environment before treating yourself | ☐ |
| 4 It's true that sometimes you have to pay | ☐ |
| 5 Even if you're a bit short | ☐ |
| a out a bit more for ethical products. | |
| b down on the amount of waste they create. | |
| c of money, there are still ways you can cut waste. | |
| d up that offer goods with no plastic packaging. | |
| e to that heavily packaged box of chocolates. | |

2 Complete the text with the words in the box. There is one extra word.

(chain making meet pre-owned
sales support taking)

It seems that anywhere you go in the world now, you see the same brand names and the same ¹ _____ stores selling familiar goods. An increasing number of people, however, are turning to alternatives, such as avoiding the big brands to ² _____ local independent shops or seeking out unique ³ _____ goods at auctions or car boot ⁴ _____. Buying and selling second-hand goods is no longer just for those who find it hard to make ends ⁵ _____. For many, selling their unwanted belongings online is a way of reducing waste as well as ⁶ _____ a bit of a profit.

3 Complete the sentences with question tags or reply questions.

- Nobody has received a refund for their cancelled flight, have they?
- That's a nice dress she's wearing tonight, _____?
- Let's talk about insuring the house, shall we?
- Don't forget to call me, will you?
- A: Tim had to take out a loan to buy a car.
B: Did he?
- A: I'm not going to lend him money ever again!
B: Aren't you?

4 Choose the correct option.

- We *should have found* / *had to find* the receipt before we could take the camera back to the shop.
- I told you not to order a wedding dress online. You *should listen* / *ought to have listened* to me then, and we wouldn't have to look for one now!
- She said she was broke, so she *shouldn't have* / *ought to have spent* so much on new clothes.
- I *didn't need to spend* / *needn't have spent* a fortune on all this fancy food. They didn't come after all.
- Look at the queue to get into the shop! We *ought to arrive* / *ought to have arrived* earlier.

USE OF ENGLISH

5 Read the text. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

BAR CODE

You may have never heard of Joe Woodland or Bernard Silver, but you ¹ _____ to come across their groundbreaking invention on a daily basis – the bar code.



While studying engineering, Woodland and Silver were approached by a retail food company and asked to find ways to automate checkout operations. They ² _____ design a bar code in the shape of a bull's eye. It meant that employees no longer ³ _____ manually input prices for every single product at the checkout, neither were they ⁴ _____ replace price tags whenever an item's cost changed. Even though the idea didn't catch on at first, the food industry didn't give up looking for an easy way to scan products. Finally, an IBM employee, George Laurer, ⁵ _____ designing the bar code we're all familiar with today as a rectangular box with vertical lines and numbers. The first ever item was scanned on 26th June 1974. It was a pack of chewing gum, which is now a museum exhibit, together with the scanner used.

Nowadays, you ⁶ _____ to come across everything from food to furniture branded with a bar code. It has even become a feature in some modern paintings.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 A are meant | B manage |
| C are certain | D are required |
| 2 A able to | B succeeded |
| C managed to | D were allowed to |
| 3 A ought to | B must |
| C should | D had to |
| 4 A needed to | B bound to |
| C had to | D obliged to |
| 5 A succeeded in | B managed |
| C were able to | D supposed to |
| 6 A are able | B are likely |
| C are meant | D will surely |

6 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to four words in each gap, but do not change the word in capitals.

- It would have been better if we hadn't given Tony so much money for his birthday. **SHOULD**
We should not have given Tony so much money for his birthday.
- The offer was so good, they didn't hesitate to accept it. **SUCH**
It was such a good offer that they didn't hesitate to accept
- It wasn't necessary for Sarah to pay her university fees because they were covered by her employer. **NEED**
Sarah didn't need to pay her university fees because they were covered by her employer.
- By law, stores can't sell certain products to under eighteens. **FORBIDDEN**
By law, stores are forbidden to sell/from selling certain products to under eighteens.
- We didn't manage to launch a new campaign due to lack of funding. **SUCCEED**
We did not succeed in launching a new campaign due to lack of funding.

LISTENING

- 7 **2.32** Listen to an interview with Anne, who works as a mystery shopper, and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D. You will hear the recording twice.
- Anne is asked by her clients to
 - visit local businesses.
 - buy specific products.
 - dress in a particular way.
 - go to any store she wants.
 - The services of mystery shoppers are in demand mainly because
 - shops want to attract wealthier customers.
 - they provide information on the online competition.
 - there aren't many people who actually do the job.
 - online shopping is becoming a danger to regular stores.
 - Which is not true about the stores Anne has visited?
 - Some of them are hiring more staff and are cleaner than before.
 - Some of them have more customers and longer queues.
 - Some of them are becoming more shopper-friendly.
 - Some of them are winning awards for customer service.
 - What does Anne say about being a mystery shopper in expensive restaurants?
 - It's a task requiring a good memory.
 - She has to take notes during the meal.
 - It's a good opportunity to speak to the staff.
 - She finds it a good way to combine work and spending a nice evening.
 - In the interview, Anne suggests that the mystery shopper job
 - cannot bring any satisfaction.
 - can sometimes pay very well.
 - can be monotonous.
 - can be done by anyone.

WRITING

E-mail

- 8 Read part of an email you sent to an English friend. Write an email of complaint to the manager of the museum.



I really enjoyed our visit to the museum yesterday, but I can't believe that they asked you not to go into the Egyptian room. How can they claim it's in the museum rules and regulations that your wheelchair might damage the delicate exhibits in there! I think their attitude was really wrong and totally unfair. I'm going to write an email to the director of the museum and complain about the behaviour of the museum staff.

SPEAKING

- 9 Look at the photos. Your end-of-school ball is taking place soon and you need a suitable formal outfit. Choose the method of getting a new outfit which, in your opinion, is the best, and give reasons for your choice.

A



B



C



- 10 Ask and answer the questions.

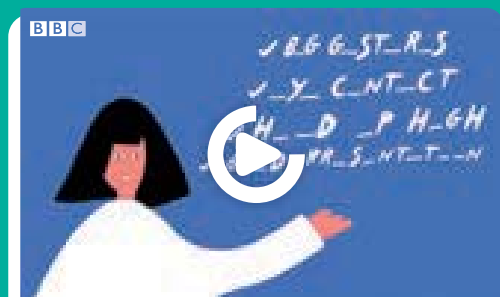
- Where do you usually buy your clothes?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of buying clothes online?
- In the past, people often had their clothes made or sewed them themselves. Why was it so popular and why did it stop being so common?
- Do you think it makes sense to spend a lot of money on clothes you will only wear once at a ball or similar occasions?

5

Off to work

My advice is to never do tomorrow what you can do today. Procrastination is the thief of time.

Charles Dickens



FEELING LIKE A LEADER

19 Watch the BBC video.
For the worksheet, go to page 140.

5.1

VOCABULARY

Work • expressions to do with work • phrasal verbs • adjectives from nouns

I can talk about work and employment.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- Complete the sentences with the correct form of **work** (noun or verb) or **job** (noun).
 - Brenda has a *part-time/manual/well-paid* job.
 - Tom _____ *from home/long hours/with his hands*.
 - Amy has done a lot of *hard/voluntary/office* _____ over the years.
 - Luca _____ *outdoors/in advertising/abroad*.
 - Hal *applied for/got fired from/resigned from* a _____ in sales.
- SPEAKING** Think about three people with different jobs that you know. Tell your partner about them using the structures in Exercise 1 and your own ideas.
- SPEAKING** Brainstorm ideas for how you can become a more effective worker or student. Then read a summary of some tips from a book called *Eat that Frog!* by Brian Tracy and check your answers.
- Read the summary again and answer the questions.
 - What is a 'frog' in the summary? What does 'eat that frog' mean?
 - How can making lists help you at work? What two lists does the author suggest?
 - Why should you imitate what other successful people do?
 - Why is developing your skills important?

EAT THAT FROG!

You're almost at the end of school and close to going on to further education or **entering the job market**. In his book, *Eat that Frog!*, time management expert Brian Tracy outlines some simple tips to help you **reach your full potential** and stop you burning out.



5 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions.

- 1 How good are you at time management and getting things done?
- 2 Which tips describe things you do or would consider doing?
- 3 Do you think it is always important to 'eat that frog'? Why/Why not?

1 **EAT THAT FROG**

Imagine the scenario – you've taken up a new job or started a new course, but you're **overworked**. You've got so many things to do. Your frog is your biggest, most difficult and important task, the one you're most likely to **put off** until later. Make sure it's the first job you do, and **keep at it** until it's done.

2 **WRITE DOWN YOUR GOALS**

Set out your objectives. Make a list of ten **goals you'd like to achieve** in the next twelve months. If you could only achieve one goal, which one would have the most positive effect on your life? Focus on that objective first and **get down to** work straight away.

3 **WRITE A TO-DO LIST**

Get organised. Before you get on with your work, if you take ten minutes to **map out** exactly how you will spend your time, you can **increase your output** by 25 percent. Planning can save you time especially when you're **working to a deadline**.

4 **DEVELOP THE RIGHT HABITS**

Improve your career prospects by observing what successful people do. Imitate their behaviour: be **punctual**, **think for yourself**, **speak your mind**. **Do these things day in, day out** until they become second nature. Then you'll be on your way to becoming a successful person, too.

5 **GET BETTER AT WHAT YOU DO**

Commit to taking on new challenges, picking up new skills and reading about your future profession. The more **knowledgeable** and skilled you become, the faster you will **carry out** the tasks at hand. Identify what you're good at and then **put your heart into** doing those specific things very, very well.

6 **MOTIVATE YOURSELF**

Always be **enthusiastic** and **purposeful**. Try to be **conscientious** and get the job done – imagine you have to go away for a month and then **work towards** finishing the job before you leave.

7 **REMEMBER – EAT THAT FROG!**

Do the hard things first. Focus on the important tasks. Be **single-minded**. Just do it!



WORD STORE 5A Expressions to do with work

- 6 **2.33** Complete WORD STORE 5A with the verbs in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 7 Replace the underlined phrases with the phrases in WORD STORE 5A. Then answer the questions about the text.
- 1 How can this book help you to become as good as you can be?
 - 2 Of all the objectives you'd like to fulfil, which one should you pursue first?
 - 3 How can you make yourself 25 percent more productive?
 - 4 What can help when you have a time limit to do something?
 - 5 How can you make your employment possibilities better?
 - 6 What do you need to do over and over until it becomes second nature?
 - 7 What specific things should you put a lot of effort into put your heart into?

WORD STORE 5B Phrasal verbs

- 8 **2.34** Complete WORD STORE 5B with the underlined phrasal verbs in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 9 **SPEAKING** Complete the sentences with the correct phrasal verb and the pronoun *it*. Discuss which sentence, a or b, is true for you and whether you should change your habits.
- 1 When I have English homework, ...
 - a I _____ till the last minute. (burn out/put off)
 - b I _____ as soon as I can. (get down to/keep at)
 - 2 When I have an English essay to do, ...
 - a I brainstorm ideas and _____ carefully before writing. (carry out/map out)
 - b I start writing immediately and _____ until it's finished. (keep at/set out)
 - 3 When I have an English exam coming up, ...
 - a I make a revision plan and _____ carefully. (carry out/put off)
 - b I _____ by doing old exam papers. (burn out/work towards)

WORD STORE 5C Adjectives from nouns

- 10 **2.35** Complete WORD STORE 5C with the highlighted adjectives in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 11 **SPEAKING** Complete the statements with an appropriate noun or adjective in WORD STORE 5C. Then discuss whether you agree and give reasons for your answers.
- 1 _____ is unhealthy. It causes stress.
 - 2 It is a sign of respect to be _____ and not to waste other people's time.
 - 3 _____ people have the gift of extreme focus. They become successful more often.
 - 4 _____ is power. A good education is important.
 - 5 At work, people with a sense of _____ are motivated and optimistic about the future.

5.2

Reported speech

I can use reported speech, making appropriate grammatical changes.

- 1 **2.36 SPEAKING** Listen to some people being interviewed for the jobs shown in photos A–C. Would you employ them? Why?/Why not?
- 2 **2.36** Read the reports of the interviews in Exercise 1. Rewrite the underlined parts in Direct Speech. Then listen again and check.
- 1 We asked the candidate to tell us about his weaknesses. He told us that he wasn't a morning person. In fact, he said he had struggled to get up that morning. He said he would like to start work after lunch.
A: Tell us _____
B: I _____
- 2 In the interview we said it was a pity that they hadn't had any experience of restaurant work. They told us not to worry and that they were very good at eating. That was why they thought they should get the job.
A: It's a _____
B: Don't _____
C: That _____
- 3 In the current interview we've just asked the candidate whether she likes the job she has now. She says she doesn't because she has to answer the phone a lot, and she hates that. A: Do _____
B: No, _____
- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then look at the way the Direct Speech is reported in Exercise 2 and find examples for each rule.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 20

Reported Speech

When you report someone's words, remember these rules:

- You usually move the verbs 'one tense back' when your reporting verb is in a past tense (*She said ...*).
- You **don't** change the verb form if your reporting verb is in a present tense (*She says ...* or *He has told me ...*).
- You **don't** change verbs in the Past Perfect or modal verbs such as *would*, *should*, *could*, *might*, *must*.
- You change pronouns, possessive adjectives and words for time and place if necessary.
- You change the word order in questions and don't use *do*, *does* or *did*.
- You use the *to* + infinitive to report orders, suggestions, requests and promises.



- 4 Harry is preparing for a job interview. Report his parents' comments. Do not change the tense if it isn't necessary.
- 1 'You didn't prepare well enough for your last interview.' They said (that) he hadn't prepared well enough for his previous interview.
- 2 'You'll never get a job if you don't have your hair cut.' They said _____
- 3 'You forgot to clean your shoes last time and they always look at shoes.' They said _____
- 4 'You should buy a new suit.' They said _____
- 5 'You mustn't drink too much coffee beforehand because you'll be nervous.' They said _____
- 6 'Don't worry if you don't get it. Something better might come up.' They've told him _____
- 5 **SPEAKING** Report these interviewers' comments. Do not change the tense if not necessary. Which comments would you be happy with/worried about? Why?
- 1 'Did you write this CV?' They asked me whether/if I had written that CV.
- 2 'Don't call us, we'll call you.' They told me _____
- 3 'I'll be contacting your references tomorrow.' He says _____
- 4 'Will you be available to start here next month?' They've asked me _____
- 5 'You're exactly the person we're looking for.' She says _____
- 6 'Could we give you some advice?' They asked me _____
- 6 Complete the reported statements to make them true for you. Compare with a partner.
- 1 The last time my friends gave me good advice, they told me _____
- 2 My brother/sister/friend annoys me when he/she tells me _____
- 3 I think I'm pretty good/bad at English. My teacher says _____
- 4 I heard something interesting recently. Somebody told me _____
- 5 I don't know what I want to do when I leave school. My parents say _____
- 6 The last person who spoke to me was _____. He/She said _____

FOCUS VLOG 21 About job interviews

21 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 141.

5.3

LISTENING

Matching

I can identify details that support a point of view in an interview about jobs.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss which category A–C each job in the box belongs to. Think of three more jobs for each category.

actor artist body-part maker dentist
factory worker fire fighter lawyer office worker
politician robot mechanic shop assistant teacher
solar panel engineer space tourist guide wind
turbine technician writer

- A jobs that will always be needed
B jobs that are at risk
C jobs of the future

- 2 **2.37** Listen to an interview with a data analyst. Compare his findings with your ideas in Exercise 1.

- 3 **2.37** Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Then listen again and check.

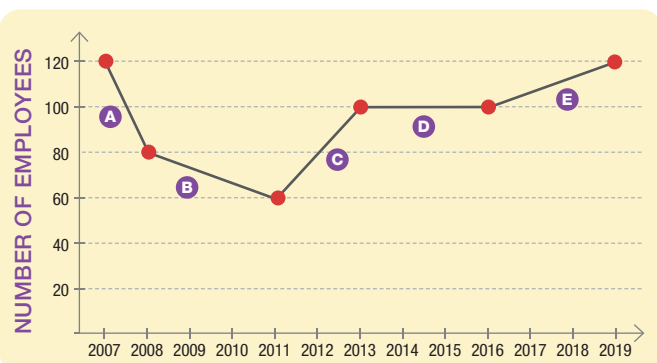
constant decline marked rise sharp

- There's been a **steady** _____ in people working from home.
- There's been a _____ **drop in** the number of people commuting to work.
- The need for jobs in the medical and teaching professions will **remain** _____.
- There will be a _____ **increase in** jobs connected with alternative energy.
- There will be a **gradual** _____ in jobs in retail, offices and factories.

WORD STORE 5D Phrases describing change

- 4 **2.38** Complete WORD STORE 5D with the words in the box to describe change. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 5 Look at the graph and describe what was happening in periods A–E. Use the phrases from WORD STORE 5D.



Between 2007 and 2008 there was a sharp decline in the number of employees.

- 6 **SPEAKING** Use the phrases in WORD STORE 5D to describe trends in your country. Think about the ideas in the box.

cycling to work/school shopping online
studying English cost of going out
getting married in your twenties living alone
using plastic bags

EXAM FOCUS Matching

- 7 **2.39** Listen to four people talking about their jobs. Match statements A–E with speakers 1–4. There is one extra statement.

Speaker 1: ☐ Speaker 3: ☐
Speaker 2: ☐ Speaker 4: ☐

The speaker

- A is concerned about some elderly people he/she meets at work.
B says that technology has replaced parts of the jobs in his/her industry.
C thinks that it's better to do an apprenticeship than go to university.
D has a hobby that has taught him/her skills that are relevant for his/her job.
E thinks technology allows for more efficiency in his/her job.

- 8 **2.39** Listen again and answer the questions.

- What makes law such a stable profession?
- Why are law firms now offering apprenticeships?
- How have dental patients benefited from medical advances?
- Why is it useful to have good interpersonal skills as a shop assistant?
- What qualifications and skills do you need to be a wind turbine technician?

- 9 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions about the future of work.

- What other jobs or careers do you think are stable? Which ones are at risk?
- What are the advantages of working from home compared to commuting to work?
- What kind of qualifications and skills do you think you'll need for the future?

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 10 **2.40** Listen and repeat the words said as nouns and as verbs. Mark the stress. Which pairs have different stress patterns?

contract export import increase
market recruit review target

a contract/to contract

- 11 Take turns to practise the words in Exercise 10. Decide whether your partner is saying a noun or a verb.

1 SPEAKING Discuss the questions.

- As a child, how did you use to answer this question:
What do you want to be when you grow up?
- How would you answer this question now?
- Is it better to have one or many passions? Why?

2 Look at the title of the blog post. What do you think it is about? Read and check your ideas.**EXAM FOCUS** Multiple choice**3** Read the post again. For questions 1–5, choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- The writer thinks that as we get older we
 - tend to lose our imagination.
 - find it impossible to make decisions.
 - could benefit from career counselling.
 - feel pressured to choose a specialisation.
- In the third paragraph the writer suggests that
 - everybody should find a passion and stick to it.
 - people refuse to choose a career on purpose.
 - people are worried if they don't have one true calling.
 - you will never succeed in life unless you find your niche.
- In the modern workplace, people
 - that are curious stay in the same profession.
 - can't decide what they want to do.
 - are taking responsibility for how they work.
 - have fewer opportunities than their parents.
- In the sixth paragraph the writer's purpose is to show that
 - the workplace needs to be modernised.
 - the traditional working day is being transformed.
 - part-time workers can do several jobs equally well.
 - freelancers can choose to be employed or independent.
- The blog post is about
 - the importance of finding your one true calling.
 - the negative consequences of being a quitter.
 - the best age at which to choose your career.
 - people who don't fit neatly into one category.

4 **2.42** Match the words and phrases in blue in the blog post with their definitions. Then listen, check and repeat.

- advice from career experts = career guidance
- a series of jobs in the same profession = _____
- a person who gives advice = _____
- work hours that are not fixed = _____
- a person who is self-employed = _____
- one work role carried out by two people = _____
- a person who doesn't work full-time = _____
- do well and be successful = _____
- people who work = _____
- the place where you work = _____

5 Complete the comments with the words and phrases in Exercise 4 in the correct form.**Sandra, 16**

Thanks for this post. I can see now that my problem is that I'm a jack of all trades and master of none! At school I had ¹c _____ g _____, but it didn't help me at all. I still don't know what to do at college.

Robert, 18

I agree. The ²c _____ don't really help. It would be more helpful to have counselling once we have some experience and can visualise our future ³c _____ p _____ more clearly.

Marta, 16

I was really interested in what you're saying about the modern ⁴w _____ being more flexible. I think ⁵j _____ is a great idea – you just have to make sure that communication is really good between both people doing the job.

Paula, 17

Maybe, but I think it's better to work for a big organisation if you want to ⁶t _____ in your career. I don't think you can ever feel like an important part of the workforce if you're a self-employed ⁷f _____.

James, 17

I don't think I could do the same job day in, day out, even if they had ⁸f _____ in place of rigid nine to five hours. But I can see myself working as a ⁹p _____ in several different jobs.

6 SPEAKING Discuss whether you have similar or different opinions to the people in Exercise 5.**WORD STORE 5E** Verb–noun collocations**7** **2.43** Complete WORD STORE 5E with the underlined phrases in the blog post. Then listen, check and repeat.**8 SPEAKING** Complete the sentences with collocations in WORD STORE 5E. Discuss which sentences are true for you.

- I wouldn't say I lack _____. I'm just keeping my options open.
- My sister/brother and I are wired _____ – it's incredible to think we're related.
- My dad always wanted to be a teacher – he says it's his one true _____.
- I'd like to focus on my _____, but I'm not sure what they are.
- I'm not worried about finding my _____ or having a _____. I just want to be famous and make lots of money!
- I don't think I'd like to be somebody else's boss, but I would like to be _____ of my own career.

What if you don't have **ONE** dream job?

2.41

Do you remember being asked what you wanted to be when you grew up? No doubt the more imaginative your answer, the more approval you would get. But once we reach adolescence, there's far less tolerance for answers like, 'I'm going to be a marine biologist, circus clown and journalist!' Now the question translates as *You are allowed one identity in this life, so which is it?*

At school there's pressure to **focus on your strengths**, and choose a subject to major in at university, which leads to one specific degree, intended for one type of job. The message that you need to specialise is reinforced in many contexts. **Career guidance** books and **counsellors** give you tests to help you **find your niche** and identify your dream job.

But what happens if you're wired differently? Let's say you're curious about several subjects, and there are many things you'd like to study. If you're unable or unwilling to settle on a single **career path**, you might worry that you don't **have one true calling** like everybody else and that, therefore, your life **lacks purpose**. As the saying goes, you're a 'jack of all trades, master of none'.

In reality, few people are just 'one thing'. A rare few **have a vocation** and stick to it, but for most young people who will make up the **workforce** of the future, 'one thing' is not relevant any more. For our parents' and grandparents' generation, it was normal to work in the same profession and often the same company for thirty or more years. Those days are long gone.

The ambitious young people of today are more interested in moving around and doing different things. In the modern **workplace**, people are working flexibly and the individual is in control of their professional life and in a position to make decisions about how, when and where they work. Rather than finding something and doing it forever, the new challenge is to find a way of working that works for you.

Reflecting the needs of the modern workforce, the workplace is also changing at a rapid rate. Flexible working is becoming the new norm. The standard working day of nine to five has been replaced by **flexitime**. The majority of people no longer believe that attendance in an office is required or necessary on a day-to-day basis.

Job-sharing is becoming more popular with people who prefer diversity in

their working day – work traditionally performed by one person can be split between two **part-timers**. There are also a growing number of **freelancers** choosing self-employment as a way to **be in charge** of their own professional lives.

This new flexible workplace is one where multipotentialites feel at ease. Multipotentialite is a term invented by Emilie Wapnick, whose TED talk *Why some of us don't have a true calling* has been watched by millions of viewers. She claims to be someone who has a range of interests. She sees herself not as a specialist, but as a generalist, and describes how she used to worry that she wasn't normal because she didn't have a vocation, and so could be dismissed as a quitter, a flake or a jack of all trades, master of none.

She explains how people like herself are suited to the modern workplace in three essential ways. Firstly, they are used to combining two or more fields and it is at the intersection between seemingly unrelated ideas that innovation often happens. Secondly, people who change roles frequently are less afraid of trying new things and stepping out of their comfort zones. They're fast learners. And finally, they are adaptable.

So, if you're a generalist, a polymath, a multipotentialite, or whatever you call yourself, you are the one who will **thrive** in the twenty-first century workplace. The world needs jacks of all trades. And it also needs an updated version of the phrase. How about 'jack of all trades, master of all'?



Reporting verbs

I can use a range of reporting verbs.



- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss the meaning of the question in the headline. Then read Part 1 of the report and decide what you think the answer is.



SPOILT BRAT OR NEGLECTED CHILD?

Part 1

US teenager Rachel Canning took her parents to court and tried to sue them for financial support. She **accused** them of abandoning her when she had turned eighteen and refusing to fund her college education. She **claimed** that they had thrown her out of her home and **explained** that she had been living at a friend's house.

Mr Canning refused to accept his daughter's version of events. He denied kicking Rachel out and **assured** the court that she had left voluntarily after an argument about household rules. He **suggested** that Rachel's friends had encouraged her to take the matter to court. He **insisted** that he and his wife loved and missed their child and **added** that the situation was having a terrible effect on them. He begged his daughter to come home soon.

- 2 Look at the six reporting verbs in blue in Exercise 1. Five can be replaced with *said* and one with *told*. Which one and why?
- 3 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then find five more reporting verbs in the text in Exercise 1. Which verb patterns do they illustrate?

GRAMMAR FOCUS 22

Reporting verbs

Verbs without an object

- verb + that:** add, admit, agree, claim, deny, explain, insist, promise, propose, recommend, suggest
She **promised that** she would come home.
- verb + to + infinitive:** agree, claim, offer, promise, refuse
He **offered to help**.
- verb + -ing:** admit, deny, propose, recommend, suggest
They **suggested talking** to the lawyer.
- verb + preposition + -ing:** apologise for, insist on, object to
I **insisted on paying** for everything.

Verbs with an object

- verb + object + that:** assure, convince, inform, promise, remind, warn
She **assured me that** she was OK.
- verb + object + to + infinitive:** advise, beg, convince, encourage, invite, order, persuade, remind, urge, warn (not)
He **urged them to leave**.
- verb + object + preposition + -ing:** accuse sb of, blame sb for, congratulate sb on, thank sb for
He **congratulated me on passing** the exam.

- 4 **USE OF ENGLISH** Read Part 2 of the report and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D. Do you agree with the judge's decision?

Part 2

The judge rejected the teenager's demands, but ¹ _____ everyone in the court that in future, children may consider suing their parents for a smartphone. The judge ² _____ Rachel and her family to have family counselling. The teenager has ³ _____ to return home and the Cannings have ⁴ _____ the media to give the family some privacy while they work things out. The parents have ⁵ _____ to relax the house rules and in return, Rachel has ⁶ _____ them that she won't leave home again.

- 1 A warned B explained C promised D suggested
2 A denied B insisted C advised D reminded
3 A agreed B proposed C reminded D ordered
4 A refused B warned C insisted D urged
5 A convinced B offered C suggested D told
6 A agreed B denied C warned D promised

- 5 Some reporting verbs can have two or more patterns. Report each of these sentences in two different ways.

- 1 'I did not kick my daughter out!' Rachel's father denied kicking his daughter out/that he had kicked his daughter out.
- 2 'We reckon you should take your parents to court.' Rachel's friends suggested _____.
- 3 'We have been terribly upset.' Rachel's parents admitted _____.
- 4 'You should have some family counselling.' The judge recommended _____.
- 5 'OK. We'll relax some of the house rules.' Rachel's parents promised _____.
- 6 'All right. I'll move back in.' Rachel agreed _____.

- 6 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the box. Use an appropriate verb pattern and the pronoun me as the object if necessary.

(buy have lose not copy owe redecorate)

Recently ...

- 1 my friends have persuaded me to have a haircut.
2 my brother has blamed _____ his camera.
3 a teacher has warned _____ homework from the Internet.
4 a friend has reminded _____ him/her some money.
5 my parents have offered _____ a laptop.
6 Dad has suggested _____ my bedroom.

- 7 **SPEAKING** Are any of the sentences in Exercise 6 true for you? Use the sentence beginnings to report other things that people have said to you recently.

5.6

SPEAKING

Problem solving

I can discuss problems and solutions, and express annoyance.

1 SPEAKING Describe what happened last time you experienced one of these problems.

- 1 Something was lost or stolen (bag, keys, bike, etc.)
- 2 Something was broken (computer, car, phone, etc.)
- 3 Something was forgotten (test, alarm, appointment, etc.)



2 2.44 Listen to two friends, Hannah and Daniel, discussing a problem and answer the questions.

- 1 What was the problem and how did Hannah and Daniel try to solve it?
- 2 What would be a better solution in your opinion?
- 3 What do you think might happen next?

3 2.44 Choose the correct option to complete the SPEAKING FOCUS. Then listen again and check.

SPEAKING FOCUS

Talking about a problem

What's wrong/the matter?

What's ¹ up / on (with it)?

I seem/appear to have lost/forgotten/broken ...

I haven't (got) a clue./I've no ² thought / idea ./I wish I knew.

Every time I try to ..., it ...

Perhaps there's something wrong/a problem with the ...

Talking about a solution

Have you tried ...+ -ing?

It's worth a try/a go, I suppose.

I ³ doubt / know it'll/that'll work/help, but let's see.

Problem solved!

No, that doesn't/didn't make any ⁴ solution / difference .

Expressing annoyance

What are we ⁵ about / supposed to do now?

Why on earth did/didn't you ...?

How should I ⁶ know / think?

You should have checked/asked first.

You should have thought about that earlier.

4 2.45 Complete the dialogues with one word in each gap. Sometimes more than one answer is possible. Then listen and check.

Dialogue 1

Abi and Beth are working in a supermarket during the school holidays.

Abi: What's ¹ _____?

Beth: Well, unfortunately, I ² _____ to have broken the bar code scanner.

Abi: Oh no. What happened?

Beth: I put it on the table during the break and spilled my coffee on it – like an idiot!

Abi: Whoops. The manager isn't going to be happy.

Beth: Yeah, tell me about it. ³ _____ time I try to switch it on, it beeps and switches off again.

Abi: Have you ⁴ _____ drying it under the hand dryer in the toilets?

Beth: Actually no, but it's worth a go, I ⁵ _____.

Dialogue 2

Leo is working on his uncle's farm during the summer.

Pete: Hello, Woodtop Farm.

Leo: Uncle Pete, it's me. I'm in the bottom field. The tractor has broken down.

Pete: What? What's the ⁶ _____ with it?

Leo: Er ... I ⁷ _____ I knew.

Pete: OK. Listen, are the lights working?

Leo: Hang on a second ... Yep.

Pete: OK, then it's not the battery. You did remember to put some fuel in it, right?

Leo: Er ... oh.

Pete: Leo! I told you it was nearly empty.

Leo: I, er ... I forgot. Sorry.

Pete: Well, you'll have to walk back up here and get some, won't you?

Leo: What? It's miles!

Pete: Well, you should have thought about that ⁸ _____. Next time, perhaps you'll remember.

Leo: Can't you bring some fuel down in the ... hello?

5 SPEAKING Follow the instructions below to prepare a dialogue. Use the SPEAKING FOCUS to help you.

As part of a project, you are giving a joint presentation about summer job opportunities in your local area.

Together, you prepared a presentation on a laptop.

Student A: You were responsible for bringing a pen drive with all the notes and visuals. The presentation is in twenty minutes, and you have just realised that you left the pen drive at home.

Student B: You worked hard on the presentation and are very annoyed that your partner forgot to bring the pen drive.

There isn't enough time to go home. Together, you need to come up with a solution.

6 Practise your dialogue and act it out. Take turns to be Student A and Student B.

ROLE-PLAY 23 24 Solving problems

23 24 Watch the video and practise. Then role-play your dialogue.

- SPEAKING** List all the social media apps you use. Discuss which are the most popular. How popular is WhatsApp?
- Read the text about WhatsApp. One of the following statements is false. Which one?
 - Jan Koum, a co-founder of WhatsApp, is from Ukraine.
 - The app is called WhatsApp because it sounds like 'What's up?'
 - Koum was not successful at school or at university in the USA.
 - Koum met Brian Acton, the other co-founder of WhatsApp, at Yahoo.
 - Koum and Acton both got jobs at Facebook in 2007.
 - Koum and Acton sold WhatsApp to Facebook and are now billionaires.
- Read and complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with examples of the three-part phrasal verbs in blue and the underlined nouns and adjectives in the text.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Phrasal verbs – advanced points

Three-part phrasal verbs

- Most three-part phrasal verbs are made up of really common verbs like *come*, *get*, *put*, etc. plus a variety of adverbial and prepositional particles.

¹ *come up against* (meet or confront), ² _____ (feel superior to), ³ _____ (compensate for)

- Three-part phrasal verbs are nearly always inseparable.
He came up against bullying. NOT *He came up bullying against.*

Word building with phrasal verbs

Nouns

Verb + particle: *clear sth out* → a *clear-out*, *let sb down* → a ⁴ _____, *warm sth up* → a *warm-up*. You stress the 'verb' part not the particle.

Particle + verb: *bring sb up* → an ⁵ _____, *pour down* → a *downpour*, *set out* → *outset*. You usually stress the 'particle' part not the verb.

Adjectives

Particle + verb -ing *put sb off* → *be off-putting*

Verb (Past Participle) + particle *run sth down* → *be* ⁶ _____

- Match the remaining three-part phrasal verbs in blue in the text with the definitions. Use a dictionary if necessary.
- 1 be the result of = _____
- 2 think of a new idea = _____
- 3 leave e.g. a school = _____
- 4 do sth after = _____
- 5 develop from sth = _____
- 6 be very busy with sth = _____

The WhatsApp story

If you use instant messaging services, it's very likely that WhatsApp is one of them. But what do you know about it? Did you know that it was invented by Jan Koum, a Ukrainian-born entrepreneur? After he bought his first iPhone, he got annoyed that he was missing calls when he went to the gym and WhatsApp **grew out of** the simple idea that it's good to let people know if you're available. He **came up with** the name WhatsApp because it sounded like 'What's up?'

There was nothing in Koum's upbringing to suggest that the young Ukrainian would one day change the world of social media. He was brought up in a small village near Kiev. He rarely saw his father who **was** usually **tied up with** work at a government construction company until 10 o'clock at night. But then, when Koum was sixteen, he emigrated to California with his mother and grandmother, while his father stayed behind and never left Ukraine. It was a hard time for the family who lived in very run-down accommodation.

Koum studied computer science and maths, but at school he **came up against** bullying from other boys and often got into trouble. In Ukraine Koum had left behind his close group of friends; now he **looked down on** the casual friendships that people had at high school in America and he eventually **dropped out of** college.

Things changed when he got a job at Yahoo in the early 2000s. First he met Brian Acton, who would **go on to** co-found WhatsApp. When Koum and Acton left Yahoo in 2007, they applied for jobs at Facebook. Both were turned down.

Following rejection from Facebook, the two friends decided to go travelling in South America, and it was when they returned to the USA that they co-founded WhatsApp. The app didn't take off straight away, which was a real letdown for Koum and Acton. However, by 2014 it had more than 400 million users globally. In the end, the huge success of WhatsApp **came down to** the excellent user experience. Facebook paid more than \$19 billion to acquire WhatsApp, which more than **made up for** their earlier rejection, turning both Koum and Acton into billionaires.



Jan Koum (right) and Brian Acton (left), co-founders of WhatsApp

5 Match eight more common three-part phrasal verbs with their definitions.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 keep up with sb ☐ | a admire and respect |
| 2 get on with sb ☐ | b avoid |
| 3 get out of ☐ | c use all of sth and have nothing left |
| 4 get round to ☐ | d stay at the same level as |
| 5 look up to sb ☐ | e defend |
| 6 put up with sth/sb ☐ | f find time to |
| 7 run out of sth ☐ | g tolerate |
| 8 stand up for sth ☐ | h be friends with |

6 Complete the three-part phrasal verbs in the sentences with the correct forms of come, get, make or put.

- To become rich, you only have to _____ up with one good idea.
- I _____ on really well with my work colleagues, we are quite a team!
- Being successful in a job _____ down to hard work – that's all.
- An interesting job that you love doing can _____ up for a low salary.
- It's important to keep your social media profile updated, but most people don't _____ round to it.
- Rich people always try to _____ out of paying their taxes.
- Wage discrimination isn't a thing of the past; women _____ up against it all the time.
- You can't choose your work colleagues. If you don't get on, you just have to _____ up with them.

7 SPEAKING Discuss the statements in Exercise 6. Which ones do you agree with? Give reasons for your answers.

8 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the noun or adjective form of the underlined phrasal verb.

- I was brought up in a similar way to my parents.
I had _____.
- Yesterday it poured down on my way home from school.
Yesterday there was _____.
- I always warm up before I do any sport.
I like to do _____.
- I need to clear out all the junk in my bedroom.
I need to have _____.
- Background music puts me off when I am trying to study.
I find background music _____.
- If I dropped out of college, my parents would never forgive me.
If I became _____.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1–5

9 USE OF ENGLISH Complete the message with one word in each gap.

Dee

Published 1 hour ago

Dear All,

This is to announce that I've decided to give up social media (no, it's not a joke). I'm just completely fed up with it. Over the last five years I've spent a great ¹ _____ of time and energy on posting, reading, liking and commenting. But now push notifications are driving me mad! I just can't put ² _____ with it any longer. I'm also fed up with all my ³ _____ acquaintances. Over the years, I've ⁴ _____ to collect 3,000 friends on social media, but ⁵ _____ of them visited me when I was ill – not one! Last, but not least, I'm so busy on social media that I can't ⁶ _____ down to any serious school work. It feels like if I don't stop now, I'll ⁷ _____ out of school! So, this is my last post.

CU ⁸ _____ – in the real world!

Dee



10 SPEAKING Imagine you decided to give up social media. Discuss the questions.

- What would be the advantages/disadvantages?
- What would you miss most/least?
- How long would you be able to manage without social media?

An opinion essay

I can write an opinion essay exploring different aspects of viewpoints.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the results of an international student survey about reasons for going to university. Then answer the questions and discuss with a partner.

- Which three reasons are most important to you?
- What other reasons to go to university can you think of?
- Should students choose a degree based on what they are interested in or what is most likely to lead to getting a job? Explain your answer.

- 2 Read the task and the essay below. Do you agree with the author's opinion?

Some university degrees are more likely to lead to employment after graduation than others. In your opinion, should young people choose a university subject based on what will help them get a good job rather than what interests them? Write an opinion essay on this topic analysing the importance of motivation to study and career success.

Why do you want to go to university?

I want to go to university because:

I want to continue my education and development	58.4%
I am really keen on the subject I want to study	57.9%
this is necessary for my future career	53.7%
I need stimulation and intellectual challenge	52.7%
I want to learn some necessary life skills	50.1%
this will help me find a job (or a better job)	36.1%
I want to experience student life and just have fun	22.8%
my family expects me to continue my education	16.3%

- 3 Read the **WRITING FOCUS**. In the model essay, find:

- a sentence which states the writer's main opinion.
- a sentence that says which two aspects will be discussed.
- a sentence which acknowledges an opposing opinion and states why the writer disagrees with it.
- a sentence which expands the discussion by giving examples.
- a sentence which restates the writer's main opinion.
- a final comment.

Many school-leavers choose a degree based on what is likely to lead to a good job rather than what truly interests them. Personally, I worry this could lead to a negative experience at university and that it may be better to opt for a subject you find stimulating. To explain the reasons for my view, I will examine the issue in terms of motivation and career success.

When it comes to motivation, there is no doubt that four years is a long time to dedicate to a single subject. The high level of commitment required means that enthusiasm for your chosen subject is important. The outcome of struggling through a course you don't enjoy could be low final grades and a negative student experience.

It is also important to consider this issue with regard to career success. It is often the case that those who rise to the very top of their field get there because they are passionate about what they do. Of course, passion does not guarantee career success, but it is undeniably an important factor.

It is true that some subjects appear to offer limited career prospects, however, I am of the opinion that studying for any degree teaches valuable transferable skills. These include the ability to interpret information or communicate complex ideas, for example, and are undoubtedly appreciated by employers.

All in all, I think it is better to choose a university subject that interests you. I would prefer to learn useful skills and work towards high grades in a subject I have enjoyed studying rather than risking low grades in a subject that I do not find motivating.



- 4 Complete the **WRITING FOCUS** with the words and phrases in purple in the essay.

WRITING FOCUS

An opinion essay

Introduction

- Introduce the topic and state your main opinion.
- Say which two (or more) points of view or aspects will be discussed.

To explain the ¹ *reasons* for my view, I will examine the issue in ² _____ of ...

It is my intention to explore this issue from the viewpoint of ...

This essay will look at this question from the perspective of ...

Paragraphs 2 and 3

- Discuss different aspects of the issue and support the main opinion you stated in the introduction.
When it ³ _____ to ...
It is also important to consider this issue with ⁴ _____ to ...
Another important angle on/aspect of this issue is ...
- Expand the discussion by giving examples.

Paragraph 4

- Acknowledge an opposing opinion and say why you disagree with it.
It is ⁵ _____ that ..., however, I am of the ⁶ _____ that ...
While some people say ..., I ...
Some people do not agree and feel that ...

Conclusion

- Use a linking phrase to introduce a conclusion.
In conclusion, / To sum up, / All things considered, / ⁷ _____
- Restate your main opinion.
- Include a final comment.

5 Choose the correct option.

- 1 It is my *reason* / *intention* to explore this issue from the viewpoint of both employers and job-seekers.
- 2 This essay will look at this question from the *perspective* / *opinion* of an international student.
- 3 Another important *aspect* / *angle* on this issue is parental expectations.
- 4 *While* / *True* a few lucky people earn a living doing very little, most of us have to work hard to do well.
- 5 Some people do not *question* / *agree* and say it's better to study something you think will be easy.
- 6 All things *concluded* / *considered*, it is more important to find a good job.

6 Complete the questions with the unerlined words in the essay. Then answer them and compare your ideas with a partner.

- 1 Which school subjects do you find most _____ ?
- 2 Which school subjects require the highest _____ ?
- 3 Which valuable _____ could you learn from studying overseas?
- 4 Which university subjects offer limited _____ ?
- 5 Apart from going to university, what other options do _____ have?

- 7 Read the **LANGUAGE FOCUS**. Which structures are used in the essay?

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Expressing certainty and describing consequences

Use the following structures to express certainty and describe consequences in a formal way.

- **Expressing certainty**

Undeniably/Undoubtedly, ...

It's undeniable that/There is no doubt that

...Without (a) doubt, ...

- **Describing consequences**

The result/consequence/outcome of (such a decision/choice) could be that ...

As a result/consequence, ...

This could lead to/result in ...

8 Rewrite the statements. Use the words in brackets and the **LANGUAGE FOCUS**. Which of the statements do you agree with?

- 1 The average secondary student in my country is short of money. (undoubtedly)
- 2 Employers in my country value work experience as highly as qualifications. (without)
- 3 Young people can learn some very useful skills by working part time. (doubt)
- 4 Succeeding at school is more important than earning a bit of extra cash. (undeniable)
- 5 Having a part-time job teaches you to be more responsible. (undeniably)

9 Complete statements 1–4 with a word from the **LANGUAGE FOCUS**. Use each word only once.

- 1 Not gaining experience through a part-time job could _____ in a very bare CV.
- 2 The _____ of working part-time while you are at school is less time for homework.
- 3 Focusing on schoolwork only could _____ to better final grades.
- 4 _____ a result of having a part time job, students gain valuable work experience.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

10 Do the writing task. Use the ideas in the **WRITING FOCUS**, the **LANGUAGE FOCUS** and Exercises 8 and 9 to help you.

More and more young people do weekend or part-time jobs while at secondary school. Is this a good idea or should young people focus exclusively on their school work? Write an essay in which you analyse the consequences of having a part-time job on a person's education and their career prospects.

- Say in the introduction which two aspects will be discussed and state your opinion.
- Support your opinion with examples and acknowledge an opposing opinion.
- Add a conclusion.

5.1 Vocabulary 🔊 4.33

achieve a goal /ə,tʃi:v ə 'gəʊl/
 burn out /,bɜ:n 'aʊt/
 carry out /,kæri 'aʊt/
 commit to /kə'mɪt tə/
 conscientious /,kɒnʃi'enʃəs/
 conscientiousness /,kɒnʃi'entʃəsnəs/
 develop a habit /dɪ'veləp ə 'hæbɪt/
 do sth day in, day out /,du: ,sʌmθɪŋ
 'deɪ ɪn ,deɪ aʊt/
 employment possibilities /ɪm'plɔɪmənt
 ,pɒsə'bɪlɪtɪz/
 enter the job market /,entə ðə 'dʒɒb
 ,mɑ:kət/
 enthusiasm /ɪn'θju:ziæzəm/
 enthusiastic /ɪn'θju:zi'æstɪk/
 fulfil an objective /fʊl'fɪl ən
 əb'dʒektɪv/
 get down to /get daʊn tə/
 goal /gəʊl/
 improve your career prospects
 /ɪm'pru:v jə kə'riə ,prɒspekts/
 increase your output /ɪn,kri:s jər
 'aʊtpʊt/
 keep at /ki:p ət/
 knowledge /'nɒlɪdʒ/
 knowledgeable /'nɒlɪdʒəbəl/
 map sth out /mæp ,sʌmθɪŋ aʊt/
 objective /əb'dʒektɪv/
 outline /'aʊtlaɪn/
 overwork /,əʊvə'wɜ:k/
 overworked /,əʊvə'wɜ:kt/
 pick up a new skill /,pɪk ,ʌp ə nju:
 'skɪl/
 punctual /'pʌŋktʃuəl/
 punctuality /,pʌŋktʃu'æləti/
 purpose /'pɜ:pəs/
 purposeful /'pɜ:pəsful/
 put a lot of effort into /,pʊt ə lɒt əv
 'efət ,ɪntə/
 put sth off /,pʊt ,sʌmθɪŋ 'ɒf/
 put your heart into sth /,pʊt jə 'hɑ:t
 ,ɪntə ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 reach your full potential /,ri:tʃ jə fʊl
 pə'tenʃəl/
 set sth out /,set ,sʌmθɪŋ 'aʊt/
 single-minded /,sɪŋgəl 'maɪndɪd/
 single-mindedness
 /,sɪŋgəl 'maɪndɪdnəs/
 skilled /skɪld/
 speak your mind /,spi:k jə 'maɪnd/
 take sth up /,teɪk ,sʌmθɪŋ 'ʌp/
 think for yourself /,θɪŋk fə 'jɔ: 'self/
 time management /'taɪm
 ,mænɪdʒmənt/
 to-do list /tə 'du: ,lɪst/
 work to a deadline /,wɜ:k tə ə
 'dedlaɪn/
 work towards /,wɜ:k tə'wɔ:dz/

5.2 Grammar 🔊 4.34

answer the phone /'ɑ:nsə ðə ,fəʊn/
 interview /'ɪntəvju:/

references /'refrənsɪz/
 struggle to do sth /'strʌgl tə ,du:
 ,sʌmθɪŋ/
 weakness /'wi:kənəs/

5.3 Listening 🔊 4.35

alternative energy /ɔ:l,tɜ:nətɪv
 'enədʒi/
 applied science /ə'plaɪd 'saɪəns/
 be at risk /bi ət 'rɪsk/
 be constant/unchanged /bi
 'kɒnstənt/ʌn'tʃeɪndʒd/
 benefit /'benəfɪt/
 commute to work /kə'mju:t tə 'wɜ:k/
 concerned about /kən'sɜ:nd ə'baut/
 dental patient /,dentl 'peɪʃənt/
 do an apprenticeship /,du: ən
 ə'prentəsʃɪp/
 elderly /'eldəli/
 fulfilling /fʊl'fɪlɪŋ/
 gradual drop/decline in /,grædʒuəl
 'drɒp/dɪ'klaɪn ɪn/
 gradual rise/increase in /,grædʒuəl
 'raɪz/'ɪnkri:s ɪn/
 graduate /'grædʒuət/
 growing number /,grəʊɪŋ 'nʌmbə/
 handle sb /'hændl ,sʌmbədi/
 high-powered job /,haɪ 'paʊəd
 dʒɒb/
 lucrative /'lu:kɹətɪv/
 marked rise/increase in /,mɑ:kt 'raɪz/
 'ɪnkri:s ɪn/
 medical advances /,medɪkəl
 əd'vɑ:nsɪz/
 rapid drop/decline in /,ræpɪd 'drɒp/
 dɪ'klaɪn ɪn/
 recruit /rɪ'kru:t/
 relevant /'reləvənt/
 remain constant/unchanged /rɪ'meɪn
 'kɒnstənt/ʌn'tʃeɪndʒd/
 replace /rɪ'pleɪs/
 retail /rɪ'teɪl/
 secure /sɪ'kjʊə/
 sharp drop/decline in /,ʃɑ:p 'drɒp/
 dɪ'klaɪn ɪn/
 sharp rise/increase in /,ʃɑ:p 'raɪz/
 'ɪnkri:s ɪn/
 stable /'steɪbəl/
 steady drop/decline in /,stedɪ 'drɒp/
 dɪ'klaɪn ɪn/
 steady rise/increase in /,stedɪ 'raɪz/
 'ɪnkri:s ɪn/
 take sth over /,teɪk ,sʌmθɪŋ 'əʊvə/
 take sth apart /,teɪk ,sʌmθɪŋ ə'pɑ:t/
 tedious /'ti:diəs/
 trainee /,treɪ'ni:/

5.4 Reading 🔊 4.36

adaptable /ə'dæptəbəl/
 approval /ə'pru:vəl/
 at a rapid rate /ət ə ,ræpɪd 'reɪt/
 attendance in the office /ə'tendəns

ɪn ði ,ɒfɪs/
 be in charge /bi ɪn 'tʃɑ:dʒ/
 be suited to /bi 'su:tɪd tə/
 be wired differently /bi 'waɪəd
 ,dɪfrəntli/
 career guidance /kə'riə ,ɡaɪdəns/
 career path /kə'riə ,pɑ:θ/
 combine /kəm'baɪn/
 counsellor /'kaʊnsələ/
 curious about /'kjʊəriəs ə,baut/
 dismiss sb as /dɪs'mɪs ,sʌmbədi əz/
 diversity /daɪ'vɜ:səti/
 essential /ɪ'senʃəl/
 find your niche /,faɪnd jə 'ni:ʃ/
 flake /fleɪk/
 flexitime/flexible working
 /'fleksɪtaɪm/ 'fleksəbəl ,wɜ:kɪŋ/
 focus on your strengths /,fəʊkəs ɒn
 jə 'streŋθs/
 freelancer /'fri: ,la:nsə/
 have a vocation /,hæv ə vəʊ'keɪʃən/
 have one true calling /,hæv wʌn ,tru:
 'kɔ:lɪŋ/
 identify /aɪ'dentɪfaɪ/
 imaginative /ɪ'mædʒənətɪv/
 intersection /,ɪntə'sekʃən/
 jack of all trades, master of
 none /,dʒæk əv ɔ:l 'treɪdz ,mɑ:stər
 əv 'nʌn/
 job-sharing /'dʒɒb ,ʃeərɪŋ/
 keep your options open /,ki:p jɔ:r
 ,ɒpʃənz 'əʊpən/
 lack purpose /,læk 'pɜ:pəs/
 multipotentialite /
 'mʌltɪpə'tenʃrɪ'eləɪt/
 on a day-to-day basis /ɒn ə
 ,deɪ tə ,deɪ 'beɪsɪs/
 part-timer /,pa:t 'taɪmə/
 polymath /'pɒlɪməθ/
 quitter /'kwɪtə/
 range of interests /,reɪndʒ əv
 'ɪntrəsts/
 reflect the need /rɪ'flekt ðə 'ni:d/
 reinforce /,rɪ:ən'fɔ:s/
 rigid /'rɪdʒɪd/
 seemingly /'si:mɪŋgli/
 self-employment /self ɪm'plɔɪmənt/
 settle on /'setl ɒn/
 split the work /splɪt ðə 'wɜ:k/
 step out of your comfort zone /,step
 aʊt əv jə 'kʌmfət ,zəʊn/
 stick to /stɪk tə/
 thrive /θraɪv/
 unrelated /,ʌnrɪ'leɪtɪd/
 unwilling /ʌn'wɪlɪŋ/
 work flexibly /,wɜ:k 'fleksəbli/
 workforce /'wɜ:kfɔ:s/
 workplace /'wɜ:kpleɪs/

5.5 Grammar 🔊 4.37

abandon /ə'bændən/
 add /æd/
 admit /əd'mɪt/

apologise /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/
 assure /ə'ʃʊə/
 beg /beg/
 blame /bleɪm/
 brat /bræt/
 claim /kleɪm/
 congratulate /kən'grætʃəleɪt/
 convince /kən'vɪns/
 demand /dɪ'mɑːnd/
 deny /dɪ'naɪ/
 encourage /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/
 explain /ɪk'spleɪn/
 family counselling /ˌfæməli
 'kaʊnsəlɪŋ/
 financial support /ˌfə'nænʃəl sə'pɔːt/
 fund /fʌnd/
 household rules /ˌhaʊshəʊld 'ruːlz/
 insist /ɪn'sɪst/
 neglected /nɪ'glektɪd/
 object /əb'dʒekt/
 order /'ɔːdə/
 persuade /pə'sweɪd/
 reckon /'rekən/
 remind /rɪ'maɪnd/
 relax the rules /rɪ'læks ðə 'ruːlz/
 spoilt /spɔɪlt/
 sue sb /'sjuː ,sʌmbɒdi/
 suggest /sə'dʒest/
 take sb to court /ˌteɪk ,sʌmbɒdi tə
 'kɔːt/
 turn eighteen /ˌtɜːn eɪ'tiːn/
 urge /ɜːdʒ/
 voluntarily /'vɒləntərəli/
 warn /wɔːn/
 work things out /ˌwɜːk ˌθɪŋz 'aʊt/

5.6 Speaking 4.38

battery /'bætəri/
 break off /ˌbreɪk 'ɒf/
 fuel /'fjuːəl/
 have no clue /ˌhæv nəʊ 'kluː/
 it's worth a try /ɪts ,wɜːθ ə 'traɪ/
 lock /lɒk/
 on purpose /ɒn 'pɜːpəs/
 solution /sə'luːʃən/
 solve a problem /ˌsɒlv ə 'prɒbləm/
 spill /spɪl/
 switch sth on/off /ˌswɪtʃ ,sʌmθɪŋ
 'ɒn/'ɒf/

5.7 Use of English 4.39

acquire /ə'kwəɪə/
 be tied up with /bi ,taɪd 'ʌp wɪð/
 bring sb up /ˌbrɪŋ ,sʌmbɒdi 'ʌp/
 casual /'kæʒʊəl/
 clear-out /'kliərəʊt/
 come down to /ˌkʌm 'daʊn tə/
 come up against /ˌkʌm ʌp ə'genst/
 come up with /ˌkʌm 'ʌp wɪð/
 downpour /'daʊnpɔː/
 drop out of /ˌdrɒp 'aʊt əv/
 dropout /'drɒpɔʊt/
 entrepreneur /ˌɒntrəprə'nɜː/
 get on with /ˌget 'ɒn wɪð/
 get out of /ˌget 'aʊt əv/
 get round to /ˌget 'raʊnd tə/
 grow out of /ˌgrəʊ 'aʊt əv/
 keep up with /ˌkiːp 'ʌp wɪð/
 leave sb behind /ˌliːv ,sʌmbɒdi
 bɪ'haɪnd/
 letdown /'letdaʊn/

look down on /ˌlʊk 'daʊn ɒn/
 look up to /ˌlʊk 'ʌp tə/
 make up for /ˌmeɪk 'ʌp fə/
 off-putting /'ɒf,pʊtɪŋ/
 outset /'aʊtset/
 put up with /ˌpʊt 'ʌp wɪð/
 rejection /rɪ'dʒekʃən/
 run out of /ˌrʌn 'aʊt əv/
 run-down /ˌrʌn 'daʊn/
 stand up for /ˌstænd 'ʌp fə/
 take off /ˌteɪk 'ɒf/
 upbringing /'ʌp,briŋɪŋ/
 warm-up /'wɔːm ʌp/

5.8 Writing 4.40

acknowledge /ə'knɒlɪdʒ/
 appreciated /ə'priːʃɪeɪtɪd/
 examine/explore an issue /ɪg,zæmɪn/
 ɪk,splɔːr ən 'ɪʃuː/
 in terms of /ɪn 'tɜːmz əv/
 intention /ɪn'tenʃən/
 lead to /'liːd tə/
 level of commitment /ˌlevəl əv
 kə'mɪtmənt/
 limited /'lɪmɪtɪd/
 outcome /'aʊtkʌm/
 question /'kwɛstʃən/
 school-leaver /ˌskuːl 'liːvə/
 stimulating /'stɪmjəleɪtɪŋ/
 survey /'sɜːveɪ/
 transferable skills /træns,fɜːrəbəl
 'skɪlz/
 undeniably /ˌʌndɪ'næɪəbli/
 viewpoint /'vjuːpɔɪnt/
 with regard to /wɪð rɪ'ɡɑːd tə/

MY WORD LIST

EMPLOYMENT

DESCRIBING CHANGE

OTHER

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(carry find improve put reach speak thrive)

- I think Chris will need to move to a bigger company if he's going to reach his full potential.
 - Robots are being used increasingly to carry out simple, repetitive tasks.
 - If you can respond to an email quickly, then do it right away rather than put/putting it off until later.
 - He took a short project management course to try and improve his career prospects.
 - Sometimes you have to be diplomatic, but occasionally you need to reach your mind.
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.
- We want to see that candidates are enthusiastic (ENTHUSIASM) about the wildlife.
 - She was clearly knowledgeable (KNOWLEDGE) about all aspects of video production.
 - A lot of work is done by freelancers (FREELANCE) who work on specific projects.
 - In an interview, you should try and focus on your strong (STRONG).
 - In recent years, there's been a marked/remarkable (MARK) increase in jobs related to social media.
- 3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use Reported Speech.
- 'You should take a few days off,' the manager said.
The manager said that I should take a few days off.
 - 'I've been working here for ten years,' Olivia told them.
Olivia said that she had been working there for ten years.
 - 'What's your home address?' the man asked.
The man asked him what his home address was/for his home.
 - 'When are you going to look for a permanent post?' my parents keep asking me.
My parents keep asking me when I was going to look for a permanent post.
 - 'Send a copy of your CV to head office,' the store manager told me.
The store manager told me to send a copy of my CV/that I should send a copy of my CV to head office.
- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use up to five words in each gap and make any changes necessary.
- The other day my mum's boss (refuse/give/she) refused to give her a pay rise.
 - Our new interpreter (suggest/make/few/change) suggested making a few changes in the speech so that it would sound more natural.
 - The management (thank/team/work) thanked the team for working so hard.
 - My team leader (convince/I/sign up) convinced me to sign up for a training course.
 - Last month my dad (offer/show/I/class) offered to show my class around different departments in his company.

USE OF ENGLISH

- 5 Read the text. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

When I left school, I didn't have a(n) ¹ what I wanted to do as a career. I was quite good at Science, so I decided to study Physics at university. I knew it was the wrong choice though right from the ². I enjoyed the social side of university and I ³ the other students on my course, but I really struggled with the coursework. I tried to be disciplined and work hard, but it didn't make any ⁴. Physics just wasn't my thing. Soon my tutor noticed that I wasn't ⁵ my classmates and called me in for a chat. She was really understanding. I explained that I was thinking about ⁶ university, but she suggested I look at other options first. She ⁷ the idea that I could sit in on lectures in different subjects to see if any of them might suit me better. I went to some Chemistry and Biology lectures, which didn't really spark my interest, but then I went along to an Engineering class and realised I'd found my ⁸. I switched courses and I've never looked back!

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 A clue | B idea |
| C thought | D knowledge |
| 2 A clear-out | B downturn |
| C letdown | D outset |
| 3 A got out of | B came up with |
| C got on with | D looked down on |
| 4 A change | B difference |
| C solution | D progress |
| 5 A coming up against | B putting up with |
| C keeping up with | D getting round to |
| 6 A standing up for | B running out of |
| C growing out of | D dropping out of |
| 7 A made up for | B came up with |
| C came up against | D looked up to |
| 8 A hole | B niche |
| C corner | D focus |
- 6 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to five words in each gap, but do not change the word in capitals.
- 'A scholarship in Brussels?! Fantastic! Well done, Amanda!' Robert said. **CONGRATULATED**
Robert congratulated Amanda/her on getting a scholarship in Brussels.
 - 'I wouldn't apply for that job', Marion told me. **ADVISED**
Marion advised me not to apply for that job.
 - 'Did you practise to become a fitness instructor?', she asked. **HAD**
She asked me if she had practised to become a fitness instructor.
 - Choosing a career is undeniably one of the most challenging decisions you face in life. **DOUBT**
Choosing a career is without a doubt one of the most challenging decisions you face in life.

READING

7 Read the text. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

The Human Scarecrow

Being told to bring a deckchair and a good book for the first day in a new job might not be the kind of advice you'd expect to receive from your new boss, but that's exactly the advice Jamie Fox was given when he took up a post to help out a local farmer.



Fox, aged twenty-two, a recent music graduate from Bangor University, uses a range of musical instruments to scare off partridges that have been destroying crops because ordinary scarecrows don't quite seem up to the job. Despite working from 7:30 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. for a minimum wage, Fox, who is saving up to finance a trip next year to New Zealand, is quite content with his unique position. Indeed, he'd much rather be out in the open air reading and playing instruments, he says, and time passes much quicker than sitting at home doing nothing and claiming unemployment benefit.

Fox can do anything he likes to pass the time. As well as playing musical instruments and reading to relieve the monotony, other perks of the job include doing Sudoku puzzles, observing the wildlife and daydreaming. He does, however, need to get out of the comfort of his chair occasionally to scare the partridges off the fields. And although the work is far from lucrative, some of Jamie's friends, including those with more generously paid jobs, are reportedly envious of his position and the fact that he spends the best part of the day doing largely as he pleases.

His employer, farmer William Youngs, claims that he was forced to take someone on as a human scarecrow after partridges didn't respond to more traditional methods of frightening them away. Since losing thirty acres worth of crops to the birds at a cost of thousands of pounds, Youngs has tried a variety of approaches to protect his livelihood. Now, however, he is happy with the solution and claims that Jamie's presence in the fields is proving very effective and making a real difference.

- 1 Jamie Fox's plans include
 - A joining a band.
 - B becoming a farmer.
 - C travelling abroad.
 - D earning more money.
- 2 Jamie Fox is happy with his job because
 - A he never gets bored.
 - B he uses his educational background.
 - C he has plenty of free time during the day.
 - D he thinks it is better than being out of work.
- 3 What is true about Jamie's job?
 - A He doesn't need to move.
 - B He has replaced another person.
 - C He gets uncomfortable.
 - D He makes a lot of noise.
- 4 Jamie's friends are envious because of
 - A the hours he works.
 - B the nature of his work.
 - C the money he earns.
 - D the variety of his tasks.
- 5 Mr Youngs decided to employ Jamie because
 - A he can pay him a low wage.
 - B he has been using human scarecrows for a long time.
 - C he had lost lots of crops previously.
 - D he wants to help with the problem of unemployment.

SPEAKING

8 Ask and answer the questions.

- 1 What types of part-time jobs are offered to teens in your area?
- 2 Would you like to set up your own business? Why?/Why not?
- 3 What can a young person do to be successful on the job market?
- 4 Is it better to choose a job that you like doing or one which has a good salary?
- 5 Some famous people, like footballers, earn very high salaries. Is this a good thing? Why?/Why not?

WRITING

9 Read this announcement on an international students' website and write an article in reply.

Gap year students, we want articles!

- Are you considering taking a year off before university or have you already done this?
- Write an article for our magazine about your plans for a gap year or your experiences. How can a gap year help or hinder your education?
- The best articles will be published in the next edition.

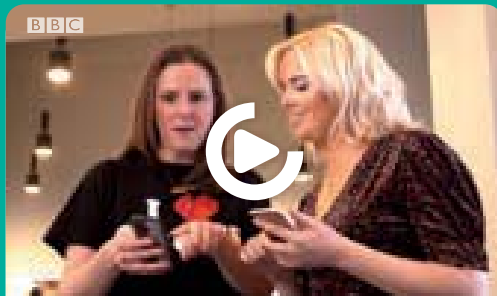
6

A matter of fact

Never let the truth get in the way of a good story.

Mark Twain

BBC



IS SOCIAL MEDIA KILLING CREATIVITY?

25 Watch the BBC video.
For the worksheet, go to page 142.

6.1

VOCABULARY

The media • truth and falsehood • adjective–noun collocations • adverbs

I can talk about the media and fake news.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Then write about your media habits. Use the sentences or your own ideas.
(clips media podcasts post Twitter)
 1 I get news from **news apps/social** media posts/local papers. 2 If I see something interesting, I 'like'/share/ post /retweet it.
 3 I like to read **news blogs/celebrity** podcasts feeds/editorials.
 4 I like to watch **TV drama series/online video** clips /reality TV.
 5 I like to listen to podcasts /the radio/music streaming services.
- SPEAKING** Compare your sentences in Exercise 1. Discuss how similar/different your habits are to your partner's.



FAKE NEWS

What is it?

Completely made-up stories presented as news and made to go viral, often for politically motivated reasons or commercial gain. Fake news stories are 70 percent more likely to be retweeted because they are usually more eye-catching than the truth. Some people **spread fake news** deliberately while others do it without realising. The Internet is awash with information that cannot be trusted. The smartphone generation are bombarded with such information practically on a daily basis and they're growing up alarmingly misinformed.

How do you know what you're reading is accurate?

Don't **take a story at face value** – step back and ask yourself these questions:

- Does the story come from a reputable source? Has this website always shown a clear commitment to newsworthy stories based on fact? Alternatively, is this an article put out knowingly by an organisation that **has an agenda** – an agenda to **manipulate the media** because of a political or commercial motive?
- Does the photo or video look normal? If it looks slightly odd, it may have been **tampered with** to **distort the truth** and **mislead people** into believing something that never actually happened.

- 3 **SPEAKING** Look at the three news headlines and discuss which one you think is true. Then read the article and check your ideas.

1 **American woman adopts alien baby!**

SPACE BABY SURVIVES UFO CRASH

'I couldn't resist its big sad eyes,' says woman from Ohio.

2 **5 million euros lottery winner leaves winnings on bus**

Joe Smith appeals to public: 'I was going to buy my mum a new house.'

3 **WOMAN BURST INTO FLAMES DURING AN OPERATION!**

Spark ignites cleaning solution and patient becomes ball of fire.

- 4 Read the article again and answer the questions.

- 1 Why is fake news usually created?
- 2 How can we check the reliability of a news source?
- 3 In what way can images suggest that news is fake?
- 4 What do your instincts have to do with spotting fake news?

- 5 **SPEAKING** Did any information in the article surprise you? What do you do to make sure that what you are reading is true?

- *Is this story likely to be true?* There are different ways in which a story can be inaccurate or misleading. Start from your **gut feeling**, **trust your instincts** – does it *sound* believable? American woman adopts alien baby is clearly fake news. But how about the lottery winner? Would he really carry 5 million euros in cash on a bus? Then there's the story of a person bursting into flames. Unbelievable, right? Not exactly – you can **check the accuracy** of this story by searching online where you find out that fires in operating theatres are **remarkably** common! In fact, the third story is the only true story.

What can you do?

Social media giants have a responsibility to tackle the problem of fake news, but in an era when anyone with an Internet connection can publish stories freely and without any checks, individuals need to learn how to **double-check facts** and **evaluate sources**. In other words, it is essential to read information **critically**: you should question facts and examine arguments **closely**, instead of believing everything you read.

WORD STORE 6A Truth and falsehood

- 6 **3.1** Complete WORD STORE 6A with the verbs in red in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 7 Complete the questions with one word in each gap. Then answer the questions according to the information in the text.
- 1 Do people always spread _____ news on purpose?
 - 2 Can you trust your _____ when deciding whether a story is true?
 - 3 What motivates organisations who have an _____ to manipulate the _____?
 - 4 What things are sometimes tampered _____ to mislead _____?
 - 5 Where can you check the _____ of a story?
 - 6 Who is responsible for identifying people who distort the _____?
 - 7 Why should people learn how to double-check _____ and evaluate _____?

WORD STORE 6B Adjective-noun collocations

- 8 **3.2** Complete WORD STORE 6B with the underlined phrases in the text in the correct form. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 9 Are the pairs of collocations in WORD STORE 6B similar or different in meaning? Use a dictionary to check your answers.
- 10 Complete the sentences with an appropriate word in WORD STORE 6B. Are the sentences true for you?
- 1 I hate being bombarded with so much useless _____ on a daily _____.
 - 2 I never take anything I read at face value unless it is from a reputable _____.
 - 3 I have a gut _____ that print-based media will disappear within ten years.
 - 4 I would never make a long-term _____ to any political organisation.
 - 5 Organisations should be heavily fined if they spread fake news for commercial _____.

WORD STORE 6C Adverbs

- 11 **3.3** Complete WORD STORE 6C with the highlighted adverbs in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 12 Rewrite each sentence with the correct adverb made from the adjective in brackets.
- 1 The press and social media are controlled. (close)
 - 2 The number of fake news stories is high. (alarming)
 - 3 News organisations never spread fake news. (deliberate)
 - 4 Students are taught to think about everything they read. (critical)
 - 5 No government minister ever misinforms the public. (knowing)
 - 6 Most people are happy, despite the economic situation. (remarkable)
- 13 **SPEAKING** Which of the situations described in Exercise 12 would you like/put up with/not like in a society?

6.2

GRAMMAR

Conditional clauses – alternatives to *if*

*I can make conditional sentences using **if, unless, imagine, provided, suppose and inversion.***

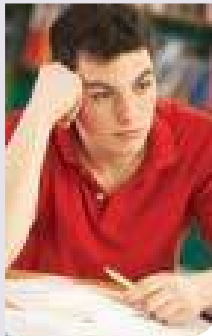
- SPEAKING** 'The dog ate my homework' is a typical excuse used by students. Discuss and list other excuses.
- Read the story. What excuse did the students use for missing their exam? What happened next?

The Exam Question

Imagine you were taking an important exam on Monday, what would you do the weekend before? You almost certainly wouldn't do what two Chemistry students did in Kansas, Missouri. They went to a different city and partied all weekend. They had a great time, but they knew that **unless they got back in time for the exam**, they wouldn't be able to take it. So they drove through the night and got back to college in the early hours of Monday morning. Sadly for them, they overslept and missed the exam.

When they found their professor afterwards, they decided to invent a story. They told her that they would have got back for the exam **had they not had a flat tyre**.

The professor thought about this for a moment and then agreed that, **provided they arrived before 9 a.m.**, they could take the exam the next day. She placed them in separate rooms and gave them the exam paper. The first question was simple and worth five points. But they were unprepared for the question on the next page: **(Ninety-five points) Which tyre?**



- Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Then rewrite the conditional clauses in blue in the story using *if*.

GRAMMAR FOCUS G26

Conditional clauses – alternatives to *if*

- You use **unless** to mean 'if not' with the sense 'except if'.
*I wouldn't lie to you **unless it was necessary**.*
(= ... if it wasn't necessary.)
- You use **imagine** or **suppose/supposing** to ask questions.
***Imagine you were getting married**, how would you feel?*
(= If you were getting married, ...)
- You use **provided/providing** to create a condition.
*I'll lend you €10 **provided you pay me back** tomorrow.*
(= if you pay me back ...)
- You can use **inversion** in formal contexts – mostly with the auxiliary verbs *were, had* or *should*.

Had they followed my instructions, they wouldn't have got lost. (= If they had followed ...)

Note: In inversion, you do not contract negative forms.

Had they not called, we wouldn't have known (...).

NOT ~~Hadn't they called~~ ...

- Rewrite these conditional sentences using **unless**. Which sentences are true for you?

- I'll fail all my exams if I don't revise properly.
*I'll fail all my exams **unless I revise properly**.*
- I can't do my homework if I don't have a laptop.
- I wouldn't study English if I didn't need it to get a job.
- My parents won't let me go out if I haven't finished my homework.
- I'd never get to school on time if my mum didn't wake me up every morning.
- I can't understand American films if I don't watch them with subtitles.

- USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to six words including the word in capitals. Are any of the sentences true for you?

- I won't go out this evening if I get too much homework. **PROVIDED**
I might go out this evening _____ too much homework.
- If my mum hadn't reminded me, I would've forgotten her birthday. **NOT**
Had _____ me, I would've forgotten her birthday.
- I'd never eat fast food unless I was absolutely starving. **WASN'T**
If _____, I'd never eat fast food.
- I'd have watched *Mr Bean* if I'd known it was on TV last night. **WAS**
Had _____ on TV last night, I'd have watched it.
- I don't watch football unless my team are playing. **IF**
I don't watch football _____.
- If I wasn't so tired, I'd go out this evening. **NOT**
Were _____, I'd go out this evening.
- If I should ever get married, I'd want a huge party. **EVER**
Should _____, I'd want a huge party.

- Use ideas 1–6 to write conditional questions. Begin each question with *Imagine ...* or *Suppose ...* and complete it with your own ideas.

- You can't live anywhere in the world.
Imagine/Suppose you could live anywhere in the world, where would you live?
- You didn't find 100 euros in the street yesterday.
- You're not able to travel back in time.
- You don't have to live without technology.
- You didn't see an old man steal something from a shop last week.
- You can't have three wishes.

- SPEAKING** Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 6.

FOCUS VLOG G27 About time travel

G27 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 143.

6.3

LISTENING

Note completion

I can identify the main points of a discussion about a street artist.

- 1 SPEAKING** Describe these two murals by controversial British artist Banksy. Also look at *Girl with Balloon* on page 57. Discuss what you think they mean.
- 2** **3.4** Listen to a news report about Banksy. Tick the information if it has been confirmed. If not, put a question mark.

Banksy bio

- Real name is Robin Gunningham. ☐
- Was born in Bristol in 1973. ☐
- Trained to be a butcher. ☐
- Became famous in the 1990s. ☐
- Has never been arrested. ☐
- Authenticates his work on his website. ☐
- Is a multi-millionaire. ☐

- 3** Add *pro-* or *anti-* to the following words to describe whether you think Banksy is for or against these things.
 - _____anonymity
 - _____authority
 - _____war
 - _____animal rights
 - _____peaceful protest
 - _____fairness
 - _____animal cruelty
 - _____equality
- 4** **3.5** Listen to two people talking about Banksy and check your ideas in Exercise 3.

EXAM FOCUS Note completion

- 5** **3.5** Listen again and complete sentences 1–6 with a word or a short phrase.
 - Robert is doing a school assignment on _____ issues in art.
 - Alice says that Banksy uses graffiti to express his views on _____.
 - Alice first thought that Banksy was born in _____.
 - Banksy has remained anonymous thanks to his friends' commitment and _____.
 - He substituted paintbrushes with stencils and spray cans so that he could paint more _____.
 - Banksy's artwork on a Welsh garage can be seen as a comment on _____ issues.

WORD STORE 6D Collocations

- 6** **3.6** Complete WORD STORE 6D with the words in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.



- 7 SPEAKING** Complete the statements with the appropriate noun in WORD STORE 6D. Then discuss whether you agree or disagree with them. Give reasons for your answers.
 - Committing an _____ is always wrong.
 - If you're a street artist, it's a good idea to remain _____.
 - Teenagers don't do enough to protect their _____ online.
 - Street art can be an effective way of raising _____ and making a _____.
 - Only experts can understand the underlying _____ in modern art.
 - Nobody has strong _____ about anything anymore.

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 8** **3.7** Listen and put these words into the correct column A, B or C depending on the stress.

alteration authority ceremony
commentator inauthentic photographer
uncomfortable underlying vandalism

A ■ ■ ■ ■	B ■ ■ ■ ■	C ■ ■ ■ ■
_____	_____	<u>alteration</u>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

- 9** **3.8** Listen, check and repeat.

Note completion

*I can recognise inferred meaning in a structured text.***1 SPEAKING** Discuss the questions.

- 1 When was the last time you took a selfie and why did you take it?
- 2 Which of your friends posts the most interesting selfies?
- 3 Why do you think selfies are so popular?

2 Choose the correct option. Then read the text and check your ideas.

- 1 The first teenage selfie was taken in 1839 / 1914 / 2006.
- 2 One in three / five / ten photos taken by eighteen to twenty-four-year-olds is a selfie.
- 3 The word 'selfie' originated in Russia / Australia / New York.
- 4 Taking selfies occasionally causes memory / mental health / motivational problems.

EXAM FOCUS Note completion**3 Read the article again. Complete the sentences with up to five words from the article in the correct form.**

- 1 Anybody who _____ media is also likely to be a selfie-taker, and this doesn't just mean young people.
- 2 Although Britney Spears and Paris Hilton claim to have taken the first selfie ever, the real pioneer was 19th century photographer Robert Cornelius, whose _____ was taken in 1839.
- 3 The first teenager to take a selfie was a young Russian princess who managed to do it by _____ in a mirror.
- 4 The selfie as we know it today was first taken by a group of photographers using a _____ that it required two men to hold it.
- 5 Since the _____ in the early 2000s, taking selfies has become much easier and one in three photos taken by a young person has been a selfie.
- 6 The term 'selfie' comes out of the Australian _____ adding -ie to the end of words.
- 7 'Selfitis' is a term for people who _____ and post them on social media in order to feel happier or more accepted.
- 8 A medical journal has reported that the use of airbrushing apps could make some people see _____ their appearance, with the result that many seek surgery to look more like their filtered photos.

4 3.10 Complete the phrases with the verbs in blue in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 1 become mainstream = be ordinary or normal
- 2 _____ back to = begin at a time in the past
- 3 _____ popularity = become more popular
- 4 _____ a habit of = do sth regularly
- 5 _____ a claim = state that sth is true
- 6 _____ = try to do
- 7 _____ sth off = get rid of
- 8 _____ = cause sth to happen

5 Complete the questions with one word in each gap. Then answer the questions according to the information in the text.

- 1 When did smartphones become _____ ?
- 2 Who made the _____ that they had invented the selfie?
- 3 When does the oldest selfie date back _____ and how was it taken?
- 4 What do Australians have a habit _____ adding to the end of words?
- 5 What might some people be _____ by taking a lot of selfies?
- 6 What can taking lots of selfies help you to shake _____ ?
- 7 What kind of apps are gaining _____ and why?
- 8 What does BDD mean and what can _____ it?

WORD STORE 6E Photography**6 3.11** Complete WORD STORE 6E with the words in the box. Then listen and repeat.**7 SPEAKING** There is one word missing in each question. Rewrite the questions with an appropriate word in WORD STORE 6E. Then ask and answer the questions.

- 1 When was the last time you took a _____ on your smartphone?
When was the last time you took a snap on your smartphone?
- 2 How do you usually _____ for selfies – is it a smile, duck-face or wink?
- 3 What is the funniest _____ you have captured on your phone?
- 4 Do you sometimes put your finger in front of the _____ by mistake?
- 5 What do you do with photos that are not focus?
- 6 Have you ever _____ images of yourself to try and improve them?
- 7 How often do you _____ images to e.g. change their shape?
- 8 When was the last time you _____ in on something far away when taking a photo?
- 9 Think of your favourite photo and how it was taken. Was it only one, or many?

A short history of the selfie

3.9

They're everywhere – people posing with their phones held out in front of them or on a selfie-stick. And it's not just young people – social media users of all ages take selfies, including space-walking astronauts and the Pope.

So when did this selfie mania begin? Most people would guess that it was around the beginning of this century or perhaps a bit later when smartphones became mainstream. But most people would be wrong, just as

Britney Spears and Paris Hilton were wrong when they declared on Twitter in 2017 that they had invented the selfie eleven years previously. In fact, they were around 167 years too late to make that claim. The oldest existing selfie dates back to 1839 when photographer Robert Cornelius took a self-portrait photograph of himself. To achieve this, he had to uncover the lens, run to his place and pose in the same position for up to fifteen minutes and then run back to cover the lens again. Cornelius couldn't take a dozen shots and choose the best

one – his selfie had to be just one photo. Half a century later, in 1914, thirteen-year-old Grand Duchess Anastasia Nikolaevna of Russia took a picture of herself in a mirror and became the first teenager to take a selfie.

The first image taken in the same way as today, with the photographer holding the camera at arm's length, was in December 1920. The image shows five photographers standing on the roof of their studio in New York. The men were the main photographers of the Byron Company, a photographic studio founded in Manhattan in 1892 and still in business today. An image taken by another man shows that the camera was so heavy in those days that it took two of the photographers to hold it up. Thanks to innovations and improvements in cameras, a selfie gradually became easier to take, but it was the smartphone coming out in the early 2000s that led to selfie dominance. Surveys have shown that every third photo taken by those aged eighteen to twenty-four is a selfie.

And what about the origin of the word itself? It is thought to come from Australia where people have a habit of putting -ie on the end of words – barbie for barbecue, postie for postal worker and even Aussie for Australian. In 2002, an Australian man took a photo of an injury to his lip and put it up on a public forum to ask for advice on how to treat it. He referred to the photo as a selfie, and the term was born. Selfie became Oxford Dictionaries' word of the year in 2013.

So, why do we take so many photos of ourselves? A 2017 study into 'selfitis', as the obsessive taking of selfies has been called, found a range of motivations, from seeking to feel more part of a group to shaking off depressive thoughts and – of course – capturing a memorable moment. Since we live so much of our lives online, there is pressure to present good quality images, and so it is no surprise that airbrushing apps that enable people to retouch images and present an idealised version of themselves are gaining popularity.

For the most part, this is harmless fun, normal behaviour in the age of social media. But a recent report in a medical journal suggested that filtered images 'blurring the line of reality and fantasy' could be triggering body dysmorphic disorder. BDD, as it is known, is a mental health condition where people imagine defects in their appearance. Nowadays it's not unusual for young people to ask for plastic surgery, not to look more like their favourite celebrity, but to look like their own filtered image. In a 2018 report on facial plastic surgery, 55 percent of surgeons said patients' motivation was to look better in selfies, up from just 13 percent in 2016.

Whatever your motivation, once you're in the selfie habit, it's hard to stop. So tousle your hair, extend your arm, check the lighting is right, zoom in, smile/duck-face/wink, and snap a selfie. It's blurred. Take another snap. Once more. Delete the ugly ones and post the cutest shot. Wait for the likes!



6.5

GRAMMAR

Mixed conditionals

I can use mixed conditionals to talk about hypothetical situations in the past or present.

- 1 Read the text and find out what these two British actors think about their screen characters.

ACTORS LIKE THEIR SCREEN CHARACTERS, OR DO THEY?



Daniel Radcliffe

Daniel Radcliffe doesn't mind being called Harry Potter. *If he hadn't played the part of Harry Potter, he wouldn't be one of the richest young stars in cinema today.* But there have been times when his fame has been difficult for him to deal with. *If he was less famous, he would have gone out dancing with his friends more,* but sadly, he's never had that freedom.

Robert Pattinson didn't like the character he played in the *Twilight* series. He says that *if Edward Cullen wasn't a fictional character, he would have been a troubled young man.* Pattinson understands that *he wouldn't be so mega-famous if he hadn't played the role of Edward Cullen,* but he says it's really weird being famous for a character he doesn't like.



Robert Pattinson

- 2 Read the text again and match the real situations with the real results or consequences.

Situations

- Radcliffe played Harry Potter.
- Radcliffe is very famous.
- Edward Cullen is fictional.
- Pattinson played Edward Cullen.

Results

- He didn't go out dancing much.
- He is very famous.
- He is very rich.
- He wasn't a troubled young man.

- 3 Match the four conditional sentences in blue in the text with the four real situations and results in Exercise 2.

- 4 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS and complete the gaps with *past* or *present*.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 28

Mixed conditionals

You use a **mixed conditional** to describe certain imaginary situations and their imaginary results. There are two main types:

- imaginary ¹**present** condition → imaginary ² _____ result
If + Past Simple, would/wouldn't have + Past Participle
*If he **was** less famous, he **would have gone out** dancing with his friends more.*
- imaginary ³ _____ condition → imaginary ⁴ _____ result
If + Past Perfect, would/wouldn't + verb
*If he **hadn't played** the part of Harry Potter, he **wouldn't be** one of the richest young stars in cinema today.*

Note: As well as *would*, you can also use *could*, *might* and *should* in conditional sentences.

- 5 For each sentence, tick the explanations (a, b or both) that are correct.

- If I'd watched the *Twilight* films, I'd know who Edward Cullen was.
 a I didn't watch the *Twilight* films. ☐
 b I know who Edward Cullen is. ☐
- If I was interested in Harry Potter, I'd have read the books.
 a I'm not interested in Harry Potter. ☐
 b I haven't read any of the books. ☐
- If Robert Pattinson was ugly, I might not have watched *Twilight*.
 a Robert Pattinson is handsome. ☐
 b I watched *Twilight*. ☐
- Pattinson and Radcliffe wouldn't be enjoying so much success if they hadn't worked hard on these roles.
 a They aren't enjoying success. ☐
 b They worked hard on these roles. ☐

- 6 Compare your answers in Exercise 5 and correct the incorrect explanations.

- 7 Use the words in brackets to write mixed conditional sentences for each situation 1–6. Which sentences are true for you?

- It's cold today so you came to school by bus. (If ...)
If it wasn't cold today, I wouldn't have come to school by bus.
- You're reading this book because your friend recommended it. (I ...)
- You don't like football so you didn't watch the game last night. (If ...)
- You passed all your exams because you're a good student. (I ...)
- You didn't have a big breakfast so you're hungry now. (If ...)
- You're learning how to drive because your parents paid for some lessons. (I ...)

- 8 Complete the sentences to make them true for you. Compare with a partner.

- If I didn't have a smartphone, (imaginary past result) _____
- If antibiotics hadn't been invented, (imaginary present result) _____
- If I had been born in the USA, (imaginary present result) _____
- If I could fly, (imaginary past result) _____
- If I was a better student, (imaginary past result) _____
- If my dad hadn't woken me up this morning, (imaginary present result) _____
- If my parents were famous actors, (imaginary past result) _____

6.6

SPEAKING

Discussing ethical issues

I can express opinions in discussions on social issues and add comments using adverbials.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss which of these ways of highlighting ethical issues you think are the most effective and why.

handing out leaflets posts on social media
the involvement of public figures
protest marches petitions

- 2 **SPEAKING** Imagine you are organising a 'Say no to fur' campaign at school and need to choose a poster to advertise it. Look at posters 1 and 2 and do the task.

- Choose the poster which you think is more effective and support your choice with reasons.
- Explain why you have rejected the other poster.

- 3 **3.12** Listen to three extracts from an interview with an anti-fur campaigner. For each extract, choose the question the campaigner is answering.

Extract 1

- a Do awareness-raising campaigns and protests really make a difference and if so, how?
b Do fashion designers still like using fur and if so, how important is it to stop the fur trade?

Extract 2

- c Why do you think fur is still popular with fashion designers and celebrities?
d What are the benefits of getting public figures involved in anti-fur protests?

Extract 3

- e Apart from avoiding fur products, what else could members of the public do to help?
f If you could send any message to people who wear fur, what would it be?

- 4 **3.12** Complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with the words in the box. Then listen again and check.

(argued emphasise firmly obvious particularly)

SPEAKING FOCUS

Beginning your answer

I ¹ firmly believe/I'm not convinced they do, because ...

One ² _____ /clear advantage/disadvantage is that ... I

think I'd ³ _____ /explain that/how ...

It's absolutely vital/quite important I think, because ...

As well as (avoiding fur products), other (things that can help) include ...

I think the main/one/a significant reason is that ...

Expressing opinions

It could be ⁴ _____ that ...

I don't feel ⁵ _____ strongly about ...

I don't have a strong opinion about ...

I suppose you could say that ...

A



B



- 5 Match questions a–f in Exercise 3 with appropriate ways to begin answers in the SPEAKING FOCUS.

- 6 Read the extracts from the interview and complete REMEMBER THIS with the words in orange.

- a **Sadly**, fur seems to be fashionable again these days ...
b **Obviously**, protesting is a good way to promote awareness ...
c **Frankly**, I find some of the pictures extremely difficult to look at.

REMEMBER THIS

You can use comment adverbials to add your opinion to statements you make.

- You use *clearly*/¹ _____ to introduce something that can easily be noticed or understood.
- You use *to be honest*/² _____ to show that you are saying what you really think about something.
- You use *regrettably*/³ _____ to show you wish something was not true.

- 7 **SPEAKING** You are going to ask and answer the questions below. Follow the instructions.

- Decide who is Student A and who is Student B.
- In your notebook, make notes on how you will answer the questions.
- Use the SPEAKING FOCUS and REMEMBER THIS to help you.
- Ask and answer the questions.

Student A: Ask Student B the questions below.

- 1 How important is it to stop the practice of testing cosmetics on animals?
2 If you could send any message to the governments of countries that still test cosmetics on animals, what would it be?

Student B: Ask Student A the questions below.

- 1 Why do you think hunting animals for sport is still popular with certain groups and individuals?
2 How important is it to stop the practice of hunting animals for sport?

A DAY IN THE LIFE OF A NEWS ANCHOR

I'm a **news anchor** on the **morning show** of a local **TV station**. The question I get asked most is what time I get up. 3 a.m.! And I'm in hair and **make-up** at 4:30. I wear block colours – no stripes or frills, and no green. We sometimes use **green screens** so that artificial backgrounds can be superimposed. So if you wear a green top, it doesn't show up against a green **background** and you appear as a floating head and a pair of arms and legs – very **ill-advised** and not a good look!

We go live at 6 a.m., and before that I have to read up on the day's **news stories**. I start by getting an **overview** of the stories I'll be reporting. We're a local **news station**, so we don't report on **foreign affairs**.

You can't rehearse – you have to deal with **breaking news** as it comes in, but I have a lot of **backup**. A **fact-checker** has made sure the details

of the story are accurate, a **copy editor** makes sure stories are written in a way that I'd actually say them and when I'm live on air if I become **tongue-tied** or mess up, I have the director in my ear.

On morning TV, we focus on **heartwarming** stories. It's the morning and people are eating breakfast – I don't want to give a **blow-by-blow** account of some hideous crime. Having said that, it's our job to report anything newsworthy.

It's a **four-hour** programme with several **three-minute commercial breaks** – that's when I dash to the **bathroom**, ask about any breaking news and read up on the next interview.

I work nonstop for four hours, but how many jobs finish before midday? It means I can spend time with my **four-year-old** twins. I go to bed at the same time as they do!

- 1 Decide whether you think the following statements are true (T) or false (F). Then read the article to check your ideas.

- 1 A news anchor can't wear green. ☐
- 2 A news anchor can't rehearse the stories. ☐
- 3 A news anchor can't hear the director while she/he is on-air. ☐
- 4 A news anchor can't report on crime at breakfast time. ☐
- 5 A news anchor can't go to the toilet for four hours. ☐

- 2 **SPEAKING** Would you like to be a news anchor or work in television? Why/Why not?

- 3 Match five compound adjectives and nouns in blue in the article with the definitions.

- 1 likely to have a bad effect = _____
- 2 a short description including the main ideas = _____
- 3 unable to speak because of nerves or embarrassment = _____
- 4 information about a news event that is still happening = _____
- 5 extremely detailed = _____

- 4 Check whether you understand the meaning of all the other compound nouns and adjectives in blue in the article. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 5 Read and complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with the examples in blue from the article.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Compound nouns and adjectives

Compound nouns

- A compound noun is normally made up of two words. The first word describes or modifies the second word: a ¹**morning show** = a show that is on in the morning. Compare: a **company car** (a type of car) and a **car company** (a type of company).
- Compound nouns can consist of:
noun + noun: ² _____ anchor, newsreader, health check
adjective + noun: ³ _____ affairs
verb-ing + noun: **breaking** ⁴ _____
preposition + noun: ⁵ _____ view
- A significant number of compound nouns are **made from phrasal verbs**: **back sth up** > a ⁶ _____, **crack down on sth** > a **crack-down**
- Compound nouns can be written as one word, two words or with a hyphen. Check in a dictionary. The stress is usually on the first syllable.

Compound adjectives

- A compound adjective is usually made from two words and usually written with a hyphen.
- Compound adjectives can consist of:
number + noun: **three-minute**, **twenty-four-hour**
adjective + noun: **high-quality**, **present-day**, **deep sea**
noun + adjective: **user-friendly**, **waist-high**, **weatherproof**
noun/adjective/adverb + -ed/-ing participle: ⁷**heart** _____, **mouth-watering**, **short-lived**, **far-fetched**, **kind-hearted**, **weather-beaten**, **broad-shouldered**, **flat-footed**
verb + preposition/adverb: **made-up**, **unheard-of**
- Some compound adjectives are made from more than two words: **four-year-old**, **blow-** ⁸ _____, **state-of-the-art**
- The noun in a compound adjective is usually singular: a **four-** ⁹ _____ programme NOT ~~a four-hours programme~~

- 6 Match the words from boxes A and B to make common compound colour adjectives. What things can you describe using these colours?

A

blood charcoal lemon
lime nut sky snow

B

blue brown green
grey red yellow white

a blood-red sky, a blood-red rose, blood-red lips

- 7 Rewrite the following descriptions using compound adjectives. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- 1 a young woman with rosy cheeks
- 2 a child with curly hair
- 3 an old man with thin lips
- 4 a young sportsman with broad shoulders
- 5 a high jumper with long legs
- 6 a teenager with a kind heart

- 8 Read the news story and replace the information in brackets with a compound noun or adjective. Do you believe the boy's explanation?

Real-life teddy bear

A ¹ _____ (boy who was three years old) who went missing in woods for two days says a brown bear kept him safe. The boy who survived the ² _____ (ordeal that lasted two nights) alone in the woods in freezing conditions has told police and family he was helped out by a friendly bear. Rescuers, who had to wade through ³ _____ (water that was high to the waist), found him tangled up in thorny bushes. He was taken to hospital for a ⁴ _____ (check on his health) and was found to be a little ⁵ _____ (burned by the sun) but otherwise unhurt. The story of the bear is too far-fetched for some people, but whether a ⁶ _____ (bear with a kind heart) really took care of him, or whether it was all in his imagination, the important thing is that he is safely home with his family.



- 9 USE OF ENGLISH Complete the second sentence so it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to five words including the word in capitals.

- 1 Fifty years ago, nobody had heard of some of the health problems affecting children today. **WERE**
Some of the health problems affecting children today _____ fifty years ago.
- 2 Local police have announced that they are cracking down on anti-social behaviour. **A**
Local police have announced _____ anti-social behaviour.
- 3 The Oxford to London bus service, which operates all day and all night, is under review. **TWENTY-FOUR-HOUR**
The _____ from Oxford to London is under review.
- 4 Phones with voice recognition are easier to use according to a recent survey. **MORE**
Phones with voice recognition are _____ according to a recent survey.
- 5 I've completely worn myself out playing tennis this afternoon. **AM**
_____ after playing tennis this afternoon.
- 6 Joe and Becky decided to buy a train pass that would last them seven days. **SEVEN-DAY**
Joe and Becky decided to _____.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1-6

- 10 USE OF ENGLISH Read the text and choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

The branch of a well-known pizza company ¹ _____ up with a ² _____ offer which turned out to be somewhat ³ _____. They promised 100 free pizzas per year for 100 years to ⁴ _____ customer who painted the company's logo on the side of their car and then posted it on social media. The ⁵ _____ response from the general public was loud and ⁶ _____: the thought of looking ⁷ _____ to a lifetime supply of ⁸ _____-watering pizzas proved irresistible and ⁹ _____ of people ¹⁰ _____ in posting their photos before the overwhelmed company withdrew their offer early.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 A put | B took |
| C came | D made |
| 2 A special | B important |
| C significant | D particular |
| 3 A short-handed | B short-lived |
| C short-range | D short-changed |
| 4 A every | B all |
| C each of | D whole |
| 5 A first | B beginning |
| C introductory | D initial |
| 6 A obvious | B clear |
| C distinct | D long |
| 7 A forward | B up |
| C out | D down |
| 8 A tongue | B teeth |
| C mouth | D stomach |
| 9 A lot | B very many |
| C hundreds | D one thousand |
| 10 A were able | B managed |
| C succeeded | D could |



WRITING

6.8

A review of a TV series

I can write a review of a television series.

1 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions in groups.

- 1 Which old TV series do you consider to be classics and why?
- 2 Which of today's TV series do you think are the classics of the future and why?
- 3 What do you know about the series shown in the picture?

2 **Read the notice on the website and answer the questions.**

- 1 What kind of website is Pictureshow? What similar sites do you know?
- 2 What should readers do to enter the competition?

Pictureshow TV and film reviews by you, for you.

Classic TV



RESULTS

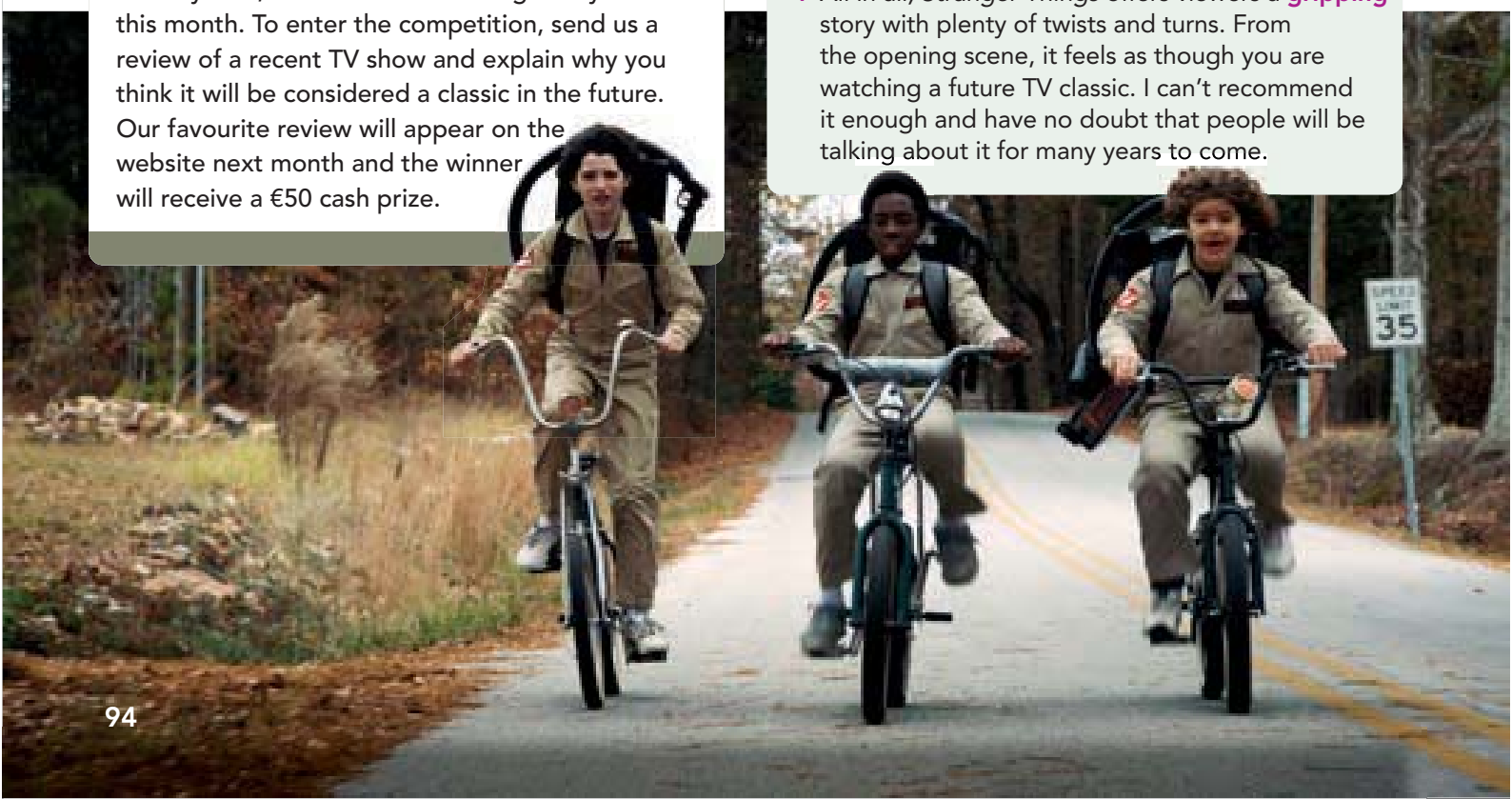
- [Classic TV series by genre](#)
- [Editor's picks: TV classics](#)
- [Fifty classic shows that changed TV forever](#)
- [Tomorrow's Classics Competition](#)

Tomorrow's Classics Competition

Spotting the classic TV series of tomorrow is no easy task, but that's our challenge for you this month. To enter the competition, send us a review of a recent TV show and explain why you think it will be considered a classic in the future. Our favourite review will appear on the website next month and the winner will receive a €50 cash prize.

- 3 **SPEAKING** Read the review. If you have seen *Stranger Things*, do you agree with the writer's opinion of it? If you haven't, does the review make you want to watch the series? Explain your answers.

- 1 Take a **nostalgic** journey back to small-town America in the 1980s with Netflix's dark mystery *Stranger Things*. This excellent show is heavily influenced by the books and films of Stephen King and Steven Spielberg. Series creators, the Duffer brothers, have combined action, humour and horror to create a **well-reviewed** sci-fi drama. As far as I'm concerned, it's a TV classic.
- 2 In season one of *Stranger Things*, a schoolboy named Will goes missing. His friends, mother and the rest of the town become part of a series of mysterious events involving an unusual young girl named Eleven. It soon becomes clear that something even stranger is hiding in the woods of their town. In season two, the town and its inhabitants are once again threatened by supernatural forces and we are reminded that the worst villains are not always the monsters. Season three not only presents a continuation of this theme, but also shows how the main characters and their relationships have developed with time.
- 3 *Stranger Things* is a brilliant show with an **unforgettable** soundtrack. The plot explores friendships, family ties and even romance. The young cast give wonderful performances and the show is beautifully shot. Unlike many modern shows, it doesn't rely too heavily on special effects. While season one is not particularly scary, seasons two and three are more strongly influenced by horror films and are **terrifying** at times.
- 4 All in all, *Stranger Things* offers viewers a **gripping** story with plenty of twists and turns. From the opening scene, it feels as though you are watching a future TV classic. I can't recommend it enough and have no doubt that people will be talking about it for many years to come.



4 Read the review again and match points a–d below with paragraphs 1–4.

- a Summarise your opinions and make a recommendation. ☐
- b Give your opinion on the story, acting, dialogue, special effects, etc. ☐
- c Give key information: the name of the series, where and when it is set etc., and your overall opinion. ☐
- d Summarise the story but don't give any spoilers. ☐

5 Read the **WRITING FOCUS** and find examples of each point in the review.

WRITING FOCUS

A review

The goal of a review is to give your personal opinion about something, e.g. a film, a series or a book. The opinion should be supported with examples and recommendations should be given at the end. Reviews are usually written for newspapers, websites or magazines and therefore have a fairly informal style.

Introduction

- Attract the reader's attention with an interesting opening sentence.
- Mention the type of show, the stars/director/writer, the setting, obvious influences, etc.
- State your overall opinion.

Main paragraphs

- Use present tenses to give more details about the plot and the main characters.
- Use present or past tenses to say what you liked/didn't like about the TV series.
- Use a variety of adjectives and modifiers when presenting your opinions.

Conclusion

- Summarise your review.
- Make recommendations.

6 Complete the sentences from other reviews with one to three words from the review in Exercise 3.

- 1 People _____ about how bad this is for many years to come.
- 2 I can't _____ it enough and look forward to the second season.
- 3 From the _____ scene, it is clear that the film is going to be slow and **predictable**.
- 4 The cast give confident _____ and are a pleasure to watch.
- 5 The third season is strongly _____ the films of Quentin Tarantino.
- 6 At times, the show is poorly _____ and relies too heavily on low quality special effects.
- 7 To sum up, Schumer's new sitcom is **hilarious** and full of unexpected _____ and turns.
- 8 The rather **far-fetched** plot _____ the idea of an alien invasion.

7 Match the adjectives in purple in the review and Exercise 6 with the definitions in the **LANGUAGE FOCUS** box. Is each one positive, negative, or a matter of taste?

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Adjectives for reviews

Use a range of adjectives to make your review interesting.

- 1 very funny = **hilarious**
- 2 impossible to forget = _____
- 3 extremely frightening = _____
- 4 exciting = _____
- 5 emotional about the past = _____
- 6 hard to believe = _____
- 7 liked by critics = _____
- 8 easy to guess = _____

8 Complete the sentences with an appropriate adjective from the **LANGUAGE FOCUS**. Use each adjective only once.

- 1 This comedy is _____. It will have you laughing out loud.
- 2 Although the show was _____ on several TV websites, we found it average at best.
- 3 For me this series is _____. I haven't stopped thinking about it since I finished watching it.
- 4 This show takes a _____ look at life in the UK in the 1920s.
- 5 Don't watch this zombie series alone because it is truly _____.
- 6 This _____ sitcom is no different to a thousand others you've seen before.
- 7 If you don't mind a _____ plot involving aliens and cowboys, you'll probably enjoy this series.
- 8 Each episode is so _____, it's almost impossible to stop watching and go to bed.

9 **SPEAKING** Discuss what shows, films or actors fit some of the descriptions in Exercises 6 and 8.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

10 Do the writing task. Use the ideas in the **WRITING FOCUS** and the **LANGUAGE FOCUS** to help you.

Imagine you are entering the competition on the website in Exercise 2. Write a review of a TV series that you think will be a future classic.

- Write an interesting opening sentence and state your overall opinion of the series.
- Summarise the plot of the series (but remember to avoid spoilers) and the reasons why you like it/feel it will be a future classic.
- Add a conclusion that includes a recommendation.

6.1 Vocabulary 🔊 4.41

accurate /'ækjərət/
 alarming /ə'laɪmɪŋ/
 alarmingly /ə'laɪmɪŋli/
 appeal to /ə'pi:l tə/
 awash with information /ə,wɒʃ wɪð
 ,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/
 believable /bə'li:vəbəl/
 bombarded with information
 /bɒm,bɑ:dɪd wɪð ,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/
 burst into flames /,bɜ:st ,ɪntə 'fleɪmz/
 check the accuracy /tʃek ði 'ækjərəsi/
 cleaning solution /'kli:nɪŋ sə,lʊ:ʃən/
 clear commitment /,kliə kə'mɪtmənt/
 close /kləʊs/
 closely /'kləʊsli/
 critical /'krɪtɪkəl/
 critically /'krɪtɪkli/
 deliberate /dɪ'libərət/
 deliberately /dɪ'libərətli/
 distinct feeling /dɪ'stɪŋkt 'fi:liŋ/
 distort the truth /dɪ'stɔ:t ðə 'tru:θ/
 double-check facts /,dʌbəl ,tʃek
 'fæktz/
 evaluate sources /ɪ,væljuet 'sɔ:sɪz/
 examine sth closely /ɪg,zæmɪn
 ,sʌmθɪŋ 'kləʊsli/
 eye-catching story /aɪ ,kætʃɪŋ 'stɔ:ri/
 fake news /,feɪk 'nju:z/
 falsehood /'fɔ:lsʊd/
 for commercial gain /fə kə,mɜ:ʃəl
 'geɪn/
 for political gain /fə pə,lɪtɪkəl 'geɪn/
 gut feeling /,gʌt 'fi:liŋ/
 have an agenda /,hæv ən ə'dʒendə/
 ignite /ɪg'naɪt/
 inaccurate /ɪn'ækjərət/
 knowing /'nəʊɪŋ/
 knowingly /'nəʊɪŋli/
 long-term commitment /,lɒŋ tɜ:m
 kə'mɪtmənt/
 made-up /,meɪd 'ʌp/
 manipulate the media /mə,nɪpjəleɪt
 ðə 'mi:diə/
 mislead/misinform people /,mɪs,lɪ:d/
 mɪsɪn,fɔ:m 'pi:pəl/
 misleading /mɪs'li:diŋ/
 newsworthy story /,nju:z,wɜ:ði
 'stɔ:ri/
 not take a story at face value /nɒt
 ,teɪk ə ,stɔ:ri ət ,feɪs 'vælju:/
 on a daily basis /ɒn ə ,deɪli 'beɪsɪs/
 on a regular basis /ɒn ə ,regjələ
 'beɪsɪs/
 operating theatre /'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ ,θiətə/
 print-based media /,prɪnt beɪst
 'mi:diə/
 question facts /'kwestʃən ,fæktz/

reliable/reputable source
 /rɪ,aɪəbəl ,repjətəbəl 'sɔ:s/
 remarkable /rɪ'mɑ:kəbəl/
 remarkably /rɪ'mɑ:kəbli/
 spark /spɑ:k/
 spread fake news /,spred ,feɪk
 'nju:z/
 tackle a problem /,tækəl ə 'prɒbləm/
 tamper with photos /,tæmpə wɪð
 'fəʊtəʊz/
 trust your instincts /,trʌst jər
 'ɪnstɪŋkts/
 winnings /'wɪnɪŋz/

6.2 Grammar 🔊 4.42

flat tyre /'flæt taɪə/
 invent a story /ɪn,vent ə 'stɔ:ri/
 oversleep /,əʊvə'sli:p/
 starving /'stɑ:vɪŋ/
 subtitles /'sʌb,tʌɪtlz/

6.3 Listening 🔊 4.43

alteration /,ɔ:ltə'reɪʃən/
 animal cruelty /,ænəməl 'kru:əlti/
 animal rights /,ænəməl 'raɪts/
 anonymity /,ænə'nɪməti/
 authenticate /ɔ:'θentɪkeɪt/
 authority /ɔ:'θɒrəti/
 background /'bækgraʊnd/
 bar code /'bɑ: kəʊd/
 butcher /'bʊtʃə/
 commit an offence /kə,mɪt ən ə'fens/
 confirm /kən'fɜ:m/
 equality /ɪ'kwɒləti/
 ethical issue /,eθɪkəl 'ɪʃu:/
 express /ɪk'spres/
 fairness /'feərnəs/
 float away /,fləʊt ə'weɪ/
 genuine /'dʒenjʊn/
 identity /aɪ'dentəti/
 make a statement /,meɪk ə
 'steɪtmənt/
 out of reach /aʊt əv rɪtʃ/
 paintbrush /'peɪntbrʌʃ/
 peaceful protest /,pi:sfəl 'prəʊtest/
 protect your identity /prə,tekt jər
 aɪ'dentəti/
 protestor /prə'testə/
 raise awareness /,reɪz ə'weənəs/
 recognised /'rekəɡnaɪzd/
 remain anonymous /rɪ,meɪn
 ə'nɒnəməs/
 stencil /'stensəl/
 strong belief /strɒŋ bə'li:f/
 substitute /'sʌbstətju:t/
 treatment of animals /,tri:tmənt əv
 'ænɪməlz/
 unconfirmed rumour /,ʌnkən,fɜ:m
 'ru:mə/

underlying message /,ʌndə,lai-ɪŋ
 'mesɪdʒ/

6.4 Reading 🔊 4.44

airbrush /'eəbrʌʃ/
 at arm's length /ət 'ɑ:mz ,leŋθ/
 become mainstream /bɪ,kʌm
 'meɪnstri:m/
 blurred /blɜ:d/
 body dysmorphic disorder /,bɒdi
 dɪs'mɔ:fɪk dɪs'ɔ:də/
 capture a memorable moment
 /,kæptʃər ə 'memərəbəl ,məʊmənt/
 crop images /,krɒp 'ɪmɪdʒɪz/
 cute /kju:t/
 date back to /'deɪt ,bæk tə/
 declare /dɪ'kleə/
 defect /'dɪ:fekt/
 duchess /'dʌtʃəs/
 duck-face /'dʌkfets/
 facial /'feɪʃəl/
 gain popularity /,geɪn ,pɒpjə'lærəti/
 harmless /'hɑ:mles/
 have a habit of /,hæv ə 'hæbɪt əv/
 in focus/out of focus /ɪn 'fəʊkəs/aʊt
 əv 'fəʊkəs/
 lens /lenz/
 make a claim /,meɪk ə 'kleɪm/
 mental health problem/condition
 /,mentl 'helθ ,prɒbləm/kən,dɪʃən/
 origin /'ɒrɪdʒɪn/
 originate /ə'ɪrɪdʒəneɪt/
 pose for a photo /,pəʊz fər ə 'fəʊtəʊ/
 refer to /rɪ'fɜ: tə/
 retouch images /,ri:tʌtʃ 'ɪmɪdʒɪz/
 seek /si:k/
 shake sth off /,ʃeɪk ,sʌmθɪŋ 'ɒf/
 sharp /ʃɑ:p/
 shot /ʃɒt/
 snap /snæp/
 snap a selfie /,snæp ə 'selfi/
 take a shot/a snap /,teɪk ə 'ʃɒt/
 ə 'snæp/
 tousle /'taʊzəl/
 treat /tri:t/
 trigger /'trɪgə/
 wink /wɪŋk/
 zoom in/zoom out /,zu:m 'ɪn/,zu:m
 'aʊt/

6.5 Grammar 🔊 4.45

fictional character /,fɪkʃənəl
 'kærəktə/
 screen /skri:n/

6.6 Speaking 🔊 4.46

awareness-raising campaign
 /ə'weənəs ,reɪzɪŋ kæm,pəɪn/
 convinced /kən'vɪnst/

creature /'kri:tʃə/
desirable /dɪ'zaɪərəbəl/
do harm /,du: 'hɑ:m/
emphasise /'emfəsaɪz/
engage with /ɪn'geɪdʒ wɪð/
firmly /'fɜ:mli/
for the sake of /fə ðə 'seɪk əv/
frankly /'fræŋkli/
fur /fɜ:/
fur trade /fɜ: treɪd/
general public /,dʒenərəl 'pʌblɪk/
glamorous /'glæməərəs/
hand out leaflets /,hænd ,aʊt 'li:flɪts/
involvement /ɪn'vɒlvmənt/
make a difference /,meɪk ə 'dɪfərəns/
make your point /,meɪk jə 'pɔɪnt/
member of the public /,membər əv ðə 'pʌblɪk/
obviously /'ɒbvɪəsli/
peacefully /'pi:sfəli/
petition /pə'tɪʃən/
prevent from /prɪ'vent ,frəm/
promote awareness /prə,məʊt ə'weənəs/
protest march /'prəʊtest ,mɑ:tʃ/
public figure /,pʌblɪk 'fɪɡə/
receive criticism /rɪ,sɪv 'krɪtəsɪzəm/
regrettably /rɪ'gretəbli/
take notice of /,teɪk 'nəʊtɪs əv/
vital /'vaɪtl/

6.7 Use of English 4.47

background /'bækgraʊnd/
backup /'bækʌp/
blood-red /'blʌd red/
blow-by-blow /,bləʊ baɪ 'bləʊ/
breaking news /,breɪkɪŋ 'nju:z/
broad-shouldered /,brɔ:d 'ʃəʊldəd/
bush /bʊʃ/
car company /,kɑ: 'kʌmpəni/
charcoal-grey /'tʃɑ:kəʊl ,greɪ/
commercial break /kə,mɜ:ʃəl 'breɪk/
company car /,kʌmpəni 'kɑ:/
copy editor /'kɒpi ,edɪtə/

crack down on /,kræk 'daʊn ɒn/
crackdown on /'krækdaʊn ɒn/
curly-haired /,kɜ:li 'heəd/
dash /dæʃ/
deep sea /di:p 'si:/
fact-checker /,fækt 'tʃekə/
far-fetched /,fɑ: 'fetʃt/
flat-footed /,flæt 'fʊtɪd/
float /fləʊt/
foreign affairs /,fɒrɪn ə'feəz/
frill /frɪl/
green screen /,ɡri:n 'skri:n/
health check /'helθ ,tʃek/
heartwarming /'hɑ:t,wɔ:miŋ/
hideous /'hɪdiəs/
high-quality /,haɪ 'kwɒləti/
ill-advised /,ɪl əd'vaɪzd/
irresistible /,ɪrɪ'zɪstəbəl/
kind-hearted /,kaɪnd 'hɑ:tɪd/
lemon-yellow /,lemən 'jeləʊ/
lifetime supply /,laɪftaɪm sə'plai/
lime-green /,laɪm 'ɡri:n/
long-legged /,lɒŋ 'legəd/
makeup /'meɪkʌp/
mess up /,mes 'ʌp/
morning show /,mɔ:niŋ 'ʃəʊ/
mouth-watering /'maʊθ ,wɔ:təriŋ/
news anchor /,nju:z 'æŋkə/
news station /,nju:z 'steɪʃən/
news stories /,nju:z 'stɔ:riz/
newsreader /'nju:z,ri:də/
nonstop /,nɒn'stɒp/
nut-brown /,nʌt 'braʊn/
on air /ɒn 'eə/
ordeal /ɔ:'di:l/
overwhelmed /,əʊvə'welmd/
overview /'əʊvəvju:/
present-day /'prezənt deɪ/
rehearse /rɪ'hɜ:s/
report on /rɪ'pɔ:t ɒn/
rosy-cheeked /,rəʊzi 'tʃi:kt/
short-lived /,ʃɔ:t 'lɪvd/
sky-blue /,skaɪ 'blu:/
snow-white /,snəʊ 'waɪt/

state-of-the-art /,steɪt əv ði 'ɑ:t/
stripe /straɪp/
sunburnt /'sʌnbɜ:nt/
superimpose /,su:pəɪm'pəʊz/
tangled up /'tæŋɡəld ʌp/
thin-lipped /,θɪn 'lɪpt/
tongue-tied /'tʌŋ ,taɪd/
thorny /'θɔ:ni/
TV station /,ti: 'vi: ,steɪʃən/
unheard-of /ʌn'hɜ:d ɒv/
unhurt /ʌn'hɜ:t/
user-friendly /,ju:zə 'frendli/
waist-high /,weɪst 'haɪ/
weather-beaten /'weðə ,bi:tən/
weatherproof /'weðəpru:f/
withdraw /wɪð'drɔ:/
worn-out /,wɔ:n 'aʊt/
voice recognition /'vɔɪs rekəɡ,nɪʃən/

6.8 Writing 4.48

dark /dɑ:k/
enter a competition /,entər ə ,kɒmpə'tɪʃən/
family ties /'fæməli taɪz/
genre /'ʒɒnrə/
go missing /,ɡəʊ 'mɪsɪŋ/
gripping /'ɡrɪpɪŋ/
heavily influenced /,hevəli 'ɪnfluənst/
hilarious /hɪ'leəriəs/
nostalgic /nɒ'stældʒɪk/
opening scene /,əʊpənɪŋ 'si:n/
plot /plɒt/
predictable /prɪ'dɪktəbəl/
soundtrack /'saʊndtræk/
spoiler /'spɔɪlə/
spot /spɒt/
terrifying /'terəfaɪ-ɪŋ/
threaten /'θreɪn/
twists and turns /,twɪsts ən 'tɜ:nz/
unforgettable /,ʌnfə'getəbəl/
villain /'vɪlən/
well-reviewed /,wel rɪ'vju:d/

MY WORD LIST

EXCHANGING INFORMATION

PHOTOGRAPHY

OTHER

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Match the words in box A with the words in box B to make collocations, then complete the sentences with the collocations in the correct form.

(A commercial daily double-check make raise)

(B awareness basis the facts gain a statement)

- The company's website is updated on a _____ with the latest news and events.
- She set up a campaign to _____ of the disease amongst the general public.
- The school have been passing on students' data for _____, selling lists of names to advertisers.
- It's vital that, as a journalist, you _____ in a story before it's published.
- This morning, the director of the hospital _____ to the media about the crisis.

- 2 Complete the sentences with words from the unit. The first letter of each word is given.

- You shouldn't take stories you read online at f_____ value, they're often fake news.
- I just had a g_____ feeling that something wasn't right about what I'd been told.
- The name of the witness has been changed to p_____ her identity.
- Legally, he hadn't actually c_____ an offence, but his actions were clearly dishonest.
- It's really important to check the a_____ of any statistics you use in your article.
- I don't believe the files were deleted by accident, they clearly did it d_____.

- 3 Choose the correct option.

- Would / Should* you need any further information, please don't hesitate to ask.
- Had the government not / Hadn't the government* acted, there would soon have been more riots.
- I would ask people for their IDs before letting them in *providing / unless* I knew them personally.
- We wouldn't get involved in your project *weren't we / were we not* enthusiastic about it.
- Imagine / Provided* you were offered a job as a foreign affairs correspondent, would you accept it?

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use mixed conditionals.

- If Karen _____ (check) her sources before submitting her article last week, she _____ (not/be) in trouble with the editor today.
- John _____ (tell) us the truth about the school incident if he _____ (be) an honest person.
- If Jerry generally _____ (take) his job seriously, his manager _____ (promote) him a long time ago.
- If my grandparents _____ (not/be) such generous people, they _____ (not/help) me financially at university and I wouldn't be a lawyer.
- We _____ (not/have to) take them to court now if they _____ (pay) the loan back on time.

USE OF ENGLISH

- 5 Read the text. Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

'Prodigal Summer' by Barbara Kingsolver

This novel is the story of two women whose lives change dramatically over the course of one summer. It doesn't have a(n) ¹_____ plot like some of Kingsolver's other books, but neither is it too slow or ²_____, with one or two surprising twists along the way. First and foremost, it's about the characters. Both women have ³_____ opinions about how they want to live their lives and both ⁴_____ believe in the importance of respecting the natural world. It's set in the ⁵_____ USA, in the small farming community of Egg Fork in the Zebulon Mountains, a ⁶_____ place, but typical of the Appalachian Mountains of North Carolina, and the landscape and its wildlife are ever-present in the ⁷_____. The women's stories are also linked up with a third character, an elderly local farmer who is ⁸_____ for a past way of life and who initially seems angry and bitter, but who turns out to be surprisingly ⁹_____.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 A eye-catching | B gripping |
| C newsworthy | D remarkable |
| 2 A predictable | B unpredictable |
| C reliable | D hilarious |
| 3 A hard | B tough |
| C strong | D heavy |
| 4 A greatly | B honestly |
| C completely | D firmly |
| 5 A nowadays | B real-time |
| C present-day | D up-to-date |
| 6 A backup | B made-up |
| C far-fetched | D fake |
| 7 A foreground | B backdrop |
| C background | D back-story |
| 8 A nostalgic | B memorable |
| C unforgettable | D romantic |
| 9 A heartwarming | B kind-hearted |
| C hard-hearted | D single-minded |

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use up to five words in each gap and make any changes necessary.

- I _____ (not/tell) Christie my secret then if she were not a trustworthy person.
- I'm pretty sure that if you _____ (listen/advice) which I gave you last time, you wouldn't be in such a terrible situation now.
- Suppose _____ (you/miss) your flight last night, what would you have done?
- If you hadn't forgotten the keys, we _____ (not/stand) outside our house in the cold right now.
- I'm sure there will be an investigation _____ (unless/company/release) its financial report.
- Tim wouldn't be giving you any free lessons _____ (he/be/not/you) good friend.

READING

- 7 Read the article. Complete the sentences with up to three words from the article in the correct form.

THE POWER OF IMAGES

It's often said that a picture is worth a thousand words. There's something appealing about images that makes them a powerful tool for communication.

As you scroll through your social media feed or browse a news website, what is it that prompts you to read on? The chances are that it's the images that attract your attention. Online content that is accompanied by an image is more likely to prompt engagement, in the form of clicks, likes and shares, than straightforward text.

This phenomenon is especially important to digital marketers.

They will tell you that on average people only read around 20 percent of the text on a web page. When it comes to remembering information, it is said that we retain around 80 percent of what we see versus only 20 percent of what we read and just 10 percent of what we hear. Although these figures are criticised by experts as an oversimplification, visuals do play an important role in how we deal with content in an information-rich world. Producing eye-catching visuals to attach to digital content is vital for anyone who wants to get their message across to the maximum number of people.

It's not only in the commercial world that the power of the image is being recognised. Governments and NGOs such as the World Health Organisation are acknowledging the importance of social media in communicating public health messages. Research into social media engagement during one recent disease outbreak, for example, found that it was image-based platforms such as Instagram that were most effective in communicating vital health messages. Whilst there is some concern amongst healthcare professionals that what starts off as helpful messages can easily get distorted as they're shared and reshared, specialists say that social media has huge potential for promoting public health.

Political journalists and campaigners have also long understood the power of an image. In a social media age, though, just posting a striking image that is sure to go viral has been labelled by some as 'slacktivism'. That is the idea that people will like and share an image without really thinking about the ideas behind it or engaging with the political message. The challenge for activists, journalists, marketers and governments is to develop a social media strategy that includes eye-catching visuals but is also more than skin deep.

- When looking at information online, people are far more likely to engage with content if it includes an image of some kind.
- This fact is exploited by those working in marketing to help make their messages stand out.
- Apparently, we remember only a tiny percentage of information in the form of text or audio, but a much greater proportion of ideas presented in the form of images.
- Images are also increasingly being used by official bodies to communicate effectively to the widest possible audience and by journalists and activists to promote political campaigns.
- The use of eye-catching images that quickly go viral has been criticised as an example of 'slacktivism' because it is superficial and doesn't really engage people with the underlying message.

SPEAKING

- 8 Look at the photos. The local council has decided to close down a community centre in your neighbourhood. Choose the method of protesting against this decision which, in your opinion, is the best, and give reasons for your choice.

A



B



- 9 Ask and answer the questions.

- Should young people get involved in campaigns that concern their local areas? Why?/Why not?
- Is it better to express one's opinion on a controversial issue or to keep quiet? Why?/Why not?
- What's the most effective way to persuade somebody to change their opinion? What makes you think so?
- What are the advantages of using social media to organise an event?

WRITING

- 10 Read the writing task and write a review.

What is your favourite film genre? Comedy, action movie, romantic comedy or something else? Write a review for a film which is the best representation of your favourite genre and could encourage viewers to watch more films of that type.

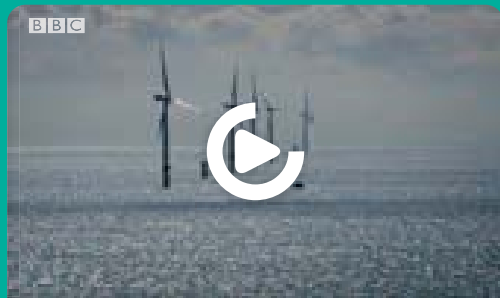
7

It's not rocket science!

I am among those who think that science has great beauty.

Marie Curie

BBC



BLOWING IN THE WIND

 29 Watch the BBC video. For the worksheet, go to page 144.

7.1

VOCABULARY

Science • scientific research • prepositions after verbs and nouns • words in science

I can talk about science and scientific research.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- For each adjective in the box, add a discipline and a person. Add any other science word families that you know.

archaeological astronomical biological botanical
 chemical geological mathematical physical

archaeological → *archaeology* → *archaeologist*
- SPEAKING** Look at the subjects in Exercise 1. Which science is the most/least difficult to study?
- SPEAKING** Between 1901 and 2019 the Nobel Prize in Chemistry and Physics was awarded to 386 men and only eight women. Discuss possible reasons for this and say if you think the situation is changing.
- Read the text. What scientists are mentioned and what are their fields of study? What do they have in common?

FEMALE SCIENTISTS Changing The World

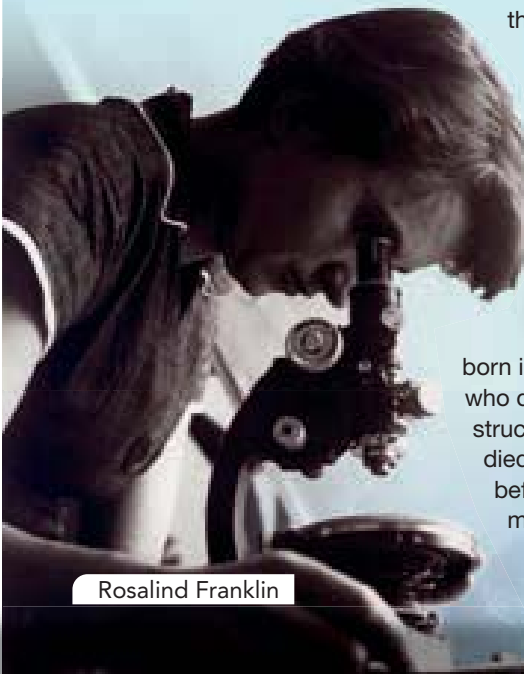
In any web search for the world's famous scientists, Marie Curie always **receives a mention**. Curie, a Polish and naturalised French physicist and chemist, discovered radiation, helped apply it in the field of X-rays and **coined the term** *radioactivity*. She **made a huge contribution** to science, but was one of the very few women who **gained the recognition** they deserved.

Science was a man's world in the nineteenth century. And yet, Mary Anning became an expert in fossils and geology. Coming from a poor family, she collected fossils on the beach and sold them to make a little money. She found fossils of complete marine reptiles that became extinct over 100

million years ago. She gained the respect of scientists, but living in an era when women weren't allowed to vote or attend university, she was not allowed to join the Geological Society of London.

A hundred years later, conditions were still difficult for female scientists.

Rosalind Franklin, a chemist born in 1920, was part of a team who discovered the molecular structure of DNA. Tragically, she died aged thirty-seven, four years before her fellow scientists, all men, were **awarded the Nobel Prize** in 1962. They made no reference to Franklin in their acceptance speech.



Rosalind Franklin

- 5 **3.13** Listen to a podcast about another famous scientist, Ada Lovelace. What was she famous for?

- 6 **3.13** Listen again and answer the questions.

Ada Lovelace QUIZ



- 1 What did Ada Lovelace collaborate with Charles Babbage on?
- 2 How do people refer to Charles Babbage?
- 3 Who is credited with inventing the first computer algorithm?
- 4 In what way did Lovelace see the true **potential** of the computer?
- 5 How easy was it for women to have access to education in the nineteenth century?
- 6 When did Ada Lovelace find out that she had an aptitude for calculations?
- 7 Did many women manage to win the **respect** of their fellow scientists?
- 8 What did the US Department of Defence name after Lovelace?

A similar injustice happened when British astrophysicist Jocelyn Bell Burnell discovered radio pulsars, described as the greatest astronomical discovery of the twentieth century. Her supervisor and his male colleague were awarded the 1974 Nobel Prize in Physics for the discovery, and she was completely left out. Many astronomers criticised the decision, but Bell Burnell finally gained recognition in 2007 when she was made Woman of the Year for her remarkable contributions to science.

In cases where women's **achievements were recognised**, we still find evidence of discrimination in the way these were reported in the press. When the brilliant chemist Dorothy Hodgkin was awarded the Nobel Prize in 1964 for discovering the molecular structure of penicillin and vitamin B₁₂, the paper headline was *Oxford Housewife Wins Nobel*. In fact, this housewife was also a professor at Oxford University.

Today the gender gap in the world of science is slowly closing and there are many female scientists inspiring new generations of girls to study scientific subjects. But there is still some way to go for women to be equally represented in science.

WORD STORE 7A Scientific research

- 7 **3.14** Complete WORD STORE 7A with the words in red in the text and Exercise 6. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 8 **SPEAKING** Complete the descriptions with the verbs in WORD STORE 7A. Then write short descriptions of the two scientists from the text who are NOT described below. Discuss who you admire the most.
- 1 She _____ the true potential of the Analytical Engine and the US Department of Defence _____ her achievements by naming a computer language after her.
 - 2 She _____ the term 'radioactivity' and always _____ a mention as one of the world's most famous scientists.
 - 3 Surprisingly, she was not _____ the Nobel Prize for her discovery of radio pulsars in outer space.
 - 4 She _____ the respect of fellow scientists and found evidence of animals that had become extinct 100 million years ago.

WORD STORE 7B Prepositions after verbs and nouns

- 9 **3.15** Complete WORD STORE 7B with the underlined prepositions in the text and Exercise 6. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 10 **SPEAKING** Complete the questions with a verb or a noun in WORD STORE 7B. Then ask and answer the questions. Give reasons for your answers.
- 1 What software programmes do you have _____ to at school?
 - 2 What area of science would you like to be an _____ in?
 - 3 If you were doing a science project, who would you _____ with?
 - 4 Which school subjects do you think you have an _____ for?
 - 5 Is there somebody in your family who you were _____ after?

WORD STORE 7C Words in science

- 11 **3.16** Translate the words in WORD STORE 7C and tick any that appear in the text and Exercise 6. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then listen and repeat. Do you know any other words you could add?
- 12 **Work together to complete these scientific facts using the words in WORD STORE 7C in the correct form.**
- 1 The periodic table, showing all known _____, was invented in 1867 by Russian chemist Dmitri Mendeleev.
 - 2 An _____ moves around the _____ of an atom.
 - 3 An _____ is a set of rules to be followed in _____, especially by a computer.
 - 4 $E = mc^2$ is Einstein's most famous _____ and helps to explain the theory of _____.
 - 5 Addition (+), subtraction (-), _____ (x) and _____ (÷) are the four basic maths operations.
 - 6 _____ (e.g. lemon juice) have a pH value lower than 7.0.



Advanced passive forms

I can use a variety of advanced passive forms.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss what would happen in your home if all screens were banned for six months. Then read what happened to the Maushart family and compare.

What happened when mum pulled the plug on technology

Susan Maushart unplugged her teenagers and for six months the family lived without their devices. Family rooms were no longer lit up by the light of screens and no electronic noises **could be heard** through the night.

Maushart decided to unplug the family because nothing was ever properly switched off. She'd constantly told her children to turn their devices off when doing their homework, but even when they **should have been switched off**, they were bleeping away in the background.

So what happened? Once the children **had been made to turn off** their technology, the family rediscovered small pleasures like board games, books and listening to music together. Susan Maushart's son **was given** a saxophone and took up music seriously. If the Internet was needed for homework, her older daughter just went to the library. The youngest daughter **hated being unplugged**, but Susan Maushart believes her children became more focused thanks to being less dependent on technology. She now believes all families **need to be encouraged** to unplug periodically.

- 2 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS. Decide which forms of **be** complete the gaps correctly. Then check your answers in the text.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 30

Advanced passive forms

- Passive forms with present or past modal verb structures.
... no electronic noises **could** ¹ be **heard** through the night.
... even when they **should** ² _____ **switched off**, they were bleeping ...
- Passive forms with verbs that take two objects, i.e. a person – usually the indirect object, and a thing – usually the direct object (*give sb sth, send sb sth, show sb sth*, etc.)
Her son ³ _____ **given** a saxophone. (the 'person' is the topic – more common)
A saxophone **was given** to her son. (the 'thing' is the topic – less common)
- Passive forms with verbs + -ing or verbs + to + infinitive.
The youngest daughter **hated** ⁴ _____ unplugged.
... all families **need** ⁵ _____ encouraged ...

Note: make sb **do sth** → **be made to do sth**

Once the children **had been made to turn off** their technology ...



- 3 Rewrite the sentences in the Passive starting with the underlined object.

- You can buy absolutely anything on the Internet these days.
Absolutely anything can be bought on the Internet these days.
- Nobody could have predicted the importance of the Internet back in the 1970s.
- You must protect your computer by using anti-virus software.
- Architects may have designed Bill Gates's house on an Apple computer.
- You can control the volume of a YouTube video with the up/down arrows on your keyboard.
- They should have given Albert Einstein a Nobel Prize for his theory of relativity.

- 4 Underline the indirect object in each sentence. Then rewrite the sentences in the Passive using **by** if necessary. Which sentences are true for you?

- Yesterday, people sent me more than fifty messages.
Yesterday, I was sent more than fifty messages.
- My parents might give me a new laptop for my next birthday.
- They have promised us some new computers for the school.
- People owe me lots of money.
- They should offer my father a new job.
- Today a temporary teacher is teaching us IT.

- 5 **SPEAKING** Use the ideas below to write sentences using the passive infinitive or -ing form. Then discuss the statements.

Most teenagers ...

- don't enjoy (shout at)
Most teenagers don't enjoy being shouted at.
- can't stand (ignore)
- would prefer (not criticise)
- would like (take seriously)
- get tired of (judge)
- just want (love)
- dislike (tell what to do)
- aren't interested in (compare to other teenagers)

FOCUS VLOG 31 About science and technology

31 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 145.

Multiple choice

I can extract the main points from a news report about problems with technology.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the cartoons and identify what problems they illustrate. Discuss any similar problems you have had with technology.
- 2 **3.17** Listen and match cartoons A–D with situations 1–3. There is one extra cartoon.
- 1 ☐ 2 ☐ 3 ☐

EXAM FOCUS Multiple choice

- 3 **3.17** Listen again. For questions 1–3, choose the correct answer A–C.
- The shop assistant wants to
 - warn Julie against buying cheap laptops.
 - persuade Julie to increase her planned budget.
 - encourage Julie to store films and music on a laptop.
 - Which sentence best describes the situation?
 - The sat-nav has taken them the wrong way.
 - Luke wants to avoid the motorway.
 - Kate thinks Luke should trust the sat-nav.
 - Choose the most appropriate headline for this news report.
 - MOPED CRIME RISES BY 30 PERCENT IN LONDON
 - MOBILE THEFTS HIGHER ON PUBLIC TRANSPORT
 - MOPED THIEVES TARGET MOBILE PHONE USERS

- 4 Complete the sentences about the recordings with the words in the box. There are four extra words.

drop gaming laptop bag
map memory card mobile phone
rise sat-nav security word processing

RECORDING 1

- a The shop assistant says four gigabytes of RAM is not sufficient if Julie wants to **go in for** _____.
- b The shop assistant says he'll **throw in** a _____ if Julie buys the better computer.

RECORDING 2

- a Luke wants a _____ to help him **figure out** which way to go.
- b Luke was **talked into** using the _____ even though they **wind** him **up**.

RECORDING 3

- a Figures have **come out** that show a sharp _____ in moped robberies.
- b The police say they are going to **bring in** new _____ measures.

WORD STORE 7D Phrasal verbs

- 5 **3.18** Complete WORD STORE 7D with the phrasal verbs in the box. Then listen, check and repeat.



- 6 Complete the sentences to make them true for you. Then compare with a partner.

- I usually listen to the same kind of music. I don't really **go in for** ...
- When I buy my next phone, I'd like the shop to **throw in** ...
- I always find it difficult to **figure out** ...
- I can't **talk** my parents **into** buying me ...
- The person who **winds me up** most is ...
- The government should **bring in** new laws to ...
- The next new book/film/album/game I want to buy is **coming out** ...

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 7 **3.19** Listen and complete the table. Then listen again and repeat.

NOUN	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
1 science	<u>scientific</u>	scientifically
2 technology		
3	electronic	
4	electric	electrically

- 8 **3.20** Mark the stress in the words in Exercise 7. Then listen, check and repeat.



READING

Open-ended questions

I can scan a set of related texts to find specific information.

- 1 Read the titles of the two texts on page 105. What are they about?
- 2 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions. Then read the two texts quickly and check your ideas.
 - 1 What do you know about bacteria?
 - 2 Do you know what the gut is and what its function is?
 - 3 Do you think of bacteria as a threat to humans? Why?/Why not?
- 3 **SPEAKING** Discuss how you feel about the topic in the texts. Is it something that interests you? Why?/Why not?

EXAM FOCUS Open-ended questions

- 4 Read the texts again and answer the questions.

TEXT A

- 1 In which part of the body can we find most microbes?
- 2 What impact do pathogens have on the body?
 - 3 Why does each person react differently to the same food?
- 4 What is the connection between the gut microbiome and medication?

TEXT B

- 1 How are most infections passed between humans?
- 2 Why could too much washing and cleaning be dangerous?
- 3 Why should you wash your chopping board immediately after cutting fish or meat?
- 4 How can having a pet dog influence your health?

- 5 **3.22** Match the words in blue in the text with their definitions. Then listen, check and repeat.
 - 1 the response of the body's immune system to some substances = allergy
 - 2 a condition that causes breathing difficulties = _____
 - 3 a condition that affects how people communicate and interact with others = _____
 - 4 a condition that causes people to feel unhappy = _____
 - 5 when your blood glucose is too high = _____
 - 6 it protects against infections = _____
 - 7 a disease/condition caused by viruses or bacteria = _____
 - 8 when a person carries excess weight that might affect their health = _____

- 6 **3.23** Complete the news report with the words in Exercise 5. Then listen and check.

Cities are taking steps to tackle air pollution following reports into its impact on human health. Children are at the highest risk of being affected because their ¹ i_____ s_____ aren't strong enough to fight off ² i_____. If they breathe in polluted air over a long period, they may develop ³ a_____ or other lung conditions. People who suffer from pollen ⁴ a_____ in the summer get worse symptoms in cities where diesel fumes act as an irritant. ⁵ O_____ and Type 2 ⁶ d_____ are not only due to lifestyle or genetic factors but also to traffic-related air pollution.



WORD STORE 7E Word families

- 7 **3.24** Complete WORD STORE 7E with the underlined words in the text. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 8 **SPEAKING** Complete the statements with the correct form of the word in capitals. Then discuss whether you agree with the statements and why/why not.
 - 1 _____ is next to godliness. John Wesley **CLEAN**
 - 2 Happiness: a good bank account, a good cook and a good _____. Jean Jacques Rousseau **DIGEST**
 - 3 Let your food be your _____ and _____ be your food. Hippocrates **MEDICINE**
 - 4 Happiness is _____ for the body but it is grief that develops the powers of the mind. Marcel Proust **BENEFIT**
 - 5 Whenever a doctor cannot do good, he must be kept from doing _____. Hippocrates **HARM**
 - 6 Some people are born with a vital and _____ energy. Kate Chopin **RESPONSE**
 - 7 My honest opinion and my friendly _____ is this: do it or do not do it – you will regret both. Søren Kierkegaard **ADVISE**

I'm not sure I agree with the first statement; it depends on the context. If we're talking about clean hands ...

THE HUMAN MICROBIOME

Why our microbes could be key to our health

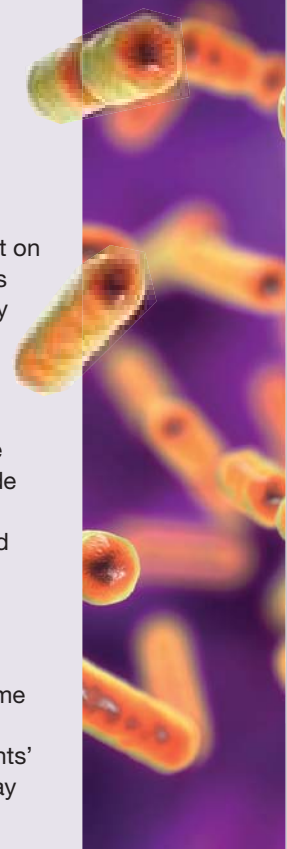
Did you know that more than half of your body is not human? The average adult has just under 40 trillion microbial cells and about 30 trillion human ones. In other words, human cells make up only 43 percent of the body's total cell count. The rest are microbes. No matter how well you wash, nearly every part of your body is covered in microscopic creatures. This includes bacteria, viruses, fungi and archaea, each with their own DNA, and together they are known as the human microbiome. 90 percent of this microscopic life is hidden away in our digestive system. But it would be naive to think that we carry around so much microbial material without it having any effect on our bodies at all.

Microbes and bacteria have a negative reputation and it's true that some microbes are known to cause disease and these are called pathogens. Others only become harmful if they get in the wrong place or grow in number. But the majority of microbes are essential for our health: they regulate the immune system, provide nutrients for our cells, help digestion and protect us against disease.

Different parts of the body all have very different communities of microbes. In his book, *I Contain Multitudes*, Ed Yong compares the body's microbiome to the earth's ecosystems. Just as the ecosystems

of a rainforest and a desert are very different, he writes, so the microbiome of the skin is completely different from the gut. Microbiomes also differ between two people. In fact, each individual has a unique gut microbiome, as personal as a fingerprint. Rob Knight of the University of California San Diego and an expert on the human microbiome explains that differences in the microbiome of the gut help to explain why people respond differently to the same foods.

It is thought that 90 percent of disease can be linked back in some way to the gut and the health of the microbiome. Over recent years the gut microbiome has been associated with a wide range of conditions such as diabetes, autism, depression and obesity. It has also been linked to how individuals respond to certain drugs (and is affected by the drugs we take, such as antibiotics). It has even been suggested that it could be connected with how well we sleep. Microbial medicine is in its early stages, but some researchers think that it will become routine for doctors to keep an eye on the makeup of patients' microbiomes. Microbiome-derived medicine may well be the future of precision medicine.



Text B

ALL YOUR HEALTH QUESTIONS ANSWERED

Being too clean may be bad for your health

I shower every morning, wear clean clothes every day and I carry a hand sanitiser that I use regularly throughout the day to keep my hands clean, especially after touching my pet dog. My house is spotless and you won't see a dirty dish in the kitchen. But now I hear that being too clean may be bad for my health. Is this true?



We need to strike the right balance between keeping obsessively clean and learning to live with the bacteria around us. We know that certain bacteria cause diseases, and in recent times, sanitation and cleanliness have dramatically improved our health. But not all bacteria are bad. In fact, lots of them are extremely useful and beneficial to our health. So the question is, how can we avoid disease from the bad bacteria while nurturing the good bacteria?

First, let me be clear – I'd never suggest skipping the essentials, such as washing your hands. Scientists consider dirty hands as one of the most likely reasons why infections are passed between us. Getting your hands clean is not just a question of how long you wash them, but how well. Experts say you have to apply soap and water, rub all surfaces of the hands thoroughly for at least fifteen seconds, then rinse under running water and then dry them. The rubbing with soap detaches the germs from your skin, while the rinsing and drying takes them off the hands. But not all

of our body has to be washed so thoroughly. A long shower every day may not be advisable, as it removes the 'good bacteria' from our skin.

Around the house, the solution for fighting the wrong kind of bacteria isn't excessive cleaning, but the right kind of cleaning. For instance, if you chop vegetables on your chopping board, you can wait until after your meal to wash it up. Not so if you've chopped raw fish or meat, when instant action is required, or you may increase the risk of infection.

Sometimes, it's good to get dirty! Research shows that children who grow up on farms are less likely to have problems like allergies and asthma and this is because they're exposed to a wonderful biodiversity of bacteria in the soil, rich in beneficial microbes. Dogs are also good for helping you to develop healthy bacteria – next time a slobbery dog jumps up at you, don't push it away. Instead, think about how the bacteria in its saliva may be boosting your immune system.

7.5

GRAMMAR

Passive reporting structures

I can use passive reporting structures to talk about general feelings and beliefs.

- 1 3.25 Read the Maths facts and choose the correct option. Compare with a partner. Then listen and check.

Maths facts

- 1 It **is thought that** numbers and counting began with the number zero / one .
- 2 Arithmetic **is considered to have originated** around 20,000 / 6,000 years ago in Sumer.
- 3 The Egyptians / Romans **are known to have invented** the numbers one thousand and one million.
- 4 Before 1500, the term 'mathematics' **was understood to mean** 'astrology' / 'physics'.
- 5 **There are said to be** limited / unlimited opportunities for mathematicians.
- 6 An increasing / A decreasing number of students **are expected to be doing** Maths at university in the future.

- 2 Read the GRAMMAR FOCUS and find examples of each pattern in Maths facts.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 3.2

Passive reporting structures

You can use the Passive to talk about general feelings or beliefs with reporting verbs like *believe*, *know*, *think*, etc. These structures are usually used in more formal contexts.

- **it + passive verb** (present or past) + **that clause**
- **subject + passive verb** (present or past) + **to + infinitive** (to do/to have done/to be doing, etc.)
- **there + passive verb** (present or past) + **to be/to have been**

- 3 3.26 Read the text. Identify the missing word in each underlined verb structure. Then listen and check.

1 *Pythagoras is understood to have come up with ...*

- 4 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Make any changes necessary, but do not change the order of the words.

- 1 It is understood that Pythagoras came up with (understand/Pythagoras/come up) the idea of odd and even numbers.
- 2 Pythagoras _____ (say/prepare) the way for many famous Greek mathematicians.
- 3 It _____ (think/Archimedes) is one of the greatest mathematicians of all time.
- 4 Archimedes _____ (believe/to/make) his most famous discovery in the bath.
- 5 The Romans _____ (not/think/be interested) in maths.
- 6 Several other civilisations _____ (know/contribute) to the advancement of mathematics.

- 5 Rewrite each sentence in two ways. Begin with the words in brackets.

- 1 We know that most mathematical symbols were invented in the 1500s. (It .../Most ...)
It is known that most mathematical symbols were invented in the 1500s.
Most mathematical symbols are known to have been invented in the 1500s.
- 2 Historians consider the seventeenth century to be a high point in the history of mathematics. (The seventeenth .../It ...)
- 3 Many teachers thought that calculators could harm students' maths skills. (It .../Calculators ...)
- 4 They estimate that there are over 10,000 new Maths graduates every year in the UK. (There .../It ...)

- 6 List the school subjects you study by putting them in order from most important to least important. Compare your lists. How important is Maths?

Grammar page 167

WHERE DO OUR NUMBERS COME FROM?

Around 500 BC, the Greek philosopher ¹ Pythagoras is understood to come up with the idea of odd and even numbers. ² It said that Pythagoras prepared the way for many famous Greek mathematicians including Archimedes. ³ Archimedes is considered be one of the greatest mathematicians of all time. He discovered how to measure the volume of an object with an irregular shape. ⁴ He is believed to been taking a bath when he made the discovery, and leapt out shouting 'Eureka!' ('I have found it!'). Unfortunately, Archimedes was killed by a Roman soldier in 212 BC and mathematics entered a dark age. ⁵ It thought that the Romans just weren't interested in mathematics.

Brahmi numerals around 300 AD

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
—	=	≡	+	h	4	7	5	?

⁶ There are known to been several other civilizations, including the Maya people in Mexico and scholars in ancient China, who contributed to the advancement of mathematics. However, the next big breakthrough was probably in 500 AD when the Indians invented 'zero'. They had already created symbols for the numbers one to nine. In fact, ⁷ it could argued that our 'Arabic numerals' should rather be known as 'Indian numerals'. After all, it was actually the Indians who invented them.

7.6

SPEAKING

Clarification

I can ask for and give clarification.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss which of these machines you would trust in place of a human and which you would not.
- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 A self-driving car | 4 A virtual teacher |
| 2 A robotic surgeon | 5 A robot police officer |
| 3 A computer-generated online friend | |
- 2 **SPEAKING** Imagine you are going to a science and technology exhibition. Look at the posters and discuss which you would rather visit and why.

1 **From Mario to Minecraft**

An interactive history of games, gaming machines and gaming culture



2 **Mind-blowing Machines**

From self-driving cars to robo-cops

The latest developments in robotics and artificial intelligence



- 3 **3.27** Listen to a conversation at the 'Mind-blowing Machines' Exhibition. What type of machine is Sam describing?
- 4 **3.27** Listen again. Which phrases from the **SPEAKING FOCUS** do you hear?

SPEAKING FOCUS

Signalling confusion

- Sorry, I'm not with you. ☐
- I'm not sure I follow (you). ☐
- I'm afraid you've lost me there. ☐
- I don't know what you mean by ... ☐

Checking your understanding

- So, in other words, ... ☐
- Are you saying ...? ☐
- If I understand correctly, you mean ..., right? ☐

Giving clarification

- Yes, precisely/exactly. ☐
- Yes, (that's) pretty much (it). ☐
- No, that's not (quite) what I meant. ☐
- What I meant was ... ☐

- 5 **3.28** Complete the conversations with words from the **SPEAKING FOCUS**. Then listen and check.

Dialogue 1

- A: Not many people agree with me, but I think computer games are a bit of a waste of time. I'd rather kick back with my friends than stare at a screen for hours on end.
- B: Er ... sorry, but I don't know what you mean ¹ _____ 'kick back'.
- A: What I ² _____ was spend time together, you know, hang out, chat, relax.

Dialogue 2

- A: I think I'd die without my phone.
- B: And this year's Oscar for best actress goes to ...
- A: Ha ha, very funny. Are you ³ _____ I'm being dramatic?
- B: Yes, ⁴ _____. I think you'd survive without it.

Dialogue 3

- A: Dan, I have to answer this question for homework. Can you help, please?
- B: Sure, what's the question?
- A: 'In what ways might socially intelligent robots benefit human society?'
- B: Hmm. Well, I suppose the ability to have conversations with our machines will make a big difference.
- A: I'm not sure I ⁵ _____ you.
- B: Well, we interact with today's machines mostly by typing or pushing buttons, but some phones and tablets already understand voice commands, right? Imagine they and other machines could react to what you say and talk back to you properly.
- A: Hmm. OK. If I understand ⁶ _____, you mean we'll be able to have a conversation with our television or our fridge, right?
- B: Yes, that's ⁷ _____ much it.
- A: I'm not sure I'd want to have a conversation with a fridge.
- B: Why not?
- A: Well, they have a reputation for being rather cold.
- B: Oh, very funny.

- 6 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions. Use the **SPEAKING FOCUS** to help you.

- In what ways are computer games good or bad for the people who play them?
- What do you think has been the most important technological development during your lifetime?
- Have social media made us more or less sociable? Explain your opinion.
- In what ways might socially intelligent machines benefit human society?

ROLE-PLAY 33 34 Clarification

33 34 Watch the video and practise. Then role-play your dialogue.

Easily confused words

*I can understand and use words that are easily confused.***1 SPEAKING** What do you know about GPS? Discuss the questions.

- 1 What does GPS stand for?
- 2 How does GPS work?
- 3 When do you use GPS?
- 4 What other uses do you think it has?

2 Read the text. Match headings a–d with paragraphs 1–4. Check your ideas in Exercise 1.

- a GPS takes Einstein's theory into account
- b GPS is owned and operated by the US government
- c GPS isn't just for determining location
- d GPS isn't the only navigation system

Four things you didn't know about**GPS**

1

Originally the system was built by the US Navy to locate submarines, and consisted of six satellites which **eventually** grew to ten. This model **preceded** the Global Positioning System or GPS as we know it today. At first, GPS was reserved for military use, but in 1983 US President Reagan made a **historic** decision to let all civilian commercial aircraft use it.

2

GPS is just one of several space-based radio navigation systems. **Currently**, there are four global navigation systems: GPS (US), GLONASS (RUSSIA), Galileo (EU) and BeiDou (China). These navigation systems are essential for military operations, so some countries prefer not to be **dependent** on another country in case problems **arise**.

3

Twenty-four satellites **ensure** that at least four satellites are in **sight** of any location on Earth at all times. Four satellites are needed to provide **data** to calculate an exact position. The GPS receiver measures the distance to three satellites by the amount of time it takes to receive a transmitted signal. A fourth satellite is used to account for Albert Einstein's general theory of relativity, that time moves faster for those satellites that are further from sources of gravity. Without correction, this would **affect** the exact location by about six miles. That, in a nutshell, is the **principle** on which the GPS is based.

4

Most people associate GPS with giving directions when driving. But there are other important uses for this powerful tool. GPS helps farmers by gathering data about soil, weather patterns and expected rainfall. It is also used to find evidence of the speed at which the ice caps are melting, or the **deserts** are advancing, and this information contributes to environmental **advice** and warnings. GPS can even predict **whether** a natural disaster is likely and help to manage the consequences.

3 Choose the correct option, then answer the questions.

- 1 What was the purpose of the original US system that *proceeded* / *preceded* GPS?
- 2 What *historic* / *historical* decision did US President Reagan make in 1983?
- 3 *Actually* / *Currently* how many systems are there and who do they belong to?
- 4 How would your location be *affected* / *effected* if only three satellites were in *sight* / *site*?
- 5 How can GPS contribute to environmental *advice* / *advise*?

4 Read and complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with the words in blue in the text.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Easily confused words

Lots of English words cause problems because they are easily confused. If in doubt, it is always best to check in a dictionary.

- Words that look or sound similar, but have different meanings

cite/site/¹ sight
conscious/conscientious
dessert/² _____
late/lately
lose/loose
principal/³ _____
proceeded/⁴ _____
sensible/sensitive
weather/⁵ _____

- Words that look or sound similar and have similar meanings (this often includes words from the same word family)

alike/likely
advise/⁶ _____
alone/lone/lonely
assure/insure/⁷ _____
breathe/breath
dependant/⁸ _____
economic/economical
effect/⁹ _____
historical/¹⁰ _____
lay/lie
migrate/immigrate/emigrate
raise/rise/¹¹ _____

- Words that look or sound different, but have similar meanings

after all/finally/lastly/¹² _____comprise/
consist of/include
occasion/opportunity

- False friends are words that look or sound similar to words in your language, but have different meanings

realise (know or understand) ≠ perform or carry out
actually (in fact) ≠ ¹³ _____
¹⁴ _____ (information) ≠ date

5 Choose the correct option. Which statements do you agree with?

- 1 It's so easy to *lose* / *loose* track of time when you're on your phone.
- 2 Technology is useful, but it makes you *lone* / *lonely* / *alone*.
- 3 Going to bed *late* / *lately* every night is not good for your health.
- 4 The *arise* / *raise* / *rise* in antisocial behaviour is due to too much screen time.
- 5 So it seems, *after all* / *finally* / *lastly*, that money doesn't buy you happiness.
- 6 If *present* / *actual* trends continue, cybercrime will *affect* / *effect* all of us.

6 Complete the sentences with different parts of speech by changing one letter in the words in bold.

- 1 You can **advise** someone or give someone **advice**.
- 2 You can **practise** the guitar or do some guitar _____.
- 3 You can **breathe** in deeply or take a deep _____.
- 4 You can be _____ on someone or be someone's **dependant**.
- 5 A situation can **affect** you badly or have a bad _____ on you.

7 USE OF ENGLISH Complete the text with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

affect depend economy interest
like migration sense sure

Many species of bird ¹_____ twice a year often travelling long distances, especially if their natural habitat suffers harsh winters. Scientists are ²_____ in finding out how they navigate on these journeys. They know that birds are ³_____ to light and use the sun and stars to ⁴_____ that they know where north is located. Some researchers think they may also recognise landmarks, but it's doubtful that they are completely ⁵_____ on this method, because they can still navigate on cloudy days and fly across the oceans where there are no landmarks. The latest thinking is that they're ⁶_____ to use more than one method, including detecting the Earth's magnetic field.

8 SPEAKING Choose the correct option. Then ask and answer.

- 1 Are you *economic* / *economical*? Do you hate waste?
- 2 Do you *lay* / *lie* on your front when you're sleeping?
- 3 Are there any *historic* / *historical* buildings near your school?
- 4 Will you ever get an *occasion* / *opportunity* to go to Australia?
- 5 Would you say you were a person of strong *principles* / *principals*?
- 6 Are you a *conscious* / *conscientious* student?

9 Replace the underlined phrases with words with a similar meaning in the box.

actually complement compliment currently
eventually fantastic genial possibly sight site

- 1 I always say I've got lots of Facebook friends, but ...
a in fact I've only got 100. b at the moment I've only got 100.
- 2 'Are you going to buy a new laptop?'
a 'In the end, yes.' b 'Maybe, yes.'
- 3 My grandma and grandpa always ...
a work well with each other. b say nice things to each other.
- 4 We love our family doctor. He's a ...
a great guy. b friendly guy.
- 5 Our local festival takes place in the grounds of a historic castle. It's a ...
a wonderful place. b wonderful spectacle.

10 SPEAKING Discuss whether the words in the box in Exercise 9 have any false friends in your language. Are any of the sentences true for you?

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1-7

11 USE OF ENGLISH Choose the word or phrase, A, B or C, that has a similar meaning to the underlined words in each sentence.

- 1 If you're late for the bus home, you will be banned from coming on the next trip.
A not be allowed to come
B be permitted to come
C be able to come
- 2 Some of the exhibits are on loan from private collections, while others belong to the museum.
A when B where C whereas
- 3 The robot demonstration is very popular and people have to tolerate crowds at the venue.
A put down to B put up with C put off to
- 4 If you like, you can join a half-hour tour of the exhibition. The tour is free.
A thirty-minute B thirty minutes C thirty-minutes
- 5 You're welcome to discuss the exhibition, but you have to remain silent during the demonstration.
A are made to B are able to C are required to
- 6 The exhibition booklet consists of fifty pages and contains all the data about the exhibits as well as some photos.
A comprises B includes C is

A narrative

I can write an entertaining narrative using a variety of verbs to describe ways of speaking.

- 1 SPEAKING** Work in groups. Discuss the questions about Artificial Intelligence (AI).
 - 1 What is AI? Write a short definition.
 - 2 How do you feel about the idea of living in a world where AI is more advanced than human intelligence?
 - 3 What problems might there be if it was impossible to tell the difference between a human and a robot?
- 2 SPEAKING** The image on this page is from the story you are about to read. Say what might be happening in it. Now read the story and find out.
- 3 SPEAKING** What did Robert discover about himself in his parents' office? What exactly do you think his parents' job is?
- 4** Study the **WRITING FOCUS** and find examples of each point in the story in Exercise 2.

WRITING FOCUS

Structure of a narrative

Short stories are usually written from a first-person point of view (the main character tells the story) or a third-person point of view (the writer tells the story but is not a character in it).

Beginning

- Get the reader's attention with a dramatic or mysterious opening, a statement by one of the main characters, or a detail concerning an important place or person from the story.
- Set the scene. Say where and when the story takes place and introduce the main characters.

Middle

- Use narrative tenses to describe the action.
- Add drama and interest with shorter sentences.
- Use language that appeals to the senses to describe what the characters see, hear and feel.
- Report speech using a variety of verbs.
- Give characters a voice using direct speech.

End

- Conclude the story with a twist, a lesson learned, a decision taken (as a result of what happened), or a later event linked to the story.



ROBERT WEAVER discovered he was not in fact Robert Weaver on Independence Day, 2092. His parents were celebrating at their company headquarters on Earth-Station One and had left the seventeen-year-old home alone for the weekend. They worked in advanced computing, though exactly what they did, their son wasn't sure. Their office, in the basement of the house, remained locked at all times and Robert was strictly forbidden from entering. 'Top secret and extremely dangerous,' his parents had warned him many times.

With his mother and father away, Robert had decided to throw a party. It was going well, just a few friends hanging out and having fun. But word had spread, and soon the house was full. A small group had gone downstairs and seen a strange blue glow coming from under one of the doors. 'Something's in there,' **whispered** one of the girls and insisted they find out what it was. Just as they were breaking in, Robert appeared at the bottom of the stairs. 'What are you ... No!' he **yelled**, terrified of what his parents would say. But it was too late.

The room was more of a high-tech laboratory than an office, and in its centre they all saw what appeared to be a glowing blue holographic model of a human body. Robert raised his hands to his mouth in shock, and the hologram made precisely the same movement. As he turned to the others, the hologram mirrored him once again. 'What is this?' **gasped** Robert.

One of the girls in the doorway **screamed**, and another said in a shocked voice 'You're not human, Robert! You're ... You must be an android. And that is your 3D image ... because ONLY androids have holographic models!'

5 Look at the beginnings of six stories (1–6). Which beginnings ...

- a use a dramatic or mysterious opening?
- b use a direct quote to get the reader's attention?
- c describe a detail or a place important for the story?

1 The morning after the brain implant, Zara Jones stretched, **sighed** and got out of bed. When she pulled back the curtains, she realised nothing was the same as it had been yesterday.

2 'Stand against the wall!' **snapped** the home-help droid at the frightened family. The revolution had begun at exactly four minutes past six.

3 Neither of the suns had risen that day and the only light in Milo Haver's apartment came from the communications screen. The extra hours of darkness presented tech-thieves like Milo with a rare opportunity.

4 'Please let me out!' **sobbed** seventeen-year-old Kevin Saunders, but the Saunders' smart-house refused once again.

5 They had been hunting for Robot AI71 for almost a week when they finally found her. She was missing a finger and her battery was critically low.

6 The sensors showed that the child was asleep. His mother remembered switching off his AI toys. So why could she hear **giggling** coming from the bedroom?

6 Match the base forms of the speech verbs in purple in the story and in Exercise 5 with the definitions in the LANGUAGE FOCUS.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Speech verbs

You can make your writing more descriptive and dramatic by using alternatives to say. Use them to describe the way in which the characters speak, or the noises they make to express their emotions.

- 1 breathe in suddenly because you are surprised or in pain = gasp
- 2 say something quietly using your breath rather than your voice = _____
- 3 shout something loudly, to get someone's attention or because you are angry = _____
- 4 speak suddenly in an angry way because you have lost your temper = _____
- 5 laugh quickly in a high voice = _____
- 6 let out a long loud breath because you are sad, relieved, or frustrated = _____
- 7 cry noisily while taking short breaths = _____
- 8 make a high, long, loud noise because you are hurt or afraid = _____



REMEMBER THIS

When you use direct speech in a narrative, the words that are actually spoken should be written inside inverted commas. There should always be a comma, full-stop, question mark or exclamation mark at the end of what is said, and inside the inverted commas.

e.g. 'Something's in there,' whispered one of the girls.
'What is this?' gasped Robert.

7 Read REMEMBER THIS, then choose an appropriate verb from the LANGUAGE FOCUS to complete each sentence. Add inverted commas where necessary.

- 1 'Keep still!' she _____ as quietly as possible, afraid that the hunter-drone might hear us.
- 2 'How long was this going to take?' wondered Leila as she _____ with frustration and told the system to reboot for the third time.
- 3 Tom _____ in terror when he opened the curtains and saw two sets of piercing red eyes staring out of the darkness at him.
- 4 The child's furry AI friend was always making jokes and they would often spend the whole evening _____ together in his room.
- 5 As Marlon _____, pale blue tears ran down his cheeks and into both of his mouths.
- 6 Put the vacuum cleaner on the floor _____ the security guard at the cleaner-bot, and this time it did as it was told.
- 7 Keila _____ with surprise as her feet left the ground and she rose gently to the ceiling.
- 8 'Will you just be quiet!' _____ the pilot at Dee-dee as the light-bike flew towards the clouds.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Do the writing task. Use one of the beginnings in Exercise 5 or your own ideas. Use the WRITING FOCUS and the LANGUAGE FOCUS to help you.

Write a narrative which features a character with artificial intelligence.

- Write when and where the story takes place, and who the main characters are.
- Decide what happens and how the story ends.

7.1 Vocabulary 🔊 4.49

acceptance speech /ək'septəns
,spi:tʃ/
acid /'æsɪd/
addition /ə'dɪʃən/
algorithm /'ælɡərɪðəm/
apply /ə'plai/
atom /'ætəm/
award a prize /ə,wɔ:d ə 'praɪz/
base /beɪs/
become an expert in /bɪ,kʌm ən
'ekspɜ:t ɪn/
calculation /,kælkjə'leɪʃən/
capable of doing sth /'keɪpəbəl əv
,du:ɪŋ ,sʌmθɪŋ/
coin a term /kɔɪn ə tɜ:m/
collaborate with /kə'læbəreɪt wɪð/
collect /kə'lekt/
contribution /,kɒntrə'bju:ʃən/
credit sb with /'kredit ,sʌmbədi wɪð/
discriminate against sb
/dɪ'skrɪmənət ə,ɡenst ,sʌmbədi/
division /də'vɪʒən/
electron /ɪ'lektɹən/
element /'eləmənt/
equation /ɪ'kweɪʒən/
extinct /ɪk'stɪŋkt/
fellow scientists /,feləʊ 'saɪəntɪsts/
fossil /'fɒsəl/
fraction /'frækʃən/
gain recognition /,ɡeɪn ,rekəɡ'nɪʃən/
gender gap /'dʒendə ɡæp/
have access to /,hæv 'ækses tə/
have an aptitude for /,hæv ən
'æptɪtju:d fə/
injustice /ɪn'dʒʌstəs/
make a contribution /,merk ə
,kɒntrə'bju:ʃən/
make reference to/refer to /,merk
'refərəns tə/rɪ'fɜ:tə/
marine reptile /mə'ri:n ,reptail/
molecular structure /mə'lekjələ
,strʌktʃə/
multiplication /,mʌltəplə'keɪʃən/
name sth after sb /'neɪm ,sʌmθɪŋ
,ɑ:ftə ,sʌmbədi/
nucleus /'nju:kliəs/
outer space /'aʊtə speɪs/
periodic table /,pɪəri'ɒdɪk 'teɪbəl/
provided (that) /prə'vaɪdəd (ðæt)/
radioactivity /,reɪdiəʊæktɪvəti/
radiation /,reɪdi'eɪʃən/
receive a mention /rɪ,sɪ:v ə 'menʃən/
recognise an achievement
/,rekəɡnaɪz ən ə'tʃi:vmənt/
relativity /,relə'tɪvəti/
remarkable /rɪ'mɑ:kəbəl/
see the potential /,si: ðə pə'tenʃəl/
subtraction /səb'trækʃən/

supervisor /'su:pəvaɪzə/
theory of relativity /,θɪəri əv
,relə'tɪvəti/
value /'vælju:/
velocity /və'lɒsəti/
win the respect /,wɪn ðə rɪ'spekt/

7.2 Grammar 🔊 4.50

ban /bæn/
bleep /bli:p/
periodically /,pɪəri'ɒdɪkli/
plug /'plʌɡ/
unplug /ʌn'plʌɡ/

7.3 Listening 🔊 4.51

(be) on the rise /,(bi) ɒn ðə 'raɪz/
bring in /,brɪŋ 'ɪn/
come out /,kʌm 'aʊt/
commuter /kə'mju:tə/
distracted /dɪ'stræktɪd/
exit /'egzɪt/
figure /'fɪɡə/
figure sth out /,fɪɡə ,sʌmθɪŋ 'aʊt/
go in for /,ɡəʊ 'ɪn fə/
look up directions /,lʊk ,ʌp
dar'rekʃənz/
moped /'məʊpəd/
motorway /'məʊtəweɪ/
offence /ə'fens/
offender /ə'fendə/
price range /'praɪs ,reɪndʒ/
reveal /rɪ'vi:l/
robbery /'rɒbəri/
route /ru:t/
sat-nav /'sæt nəv/
security measures /sɪ'kjʊərəti ,meʒəz/
stick to /'stɪk tə/
storage /'stɔ:ɪdʒ/
store /stɔ:/
sufficient /sə'fɪʃənt/
take advantage of /,teɪk əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ
əv/
talk sb into /,tɔ:k ,sʌmbədi 'ɪntə/
target /'tɑ:ɡət/
theft /θeft/
throw sth in /,θrəʊ ,sʌmθɪŋ 'ɪn/
top-of-the-range /,tɒp əv ðə 'reɪndʒ/
turn around /,tɜ:n ə'raʊnd/
urge sb to do sth /'ɜ:dʒ ,sʌmbədi tə
'du:, sʌmθɪŋ/
wind sb up /,waɪnd ,sʌmbədi 'ʌp/
word processing /'wɜ:d ,prəʊsesɪŋ/

7.4 Reading 🔊 4.52

advice /əd'vaɪs/
advisable /əd'vaɪzəbəl/
advise /əd'vaɪz/
allergy /'ælədʒi/
apply /ə'plai/

archaea /ɑ:'ki:ə/
asthma /'æsmə/
autism /'ɔ:tɪzəm/
beneficial /,benə'fɪʃəl/
benefit /'benəfɪt/
biodiversity /,baɪəʊdaɪ'vɜ:səti/
boost /bu:st/
cell /sel/
chopping board /'tʃɒpɪŋ ,bɔ:d/
cleanliness /'klenlɪnəs/
community /kə'mju:nəti/
condition /kən'dɪʃən/
depression /dɪ'preʃən/
derived /dɪ'raɪvd/
detach /dɪ'tætʃ/
diabetes /,daɪə'bi:tɪz/
digest /daɪ'dʒest/
digestion /daɪ'dʒestʃən/
digestive system /daɪ'dʒestɪv ,sɪstəm/
essentials /ɪ'sentʃəlz/
excessive /ɪk'sesɪv/
exposed /ɪk'spəʊzd/
fight off /,faɪt 'ɒf/
fingerprint /'fɪŋɡə,prɪnt/
fumes /fju:mz/
fungi /'fʌŋɡi/
genetic factor /dʒə,netɪk 'fæktə/
germ /dʒɜ:m/
grow in number /,ɡrəʊ ɪn 'nʌmbə/
gut /ɡʌt/
harm /hɑ:m/
harmful /'hɑ:mfəl/
hidden away /,hɪdn ə'weɪ/
immune system /ɪ'mju:n ,sɪstəm/
infection /ɪn'fekʃən/
impact /'ɪmpækt/
instant /ɪnstənt/
irritant /ɪrətənt/
linked back to /'lɪŋkt bæk tə/
lung condition /'lʌŋ kən'dɪʃən/
medicate /'medɪkeɪt/
medicinal /mə'dɪsənəl/
medicine /'medsən/
microbe /'maɪkrəʊb/
microbiome /,maɪkrəʊ'baɪəʊm/
nervous system /'nɜ:vəs ,sɪstəm/
nurture /'nɜ:tʃə/
nutrients /'nju:triənts/
obesity /əʊ'bi:səti/
pathogen /'pæθədʒən/
pollen allergy /'pɒlən ,ælədʒi/
provide /prə'vaɪd/
raw /rɔ:/
regulate /'regjələt/
regulation /,regjə'leɪʃən/
regulatory /,regjə'leɪtəri/
respiratory system /rɪ'spɪrətəri
,sɪstəm/
respond /rɪ'spɒnd/

response /rɪ'spɒns/
responsive /rɪ'spɒnsɪv/
rinse /rɪns/
risk of infection /,rɪsk əv ɪn'fekʃən/
rub /rʌb/
saliva /sə'laɪvə/
sanitation /,sænə'teɪʃən/
sanitiser /'sænətaɪzə/
skip /skɪp/
sloppy /'slɒpi/
soil /sɔɪl/
spotless /'spɒtləs/
strike a balance /straɪk ə 'bæləns/
surface /'sɜːfəs/
thoroughly /'θʌrəli/

7.5 Grammar 4.53

advancement /əd'vɑːnsmənt/
breakthrough /'breɪkθruː/
decreasing /dɪ'kriːsɪŋ/
even number /,iːvən 'nʌmbə/
increasing /ɪn'kriːsɪŋ/
invent /ɪn'vent/
leap out /,liːp 'aʊt/
measure /'meɪʒə/
numeral /'njuːməərəl/
odd number /,ɒd 'nʌmbə/
scholar /'skɒlə/
unlimited /ʌn'lɪmɪtəd/
volume /'vɒljʊm/

7.6 Speaking 4.54

artificial intelligence /,ɑːtrɪ'fɪʃəl
 ɪn'telədʒəns/
clarification /,klærəfə'keɪʃən/
exhibition /,eksə'bɪʃən/
fully-automated /,fʊli 'ɔːtəmətəd/
kick back /kɪk bæk/
mind-blowing /'maɪnd ,bləʊɪŋ/
perform an operation /pə'fɔːm ən
 ,ɒpə'reɪʃən/
range of movement /,reɪndʒ əv
 'muːvmənt/
remote /rɪ'məʊt/
robotic surgeon /rəʊ,bɒtɪk 'sɜːdʒən/
scary /'skeəri/
steady /'stedi/

surgical unit /'sɜːdʒɪkəl ,juːnɪt/
voice command /'vɔɪs kə'mɑːnd/

7.7 Use of English 4.55

account for /ə'kaʊnt fə/
actually /'æktʃuəli/
advance /əd'vɑːns/
affect /ə'fekt/
after all /'ɑːftər ɔːl/
alike /ə'laɪk/
alone /ə'ləʊn/
arise /ə'raɪz/
assure /ə'ʃʊə/
breath /breθ/
breathe /briːð/
cite /saɪt/
civilian /sə'vɪljən/
commercial aircraft /kə'mɜːʃəl
 'eəkrɑːft/
comprise /kəm'praɪz/
conscious /'kɒnʃəs/
consist of /kən'sɪst əv/
currently /'kʌrəntli/
data /'deɪtə/
date /deɪt/
dependant /drɪ'pendənt/
dependent /drɪ'pendənt/
desert /'dezət/
dessert /dɪ'zɜːt/
determine /drɪ'tɜːmɪn/
economic /,ekə'nɒmɪk/
economical /,ekə'nɒmɪkəl/
effect /ɪ'fekt/
emigrate /'emɪgreɪt/
ensure /ɪn'ʃʊə/
eventually /ɪ'ventʃuəli/
exact /ɪg'zækt/
finally /'faɪnəli/
gather /'gæðə/
genial /'dʒiːniəl/
historic /hɪ'stɒrɪk/
historical /hɪ'stɒrɪkəl/
ice cap /'aɪs kæp/
immigrate /'ɪmɪgreɪt/
in a nutshell /ɪn ə 'nʌtʃəl/
include /ɪn'kluːd/
insure /ɪn'ʃʊə/

lastly /'lɑːstli/
lately /'leɪtli/
lay /leɪ/
lie /laɪ/
likely /'laɪkli/
locate /ləʊ'keɪt/
lone /ləʊn/
lonely /'ləʊnli/
loose /luːs/
lose /luːz/
migrate /maɪ'greɪt/
occasion /ə'keɪʒən/
opportunity /,ɒpə'tjuːnəti/
practice /'præktɪs/
practise /'præktɪs/
precede /pri'siːd/
principal /'prɪnsəpəl/
principle /'prɪnsəpəl/
proceed /prə'siːd/
rainfall /'reɪnfɔːl/
raise /reɪz/
receiver /rɪ'siːvə/
rise /raɪz/
sensible /'sensəbəl/
sensitive /'sensətɪv/
sight /saɪt/
site /saɪt/
source of gravity /,sɔːs əv 'grævəti/
submarine /'sʌbməriːn/
take sth into account /,teɪk ,sʌmθɪŋ
 ,ɪntə ə'kaʊnt/
weather /'weðə/
whether /'weðə/

7.8 Writing 4.56

basement /'beɪsmənt/
gasp /gɑːsp/
giggle /'gɪɡəl/
glow /gləʊ/
headquarters /'hed,kwɔːtəz/
piercing /'piəriŋ/
scream /skriːm/
sigh /saɪ/
snap /snæp/
sob /sɒb/
whisper /'wɪspə/
yell /jel/

MY WORD LIST

SCIENCE

DOING RESEARCH

OTHER

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

(award coin digest figure wind)

- In 1981, Donna Strickland and Gerard Mourou were _____ the Nobel Prize in Physics.
- It took the team months of trial and error to _____ out the solution to the problem.
- It really _____ me up how people presume Engineering is a 'boys' subject'.
- Grace Hopper was a computer scientist who _____ the term 'debugging'.
- Patients may have trouble _____ certain types of foods.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- Well-balanced meals at school might help to solve the problem of _____ among pupils. **OBESE**
- A simple _____ gives us the average number of pupils per class. **CALCULATE**
- This new technology will be extremely _____ for teaching blind students. **BENEFIT**
- Her innovative designs are gaining _____ internationally. **RECOGNISE**
- It is always _____ to wear safety glasses when handling chemicals. **ADVICE**

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- I'm sure you _____ (show) the results soon.
- Your invention needs _____ (describe) in detail before you submit it to the Patent Office.
- I don't mind _____ (not pay) much for testing video games because I love playing them.
- The spare parts should _____ (deliver) a week ago.
- Mr Jenkins _____ (make/undergo) a stomach operation by his surgeon.

- 4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use passive forms.

- One report argued that the archaeologists had damaged some artefacts during the excavations. It _____ haeologists had damaged some artefacts during the excavations.
- Some writers believe that the lost city of Atlantis existed until the ninth century BC. The lost city of Atlantis _____ until the ninth century BC.
- It's not clear why the lights went out. They say there was a short circuit. It's not clear why the lights went out. There _____ a short circuit.
- The police think that a dangerous hacker has been stealing sensitive data for over a year. A dangerous hacker _____ sensitive data for over a year.

USE OF ENGLISH

- 5 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(breath depend digest economy history respond)



No one likes walking through a busy city during rush hour. There's the noise and the traffic and perhaps worst of all, the pollution. When air pollution levels are high, we all ¹ _____ in tiny particles of substances that are harmful to our health. As an asthma sufferer, for me the effects of air pollution are not just unpleasant, but potentially life-threatening. So, I really welcomed the ² _____ decision by my home city to ban cars from the city centre altogether. It's just one of a growing number of cities taking bold action to reduce air pollution. Of course, politicians are cautious about the ³ _____ impact of banning vehicles from their cities. As a society, we've become ⁴ _____ on road vehicles not just to get around but to transport goods. The health problems associated with pollution, however, also bring huge costs.

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Use up to five words in each gap and make any changes necessary.

- Psychologists (think/establish) _____ a connection between genes and specific types of behaviour, but there isn't enough information available yet.
- When I saw Julia last week, she looked much better, so I guess the treatment she received (must/do/trick) _____.
- My younger brother (not/enjoy/tell) _____ to switch his computer off every evening at 8 p.m.
- A place at the research station (offer/Tiago) _____ after he had become a laureate in a national competition in physics.
- Even primary school pupils (expect/do) _____ many experiments nowadays.
- Ada Lovelace (believe/study) _____ the art of flying when she was twelve.

LISTENING

- 7  3.29 Listen to three recordings and choose the correct answer, A, B or C. You will hear the recordings twice.
- What's the most appropriate headline for this news report?
 - A INTERNET PIRACY ON THE INCREASE AGAIN
 - B NEW LAWS SET TO PUNISH ILLEGAL DOWNLOADERS MORE HARSHLY
 - C ILLEGAL DOWNLOADERS TO RECEIVE NEW KIND OF WARNING
 - Which sentence is NOT true in this situation?
 - A The woman is sure the man will fail his exam.
 - B The woman is concerned about the man's health.
 - C The woman believes the game is affecting the man's moods.
 - Which of the following is stated in the text as a fact, not an opinion?
 - A To connect to the Internet, you should go to settings.
 - B The phone has got some pre-installed applications.
 - C The Wi-Fi option isn't on.

SPEAKING

- 8 Do the task in pairs.

Student A

Together with Student B, you are preparing a school exhibition about important inventions. Start the conversation and mention:

- Inventions included in the exhibition
- Display options
- Extra attractions
- Invitation to the exhibition

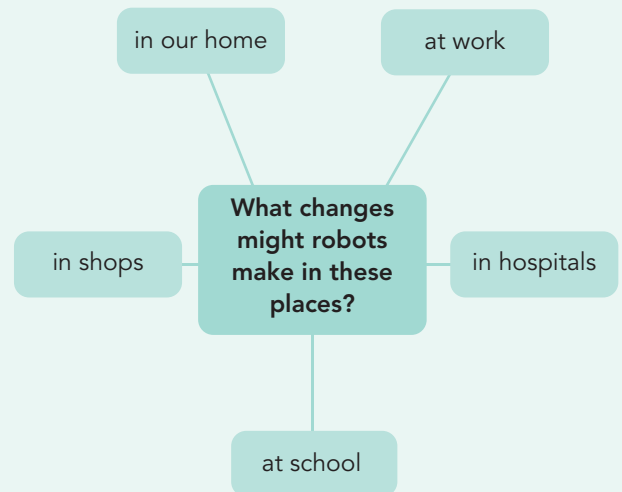
Student B

Use some or all of the following sentences after Student A starts the conversation:

- So, tell me, which inventions should we choose?
- I'm afraid you've lost me there.
- How about making some posters with basic information about them?
- Are you saying that we should just publish the invitation online?

- 9 Look at the diagram. It shows different places where robots might change our lives in the future. In pairs, follow these steps.

- Talk to each other about the changes robots might make in these places.
- Decide in which place robots would help us the most.



- 10 Ask and answer the questions.

- 1 Do you think robots will ever be able to think like human beings?
- 2 What other kinds of technological changes will change our lives in the future?
- 3 Do you think we rely on computers too much? Why?/Why not?
- 4 Some people think Science lessons are boring. How can teachers make them more interesting?
- 5 Some people believe the computer is the most important invention ever. Do you agree?

WRITING

- 11 Read the writing task and write a story.

Write a story featuring modern technology used to solve a problem.

8

Costing the earth

We do not inherit the Earth from our ancestors, we borrow it from our children.

Native American quote



35 Watch the BBC video.
For the worksheet, go to page 146.



VOCABULARY

Nature • environmental issues • landscapes • animals

I can talk about the environment and animals.

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the words from boxes A and B to make collocations.

A climate economic endangered global recycling
renewable solar water

B bins change energy growth panels
shortages species warming

2 Which collocations in Exercise 1 describe problems and which describe solutions? Complete the table.

PROBLEMS

SOLUTIONS

climate change

3 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions.

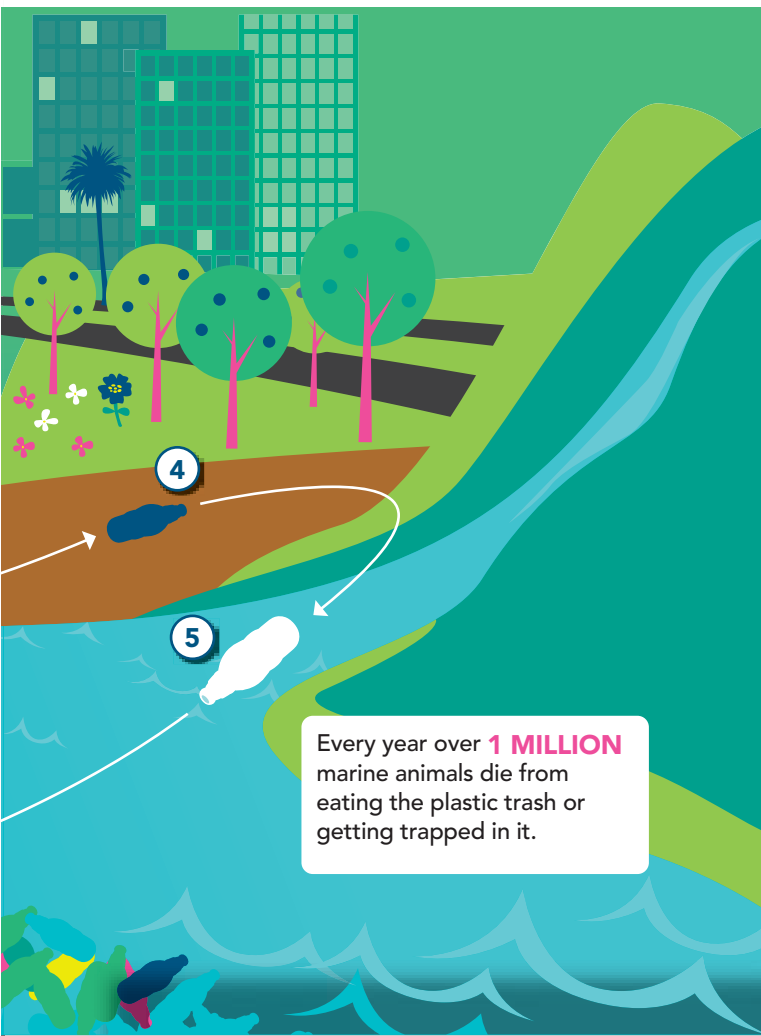
- Are you optimistic or pessimistic about the future of our planet? Why?
- Which environmental problems are the most serious? Which ones have you personally noticed?
- Do you or your family use any of the solutions in Exercise 2? Why/Why not? Are they effective?

The Life Journey of a PLASTIC BOTTLE

Plastic has only existed for around 100 years, but it's everywhere. **70 PERCENT** of plastic water bottles are not recycled.



- 4 Read the infographic. Which statistic is most shocking?
- 5 **3.30** Listen to a commentary on the life journey of a plastic bottle. Why does it use humour and irony?
- 6 **3.30** Match stages of the bottle's journey A-F with places 1-6 on the infographic. Then listen again and check.
- A It remains on the loose and blows across open countryside through **orchards**, **meadows** and **ploughed fields** avoiding farmers and **ditches** if it can. ☐
- B Somebody drinks the liquid and throws the bottle away – it is released into the wild and it begins its migration, avoiding eco-warriors who could lead to their extinction. ☐
- C Eventually it reaches the open sea and joins the thriving population of plastic waste in the Pacific Ocean. ☐
- D A plastics factory is the breeding ground for our plastic bottle. It hatches here and then moves to its natural habitat, the supermarket. ☐
- E In **built-up areas** nowhere is safe – not even parks. Children want to kick it and park wardens want to catch it and put it in captivity. ☐
- F It drops into a **stream** which takes it out of the **foothills** and onto the **plain**. ☐
- 7 **SPEAKING** Discuss how much plastic you and your family throw away in a typical week and how you could cut down on plastic waste.



WORD STORE 8A Environmental issues

- 8 **3.31** Complete WORD STORE 8A with the words in the box. Then listen and repeat.
- 9 **SPEAKING** Complete the statements with an appropriate word or phrase in WORD STORE 8A.
- The Great Pacific Garbage Patch is one of five such 'patches' in the oceans and they are doing _____.
 - 40 percent of all plastic produced is _____ used in packaging. Most of it is not recycled.
 - 1 million plastic drinks bottles are sold every minute. None of them are _____.
 - Plastic trash causes serious _____ of the _____. By 2050, oceans will contain more plastic than fish.
 - _____ such as Greenpeace use spectacular methods to protest against climate change.

WORD STORE 8B Landscapes

- 10 **3.32** Label the pictures in WORD STORE 8B with the words in red in Exercise 6. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 11 **SPEAKING** Take it in turns to explain the difference in meaning between the following words.
- a built-up area/open countryside
 - a foothill/a mountain
 - a stream/a river
 - an orchard/a forest
 - a meadow/a ploughed field
 - a desert/a plain
 - a ditch/a canal

WORD STORE 8C Animals

- 12 **3.33** Complete WORD STORE 8C with the underlined words and phrases in Exercise 6. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 13 Complete the animal fact file with the words or phrases in WORD STORE 8C.

Did you know ...?

- There are only about 3,900 tigers living in the wild now and facing ¹ _____. About 10,000 are kept in ² _____.
- The Arctic tern makes the longest ³ _____ of any bird. Every year it flies nearly 71,000 km from its ⁴ _____ grounds in the Arctic to the Antarctic and back.
- In the 1980s only a few giant pandas remained in the wild. The Chinese government took action to protect their natural ⁵ _____ and there is now a ⁶ _____ population of over 2,000.
- The emperor penguin lays one egg which takes more than two months to ⁷ _____. During that time it lives through Antarctic temperatures of minus 40 degrees Celsius and wind speeds of over 200 km/h.

8.2

GRAMMAR

Unreal past and regrets – *wish*, *if only*, *it's time* and *would rather*

I can talk about present or future wishes and past regrets and use phrases with it's time and 'd rather.



- 1 SPEAKING** Discuss your vision of an ideal holiday and a nightmare holiday.
- 2 3.34** Listen to the Moss family discussing what to do for their next holiday. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What suggestions do they make?
 - 2 What do you think they will probably do?
- 3 3.34** Who said what? Write B for Ben, E for Ellie, M for Mum and D for Dad. Then listen again and check.
 - 1 'If only we could go somewhere exciting for a change.' ☐
 - 2 'I think it's time we did something cultural.' ☐
 - 3 'I wish you all realised how much I look forward to doing nothing for two weeks.' ☐
 - 4 'I d rather we went to the same campsite we went to last year.' ☐
- 4** Read GRAMMAR FOCUS I and answer the questions about the sentences in Exercise 3.
 - 1 Which sentences refer to the present and which to the future?
 - 2 Which tense is used after the underlined structures?

GRAMMAR FOCUS I 36

Unreal past

- You use **wish/if only + sb + Past Simple** to say that somebody really wants a present or future situation to be different.
- You use **it's (high) time + sb + Past Simple** to say that somebody should do something (now or in the future).
- You use **would rather + sb + Past Simple** to say what somebody would prefer somebody else to do (now or in the future).

- 5** Complete the second sentence so it has a similar meaning to the first. Which sentences are true for you?
 - 1 It isn't summer. I wish it was summer.
 - 2 We always go to the mountains, but I prefer the sea. I'd rather we _____.
 - 3 I ought to learn how to ski. It's time I _____.
 - 4 I can't drive. I wish I _____.
 - 5 I really need to plan my next holiday. It's high time I _____.
 - 6 It's raining. If only it _____.

- 6 3.35** Listen to the Moss family talking after their holiday. Choose the correct option to explain the meaning of these extracts.
 - 1 'If only I'd worn more sunscreen.' = Ellie wore / *didn't wear* enough sunscreen.
 - 2 'I wish I hadn't forgotten my camera.' = Ben *had* / *didn't have* his camera with him.
 - 3 'I wish you'd fallen in, too, Ben.' = Ben *fell out* / *didn't fall out* of the raft with Ellie.
 - 4 'I just wish I'd known about the mosquitoes.' = Mum *knew* / *didn't know* that there were mosquitoes.
- 7** Look at the example phrases in Exercise 6 and choose the correct tense in the rule in GRAMMAR FOCUS II.

GRAMMAR FOCUS II 36

Past regrets

You use **wish/if only + sb + Past Simple / Past Perfect** to talk about past regrets.

If only I'd worn more sunscreen.

I wish I hadn't forgotten my camera.

Note: *If only* is much stronger than *wish*.

- 8** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Do you have any of these regrets?
 - 1 I wish I had gone (go) on holiday with my friends last summer.
 - 2 If only I _____ (revise) more for my last English test.
 - 3 I wish my parents _____ (be born) in another country.
 - 4 I wish I _____ (not give up) piano lessons a few years ago.
 - 5 If only I _____ (go) to bed earlier last night.
- 9** Complete the sentences to make them true for you. Then compare with a partner.
 - 1 I wish I could ...
 - 2 It's high time I ...
 - 3 I'd rather people didn't ...
 - 4 If only I hadn't ...
 - 5 I wish my parents ...

FOCUS VLOG 37 About regrets

37 Watch the Focus Vlog. For the worksheet, go to page 147.

8.3

LISTENING

Note completion

I can identify the main points in a lecture about intelligent animals.

- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss which adjectives in the box you would use to describe the animals in the pictures.

affectionate agile aggressive
competitive friendly gentle
harmless independent intelligent
loyal playful social stupid wise



- 2 **3.36** Decide whether you think the statements below are true (T) or false (F). Then listen to a wildlife expert and check your ideas.

- 1 Chimpanzees share half of the same genes as humans. ☐
2 Dolphins sometimes attack each other. ☐
3 Cats have more developed brains than dogs. ☐

EXAM FOCUS Note completion

- 3 **3.36** Listen to the lecture again and complete sentences 1–7 with a word or a short phrase.

- 1 Dr Mathews is talking about the _____ animal species on Earth.
2 The reason why chimpanzees attack and often kill some of their own kind is the need _____.
3 Dolphins are capable of fighting aggressively when they compete to win over _____.
4 Not only are sheep intelligent, but they also have great memory and highly developed _____.
5 Dr Mathews says _____ can be misleading, and owls are a good example.
6 Cats' unsociability is often associated with the fact that, unlike dogs', their _____ have not developed for centuries.
7 According to the speaker, cats' indifference to pleasing their owners results from the fact that they simply don't care for human _____.

WORD STORE 8D Word building

- 4 **3.37** Complete WORD STORE 8D. Use the prompts below to help you. Then listen, check and repeat.
- 1 a period of time in teenagers' lives when they are developing into adults
2 showing very strong desire to be more successful than others
3 an idea that is wrong, but people believe it because they don't understand the issue properly
4 appearing to be one thing, but being in fact very different
5 almost certainly
6 an opinion people have of something or someone based on what happened in the past
7 to look like or be like something or someone else
8 considered to be less important than it really is

- 5 Complete the text with the words in WORD STORE 8D.

Bird-brained or highly intelligent?

We know it's a common ¹ _____ to think that owls are wise. In fact, they're rather stupid. But what about other birds, do they deserve the same ² _____? Many scientists are convinced that the intelligence of some birds has been seriously ³ _____. Take the crow family. Crows are ⁴ _____ top of the list when it comes to brain power. They perform even better than chimpanzees in some research tests. It just shows that appearances can be ⁵ _____. Not all birds are bird-brained – in the same way that not all humans are intelligent!



- 6 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions.

- 1 Which domesticated animal do you think is most/least useful to society? Why?
2 How could wild animals be better protected? Is it ever OK to keep them in captivity?
3 Do you know any organisations, international or local, which help to protect animals and nature? Can you give examples of their activities?

PRONUNCIATION FOCUS

- 7 **3.38** Listen and repeat these word pairs.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1 sheep /ʃi:p/ | ship /ʃɪp/ |
| 2 keys /ki:z/ | kiss /kɪs/ |
| 3 cats /kæts/ | cuts /kʌts/ |
| 4 prove /pru:v/ | proof /pru:f/ |
| 5 bag /bæg/ | back /bæk/ |

- 8 **3.39** Listen and write down the five words in Exercise 7 that you hear.

- 9 Choose five words from Exercise 7 and take turns to dictate them to your partner. Check the words. Has your partner written the correct words?

1 **SPEAKING** Think about the most extreme weather conditions you have ever experienced. Tell your partner where you were, what you were doing and how extreme the weather was.

2 **3.40** Look at the words and phrases below. Translate them using a dictionary if necessary. Then listen and repeat.

- 1 **avalanche** = _____
- 2 **blizzard** = _____
- 3 **drought** = _____
- 4 **earthquake** = _____
- 5 **gale-force winds** = _____
- 6 **hurricane** = _____
- 7 **tsunami** = _____
- 8 **wildfire** = _____

3 Complete the gaps with the words in Exercise 2 and then finish each piece of news in an appropriate way.

- 1 The _____, measuring 7.4 on the Richter scale, lasted for seven seconds, but ...
- 2 Roofs were blown off and cars overturned in the latest _____ to hit the coast of ...
- 3 It has already been fifteen weeks since the _____ began. All the water holes have dried up and ...
- 4 Fishing villages were destroyed by the latest _____, as a thirty-metre wall of water ...
- 5 Fire fighters are trying to prevent the _____ from spreading any further by ...
- 6 Heavy snowfall has led to a high risk of _____ and skiers have been warned ...
- 7 Not only drivers had problems during yesterday's _____. A group of young hikers from the local college lost their way in the snow due to poor visibility and ...

4 **SPEAKING** Discuss when and where the natural disasters in Exercise 2 might occur:

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| a in your region | c on your continent |
| b in your country | d elsewhere in the world. |

5 **SPEAKING** Look at the photos in the film blog and discuss the questions.

- 1 Which of these films, if any, have you seen?
- 2 What is each film about and what do they have in common?
- 3 Which words in Exercise 2 would you associate with each film?

3.41

FILM BLOG

THIS WEEK'S THEME: DISASTER MOVIES BASED ON TRUE STORIES

The subject of this week's Film Blog is natural disasters. Here are four films, all based on true stories, that will have you sitting on the edge of your seat! NB: The summaries contain SPOILERS!

A EVEREST

1 *Everest* tells the story of an attempt to reach the summit of Mount Everest in 1996. Several teams of climbers encounter a severe blizzard and eight climbers die, including two expedition leaders.

5 Once the climbers depart the base camp and **begin the ascent**, the film becomes **a gripping tale** of survival, life and death. When they **begin their descent** the blizzard hits. Climbers are blinded in the snowstorm and can see no more than thirty centimetres in front of them. It is best not to move in a whiteout, but if you stay still on Everest, you'll freeze to death. With gale-force winds of 160 kilometres per hour, and a lack of oxygen, the climbers fight for their lives. The **severe weather conditions** make rescue impossible.

15 The special effects make you feel as though you are right there with the climbers. During filming on Everest, an avalanche struck, killing sixteen Sherpa guides – a harsh reminder that Everest is one of the most dangerous places on Earth.

In films like *Everest*, it's difficult to feel sorry for the characters. If they want to take risks by climbing mountains, it's up to them. Not my problem. **Ada**

B ADRIFT

There are few forces on Earth more deadly than a Category 4 hurricane. At its centre, a Category 4 generates winds of over 200 km/h and waves up to thirty metres in height. *Adrift* begins with Californian Tami Oldham waking up on her yacht after being unconscious for some time. She searches the boat for her British fiancé Richard Sharp, and soon realises he must have been **swept overboard** during the hurricane.

25 The film then goes back to five months before the hurricane when Tami and Richard are hired to deliver a luxury yacht from Tahiti to San Diego, 6,500 kilometres away. Two weeks into the voyage, they hear on the radio that a huge **storm is brewing** on their route, so they change course. Meanwhile, Hurricane Raymond changes direction unexpectedly, and they end up sailing straight into the eye of the storm.

30 The yacht is battered by twelve-metre waves and Tami wakes up alone. Then she spots Richard in the water. When she manages to save him, she realises that he has **life-threatening injuries**. So she has to repair the boat and reach Hawaii. The unexpected twist is when Tami realises that Richard is actually a hallucination. At the end of the film, she is eventually rescued by a Japanese boat after being all alone aboard the yacht for forty-one days.

When I saw *Adrift*, I couldn't help wondering whether I'd be able to survive on my own, lost at sea. I'm not sure. 41 days is a long time. **Fred**

- 6 **SPEAKING** Read the reviews on the blog and check your ideas in Exercise 5. Which film would you like to see the most/least and why?

EXAM FOCUS Matching

- 7 Read the reviews again. Match texts A–D with statements 1–6. Two texts have two matching statements.

In this film

- 1 the special effects led to difficult filming conditions for the actors. ☐
- 2 the director gave the characters their own voice. ☐
- 3 the main characters take action to try and avoid the disaster. ☐
- 4 the actors witnessed another disaster while making the film. ☐
- 5 the characters are not expecting the disaster. ☐
- 6 the characters are starving due to man-made problems. ☐

WORD STORE 8E Collocations

- 8 **3.42** Complete WORD STORE 8E with the words in blue in the reviews. Then listen, check and repeat.

- 9 Answer the questions about the blog reviews using the collocations in WORD STORE 8E.

A

- 1 What phrase does the reviewer use to describe the type of story told by the film?
- 2 When did the climbers' problems start?

- 3 Why are rescuers unable to help the climbers?

B

- 1 What do Tami and Richard hear on the radio to make them change course?
- 2 What does Tami assume happened to her boyfriend during the hurricane?
- 3 In Tami's hallucination, where does she see Richard and what is wrong with him?

C

- 1 What does a large part of the film focus on?
- 2 How does the reviewer describe the conditions in which the actors had to perform?

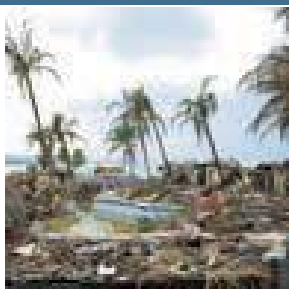
D

- 1 What problems confronting William's village does the film investigate?
- 2 Despite the problems, how does the film end and why?

- 10 **SPEAKING** Read the four comments under the reviews and discuss whether you agree with the views. Give reasons for your answers.

C THE IMPOSSIBLE

The film is based on the story of a Spanish family who went on a Christmas holiday to Khao Lak in Thailand in 2004 and were caught up in the tsunami that hit Southeast Asia, killing 230,000 people in fourteen countries.



The filming of the tsunami itself is spectacular and uses a mixture of digital effects and real waves filmed in slow motion in a water tank.

Most of the film deals with the aftermath of the tsunami and the **agony suffered** by the family when they are split up and have no idea whether the others have survived.

In the film, the family are British, with Naomi Watts and Ewan McGregor giving honest and compassionate performances as the parents of three young boys. The director, Juan Antonio Bayona, wanted the film to be as realistic as possible, so the actors had to spend five weeks of **physically demanding** filming in a massive water tank.

The Impossible tells a captivating true story in which survival, society, family ties and human kindness all shine through.

The Impossible is an amazing film, but it made me question how sensible it is to develop tourism in areas that are likely to suffer natural disasters. Isn't it too risky? **Boris**

D THE BOY WHO HARNESSSED THE WIND

Set in Africa, the film tells the story of Malawian inventor William Kamkwamba. When he was just fourteen years old, he saved his family and village from famine by building an electricity-generating windmill from spare parts, working from rough plans he found in a library book. The film explores a community facing **extreme poverty and hunger**. Although the Kamkwamba family is struggling to survive, the parents do their best to focus on their children's education, but William is forced to leave school when the family can no longer afford the school fees.

The film is directed by and stars Chiwetel Ejiofor who spent a decade getting to know the Malawi people and learning their language. He uses subtitles so that the characters in the film mostly speak Chichewa, the Malawian language, and this is one of the reasons why the characters are so believable.

Drought and the underlying issues of deforestation, colonialism and climate change are dealt with in detail. But the movie ends **on a positive note**, with science-obsessed William Kamkwamba saving his village, bringing them electricity and more importantly, water.

95



The Boy Who Harnessed the Wind shows yet again how unfair life is and how important it is for rich countries to help people in poor countries to survive. **Jessica**

8.5

GRAMMAR

Emphasis – cleft sentences and inversion

I can use a variety of sentence structures to change the emphasis.

- 1  Read and listen to a conversation between two friends. Why does Will get angry?

Will: I've been watching a programme about extreme weather events – interesting but very scary! **What they did was show** the effects of some recent floods where people had lost absolutely everything. **Rarely have I seen** such devastating scenes. **What I find shocking is that** some people still believe that humans have nothing to do with climate change.

Emma: I don't think you can blame humans.

Will: What? **It's those kind of comments that** really annoy me. How can you say that?

Emma: **All I'm saying is that** there's no link between carbon emissions and climate change. **What's happened is that** scientists have invented global warming so they can get more funding.

Will: Are you serious?! **Not only are you** making ridiculous accusations, **but** you don't even know the basic facts. Of course it's carbon emissions that are to blame for global warming.

- 2 Read and complete the GRAMMAR FOCUS with the words in blue in Exercise 1.

GRAMMAR FOCUS 38

Emphasis – cleft sentences and inversion

There are a variety of ways in which you can change the emphasis in a sentence.

- Cleft sentences:** 'divide' a sentence by adding a clause to emphasise key information.
What's happened is (that) scientists have invented ...
 (= Scientists have invented ...)
What they ² _____ was (to) show the effects of ...
 (= They showed the effects of ...)
³ _____ **I find shocking is (that)** ... (= I find it shocking (that) ...)
⁴ _____ **those kind of comments that** ... (= Those kind of comments ...)
⁵ _____ **I'm saying is (that)** ... (= I'm just saying (that) ...)
- Inversion: negative expression (never, rarely, not only etc.) + auxiliary verb + subject (formal).**
⁶ _____ **have I seen** ... (= I have rarely seen ...)
⁷ _____ **are you** making ridiculous accusations, **but** you don't even know the basic facts. (= You are making ... and you don't even know ...)



- 3 Rewrite the sentences using the structures from the GRAMMAR FOCUS and the words in capitals.

- Will and Emma had an argument. **HAPPENED**
What happened was (that) Will and Emma had an argument.
- Will (not Emma) started talking about climate change. **IT**
- Will told Emma how strongly he felt. **DID**
- Emma only suggested that you couldn't blame humans. **ALL**
- Will couldn't believe Emma's views on scientists. **WHAT**
- Will hadn't ever heard such ridiculous accusations. **NEVER**

- 4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(all are do does has is it's what)

- It's the gases from industrialisation that have caused the greenhouse effect.
 - What scientists _____ is analyse air that's 800,000 years old, trapped under the ice in Antarctica.
 - Never _____ there been more carbon dioxide in the atmosphere than there is now.
 - _____ happened was that average temperatures rose by one degree Celsius last century.
 - Not only _____ we observing a rise in sea levels, but also many more extreme weather events.
 - If we don't act now, _____ we're doing is creating problems for future generations.
- 5 Make sentences from the prompts. Begin with the underlined words.
- worry about most / I / is / global warming / What
 - I / money / my next birthday / All / for / want / is
 - it gets dark so early / What / winter / I / about / that / hate / is
 - most / the food / What / I / my country / about / love / is
 - who / in our house / the cooking / my father / does / It's
 - to do / What / buy a laptop / is / want / I
 - my clothes / to any of my friends / Under no circumstances / lend / would I
- 6 **SPEAKING** Discuss which sentences in Exercise 5 are true for you. Give reasons for your answers. Make more true sentences with the same sentence beginnings.
What I worry about most is ...

8.6

SPEAKING

Giving a presentation

I can introduce new information during a presentation.

1 **SPEAKING** Follow the instructions below.

- 1 In pairs, make a list of well-known natural wonders.
- 2 Compare your list with another pair of students.
- 3 In groups of four, discuss which of the places you have visited or would like to visit.

2 Look at the photo. Then describe it using the words in the box.

(cave/cavern crystal geologists
minerals underground)

3 3.44 You are going to listen to a presentation about the Giant Crystal Cave. How does the information below relate to the topic? Listen and check.

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 the year 2000 | 4 58 degrees Celsius |
| 2 half a million years | 5 ten minutes |
| 3 fifty-five tons | |

4 3.44 Complete the SPEAKING FOCUS with the words in the box. Then listen again and check.

(aware during familiar free
realise ~~wondered~~)

SPEAKING FOCUS

Introducing the topic

Have you ever thought about/considered/ ¹wondered how/why/what, etc. ...?

²_____ my/this presentation, I plan to tell you about ...

You may be wondering why I've chosen to talk about ... today. Well, let me explain ...

Introducing familiar information

We are (probably) all ³_____ with ...

You may be ⁴_____ that ...

You may already know that ...

Perhaps you have heard of/about ...

Introducing surprising information

Most people aren't aware/don't ⁵_____ that ...
... but, did you know that ...?

You might not know that ...

Finishing your presentation

OK, that's all from me.

Thank you for listening.

I hope you found the presentation interesting. If anyone has any questions, please feel ⁶_____ to ask now.



Giant Crystal Cave

5 Complete the extracts from presentations with words and phrases from the SPEAKING FOCUS.

- 1 You may be _____ why I've chosen to talk about Ha Long Bay in Vietnam today. Well, let me explain.
- 2 You may already _____ that Wolin, an island in Poland, is home to around 200 bird species.
- 3 Perhaps you have _____ of Table Mountain in South Africa. It rises high above the city of Cape Town.
- 4 We are probably all familiar with the Dolomite Mountains in northeastern Italy, but most people aren't that _____ this mountain range was added to the UNESCO World Heritage list in 2009.
- 5 Thanks for listening. If _____ has any questions, please feel free to ask now.

6 Choose which is the correct piece of advice for each pair of tips on giving presentations.

- 1 a Speak with a clear voice at a natural speed.
b Speak more loudly and a little more slowly than normal.
- 2 a Look at a point just above the audience.
b Make eye contact with members of the audience.
- 3 a Ask the audience questions to keep them involved.
b Don't ask the audience questions.
- 4 a Write a script and read out every word when you present.
b Have some notes with you when you present, but don't read them out.
- 5 a If you forget something, keep going. Nobody knows what you were planning to say anyway!
b If you forget something, say sorry and finish the presentation.
- 6 a When you finish, thank the audience and sit down.
b When you finish, thank the audience and invite questions.

7 Prepare a presentation on a natural wonder. Follow the steps below.

- Select a natural wonder that interests you.
- Do some research and plan your presentation.
- Find some interesting photographs to illustrate the presentation, if possible.
- Select useful language from the SPEAKING FOCUS.
- Learn and practise your presentation.
- Give your presentation to the class. Follow the advice in Exercise 6.

1 Think about how the weather affects human behaviour. Choose the option you think is correct.

- 1 Rainy / Sunny weather makes you sleepy.
- 2 Rainy / Sunny weather makes you hungry.
- 3 Rainy / Sunny weather makes you more violent.
- 4 Calm / Stormy weather makes children hyperactive.
- 5 Dull / Sunny weather makes your memory better.
- 6 Rainy / Sunny weather makes you feel comforted.

2 Read the blog and check your ideas in Exercise 1.



HOW WEATHER AFFECTS HUMAN BEHAVIOUR

Are you **incapable** of getting up in the morning? That may be because it's raining, and the absence of sunlight causes the sleep hormone melatonin to be **overactive**. Heavy rain can also make you hungry. When it's cloudy, the hormone serotonin decreases, and you need more carbohydrates.

The effect of rain on crime rates cannot be **underestimated**. A *New York Times* investigation found that crimes committed on dry days far **outnumber** those committed in bad weather because people (including criminals) are **unwilling** to go out in the rain. Perhaps we should **reconsider** our negative opinion of British weather in the light of these statistics!

High temperatures on the other hand have long been linked with an **upturn** in violence. Raised temperatures cause an increase in heart rates and people are less able to control their temper.

Another study concluded that the behaviour of children can predict when a storm is brewing. When the barometer hits **pre-storm** lows, children become **hyperactive** and start **misbehaving**. One theory is that the positive electrical forces in the atmosphere increase blood pressure and cause **antisocial** behaviour.

An Australian study shows that sunshine can affect our mental sharpness: it may seem **illogical**, but it has been proven that people think better on days when the sky is grey. A selection of shoppers saw ten **unusual** objects in the checkout area of a shop and were asked to recall the objects later. Shoppers on cloudy days could remember them better than shoppers on sunny days.

Ending on a positive note, it's not all bad news for rain. If your emotions are **off-balance** or you're feeling **off-colour**, the sound of raindrops can be comforting. So if it's raining where you are, the best thing is to curl up and have a nap.

3 Read and complete the LANGUAGE FOCUS with the examples in blue in the blog.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Prefixes

Prefixes can be added to the same root word to create different words. For example from the root word *use* you can form **reuse** and **misuse**.

Prefix	Meaning	Examples
un- in- dis- il- im- ir-	not (mainly adjectives)	¹ incapable , ² _____ , ³ _____ , ⁴ _____
un- dis-	opposite (mainly verbs)	undo, disallow
re-	do again	remarry, ⁵ _____
hyper-	extremely	⁶ _____ , hypersensitive
mis-	bad(ly), wrong(ly)	⁷ _____ , misinformation
multi-	many or several	multicultural
off-/on-	not the case/ a place where ...	⁸ _____ , ⁹ _____ / onstage
out-	more than or better	¹⁰ _____ , outdo
over-/under-	too much/ not enough	¹¹ _____ / ¹² _____
anti-/pro-	against/in favour	¹³ _____ / pro-democracy
pre-/post-	before/after	¹⁴ _____ / post-match
self-	done to/by yourself	self-esteem, self-obsessed
sub-	inferior or lower	substandard
up-/down-	increase or improve/become worse	¹⁵ _____ /downturn

4 Look the example words in the table. Does your language have similar prefixes?

5 Work out the meaning of the words in the box. Then choose three words and write example sentences for them.

antinuclear misjudge multipurpose
overpaid pre-election self-awareness
uncontrollable understaffed

I believe self-awareness can be learned.

- 6 Match the words in the box with the correct prefixes to make twelve new words. What spelling rules can you work out for *il-*, *im-* and *ir-*?

adequate approve aware believe
capable legal literate mature
probable relevant responsible safe

- 1 dis- _____, _____ 4 in- _____, _____
2 il- _____, _____ 5 ir- _____, _____
3 im- _____, _____ 6 un- _____, _____

- 7 Rewrite the sentences so they have the opposite meaning by changing the underlined word. Which statements do you agree with?

- 1 It's probable that people will live on Mars one day.
- 2 The money I get from my parents is adequate.
- 3 It ought to be legal to cycle without a helmet.
- 4 Most people would describe me as responsible.
- 5 The roads in my country are really safe.
- 6 Doctors are underpaid for the job they do.
- 7 People who are pro-nuclear don't understand the dangers.
- 8 Pre-match interviews with footballers are boring.

- 8 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the two comments about the blog with the correct form of the words in brackets.

I don't like winter. I suffer from low (**ESTEEM**)

¹ _____ and I fall out with friends because I'm very (**SOCIAL**) ² _____. I'm (**CAPABLE**)

³ _____ of getting up in the morning and I know that my work is (**STANDARD**) ⁴ _____ because I lack concentration. I need sunshine to feel alive.

Jonny

All this weather stuff is (**RELEVANT**) ⁵ _____ for people like me. I work all day in a shop, I travel to work and back by bus and I go to the gym in the evening. I'm totally (**AWARE**) ⁶ _____ of the weather most of the time!

Julie

- 9 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete another two comments about the blog with the correct forms of the words in the box.

balance comfortable controllable
able obsessed sensitive

Personally, I'm ¹ _____ to changes in the weather. I find the transition from one season to another particularly ² _____. For a couple of weeks I don't feel like myself – I feel ³ _____ and ⁴ _____ to concentrate. Then I go back to normal again.

Emma

It really annoys me when people say the weather affects them. These people think it's all about them! They're ⁵ _____ and I get an ⁶ _____ desire to shout 'It's not the weather – it's just another excuse to talk about yourself!'.

Tim

- 10 **SPEAKING** Read the comments in Exercises 8 and 9 again. Which do you agree or disagree with? Discuss how the weather affects your behaviour or how you feel.

- 11 **SPEAKING** Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in capitals. Then discuss whether you share any of these worries.

I worry about ...

- 1 jobs. Youth _____ is a big problem in my country.

EMPLOY

- 2 the environment. People should use more _____ energy. **NEW**

- 3 the media. There is too much _____ you can't trust anybody. **INFORM**

- 4 health. There aren't enough doctors. Our hospitals are _____. **STAFF**

- 5 politics. There has been a _____ in the numbers of people who vote in elections. If you can vote, you should. **TURN**

- 6 our society. I think it should be more diverse and more _____. **CULTURE**

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT UNITS 1–8

- 12 **USE OF ENGLISH** Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between two and five words including the word in capitals.

- 1 Could you tell me when the conference starts?

WONDERING

I _____ you could tell me when the conference starts.

- 2 My parents are both extremely clever and I can't overestimate how much they've taught me. **HIGHLY**
Both of my _____ and I can't overestimate how much they've taught me.

- 3 I'm not allowed to use my electronic devices after 10 p.m. **BANNED**

I'm _____ my electronic devices after 10 p.m.

- 4 In my class, all the students turn off their phones in school time. **WHOLE**

The _____ turn off their phones in school

- 5 My last birthday wasn't as good as I expected and I was disappointed. **LETDOWN**

My last birthday was a bit _____ and I was disappointed.

- 6 I get very short of breath when I run for more than five minutes. **BREATHE**

I _____ when I run for more than five minutes.

- 7 My brother is so broad-shouldered that it's difficult to find tops to fit him. **SUCH**

My brother _____ that it's difficult to find tops to fit him.

- 8 I think football players earn too much for what they do. **ARE**

I think football players _____ for what they do.

I can write a formal letter using a variety of linking devices.

1 SPEAKING Discuss the questions. Use the collocations in the box.

- 1 Why are some areas made into national parks?
- 2 Describe a well-known national park you know.

cultural heritage diverse landscapes
environmental impact natural beauty
sustainable tourism wildlife protection

2 SPEAKING Read Alice's comment in *Young Traveller* magazine. Do you agree with her point of view? Why?/Why not?

3 Read Nick's letter to the magazine in response to Alice's comments. Why does he choose to write about Zakynthos? Would you like to visit the island? Why?/Why not?

HAVE YOUR SAY ...

Last month we asked you: Is enough being done to protect the natural environment in popular tourist destinations?

ALICE, 17, WROTE:

I'm a nature lover and it seems to me that governments and tour operators care mainly about the money that tourism generates and not about the negative impact that visitors have on natural environments. Development of facilities for tourists often takes priority over protection of areas of natural beauty and local wildlife, and not enough is done to establish national parks or develop tourism responsibly.

NICK, 18, WROTE:

Dear Editor,

- 1** I am contacting you after reading Alice's comments in January's *Young Traveller* magazine. Although I understand Alice's concerns, I would like to point out that there are tourist resorts where a great deal is being done to promote wildlife protection and preserve natural beauty.
- 2** Having just returned from a holiday to beautiful Zakynthos, I have personally seen sustainable tourism in action. Zakynthos is a picturesque Greek island surrounded by turquoise waters. In the southern part of the island lies the Bay of Laganas, a major nesting area for the Loggerhead Sea Turtle. The island's natural environment is vital to its success as a tourist destination, yet it is only relatively recently that the authorities have begun to protect it.
- 3** Under pressure from environmental groups, the Greek government made parts of the coastline into a marine national park in 1999. As a result, strict rules for tourists have been introduced on and near the beach. Walking on the beach is allowed only very close to the sea. Vehicles and artificial lights (e.g. torches) are banned on the beach.

Similarly, speedboats are so disruptive that they are not permitted close to the beach. Despite the importance of tourism to Zakynthos, it is not actually possible to visit the beaches after sunset. While tourists can visit some of the nesting beaches during the day, they cannot get close to or touch the cages protecting the nests, leave rubbish or light fires. Having said this, the turtles continue to be a major tourist attraction.

- 4** The situation in Zakynthos is not perfect; nevertheless, it is undeniable that the negative impacts of tourism have been reduced and the turtles continue to lay their eggs there. To my mind, the island proves that some tourist destinations are concerned about more than just money. Perhaps the positive example set by Zakynthos could trigger other resorts to care more for their natural environments.

Yours faithfully,

Nick Mason

4 Answer the questions. Then study the WRITING FOCUS and check your ideas.

- 1 In which section(s) does Nick:
 - a support his opinion with examples?
 - b summarise his opinion then make a final comment?
 - c give a reason for writing and opinion on the topic?
- 2 Why doesn't Nick use contracted forms (*it's*, *there's*, *can't*, etc.), abbreviations or informal language in his letter?

WRITING FOCUS

A letter to an editor

A letter to an editor is written in response to an article you have read or a film or programme you have watched. It should be formal in style and contain the following elements:

Introduction

- Your reason for writing and your point of view on the topic.

Body paragraphs

- Support for your point of view, further opinions and examples.

Conclusion

- A summary of your opinion and a recommendation or final comment.

- 5 Complete the headings in LANGUAGE FOCUS I with the words in the box.

cause and result **concession**
certainty consequences reason

LANGUAGE FOCUS I

Formal language – review

- Express ¹ concession

Although/Even though I understand Alice's concerns, I would like to point out that ...

Despite/In spite of the importance to tourism of Zakynthos, it is not actually possible to visit the beaches after sunset ...

- Express ² _____ formally using participle clauses

Having just returned from a holiday to beautiful Zakynthos, I have personally seen ...

Being a responsible tourist, I am happy to follow the rules.

- Express ³ _____

Speed boats are so disruptive that they are not permitted.

Litter became such a problem that the area was closed.

- Express ⁴ _____

It is undeniable that/There is no doubt that the negative impacts of tourism have been reduced.

Undeniably/Undoubtedly, there is still work to be done.

Without (a) doubt, the situation is improving.

- Describe ⁵ _____

As a result/consequence, strict rules for tourists have been introduced.

The result/consequence/outcome of (such a decision/choice) is that the turtles are left in peace.

This could trigger other resorts to care more about their natural environments.

This could lead to/result in other destinations introducing similar schemes.

- 6 Which words from Nick's letter complete LANGUAGE FOCUS II correctly?

LANGUAGE FOCUS II

Expressing comparison and contrast

While/Whereas many parts of the forest are protected, others are not.

Some tourists behave responsibly **while/whereas** others do not.

That said/ _____ **said this**, the turtles remain a major tourist attraction.

The situation is not perfect; ² _____ **/even so** it is undeniable that the negative impacts of tourism have been reduced.

Introducing unexpected or surprising contrasts

The island's natural environment is vital to its success as a tourist destination, ³ _____ it is only relatively recently that the authorities have begun to protect it.

Despite the importance of tourism to Zakynthos, it is not

⁴ _____ possible to visit the beaches after sunset.

- 7 Read LANGUAGE FOCUS II, then rewrite extracts 1–7 using the words in brackets.

1 Some beaches are protected while others are not. (whereas)

Whereas _____

2 Whereas Zakynthos protects its wildlife, many other destinations fail to. (while)

Zakynthos _____

3 Closing the beaches at night wasn't easy. That said, it was necessary for the sake of the turtles. (Having)

Closing _____

4 Things are improving; nevertheless it will take years for the bay to recover completely. (even so)

Things _____

5 Even though bins are provided, visitors continue to leave litter in the sand. (yet)

Bins _____

6 In fact, the seabird population has begun to recover. (actually)

The seabird population _____

7 Some of the forest is private while other parts are open to the public. (whereas)

Whereas _____

- 8 Read the message which was printed after Nick's letter in *Young Traveller* magazine. Then plan your letter to an editor.

Thank you for your interesting contribution, Nick. We would like to hear from other readers who have visited, or know of places where similar efforts are being made. Write a letter describing a place in which negative impacts of tourism on the natural environment are being controlled.

YOUNG TRAVELLER



- 1 Do some research. Use your own ideas or try one of the following:

- Masai Mara National Reserve, Kenya
 - Fraser Island, Great Sandy National Park, Australia
 - Punta Tombo Penguin Rookery, Argentina
 - Ao Phang Nga National Park, Thailand
- (Hint: search for 'visitor rules' or 'visitors' guide'.)

- 2 Take some notes about the place:

- Where is it located?
- Why is it interesting?
- How are negative impacts of tourism controlled?

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 9 Do the writing task. Use the ideas in Exercise 8, the WRITING FOCUS and LANGUAGE FOCUS I and II to help you.

Write a letter to an editor in response to the message in Exercise 8.

8.1 Vocabulary 🔊 4.57

biodegradable /ˌbaɪəʊdɪˈgreɪdəbəl/
 breeding ground /ˈbriːdɪŋ graʊnd/
 built-up area /ˌbɪlt,ʌp ˈeəriə/
 contamination /kənˌtæməˈneɪʃən/
 countryside /ˈkʌntrisaɪd/
 current /ˈkʌrənt/
 discard /dɪsˈkɑːd/
 ditch /dɪtʃ/
 eco-warrior /ˈiːkəʊˌwɒriə/
 extinction /ɪkˈstɪŋkʃən/
 food chain /ˈfuːd ˌtʃeɪn/
 foothill /ˈfʊtˌhɪl/
 gust of wind /ˌɡʌst əv ˈwɪnd/
 hatch /hætʃ/
 (have a) narrow escape /ˌ(hæv ə) ˌnærəʊ ɪˈskeɪp/
 in captivity /ɪn kæpˈtɪvəti/
 irreparable damage /ɪˌrepərəbəl ˈdæmɪdʒ/
 leafy /ˈliːfi/
 litter /ˈlɪtə/
 meadow /ˈmedəʊ/
 migration /maɪˈɡreɪʃən/
 natural habitat /ˌnætʃərəl ˈhæbɪtæt/
 on the loose /ɒn ðə ˈluːs/
 orchard /ˈɔːtʃəd/
 park warden /ˌpɑːk ˈwɔːdn/
 patch /pætʃ/
 plain /pleɪn/
 plastic waste /ˌplæstɪk ˈweɪst/
 ploughed field /ˌpləʊd ˈfiːld/
 predator /ˈpredətə/
 prey /preɪ/
 release into the wild /rɪˌliːs ɪntə ðə ˈwaɪld/
 reunite /ˌriːjuːˈnaɪt/
 roam /rəʊm/
 set free /set friː/
 single-use plastics /ˌsɪŋɡəl juːs ˈplæstɪks/
 stream /striːm/
 tern /tɜːn/
 thriving population /ˌθraɪvɪŋ ˌpɒpjəˈleɪʃən/
 trapped /træpt/
 trash /træʃ/

8.2 Grammar 🔊 4.58

campsite /ˈkæmpsaɪt/
 for a change /fər ə ˈtʃeɪndʒ/
 lounge /laʊndʒ/
 raft /rɑːft/
 sunbed /ˈsʌnbed/
 sunscreen /ˈsʌnskriːn/
 white water rafting /ˌwaɪt ˌwɔːtə ˈrɑːftɪŋ/

8.3 Listening 🔊 4.59

adolescence /ˌædəˈlesəns/
 adolescent /ˌædəˈlesənt/
 affectionate /əˈfekʃənət/
 agile /ˈædʒaɪl/
 bird-brained /ˈbɜːd ˌbreɪnd/
 bond /bɒnd/
 competition /ˌkɒmpəˈtɪʃən/
 competitive /kəmˈpetətɪv/
 conceive /kənˈsiːv/
 deception /drɪˈsepʃən/
 deceptive /drɪˈseptɪv/
 developed /drɪˈveləpt/
 domesticate /dəˈmestəkeɪt/
 doubt /daʊt/
 embrace /ɪmˈbreɪs/
 establish a community /ɪˌstæblɪʃ ə kəˈmjʊːnəti/
 extend a territory /ɪkˌstend ə ˈterətəri/
 gentle /ˈdʒentl/
 hug /hʌɡ/
 loner /ˈləʊnə/
 mindlessly /ˈmaɪndləsli/
 misconception /ˌmɪskənˈsepʃən/
 notion /ˈnəʊʃən/
 playful /ˈpleɪfəl/
 please /pliːz/
 recognition skills /ˌrekəɡˈnɪʃən ˌskɪlz/
 reputable /ˈrepjətəbəl/
 reputation /ˌrepjəˈteɪʃən/
 resemblance /rɪˈzembləns/
 resemble /rɪˈzembəl/
 undervalued /ˌʌndəˈvæljuːd/
 undoubtedly /ˌʌnˈdaʊtɪdli/
 wise /waɪz/

8.4 Reading 🔊 4.60

a storm is brewing /ə stɔːm əz ˈbruːwɪŋ/
 adrift /əˈdrɪft/
 aftermath /ˈɑːftəməθ/
 avalanche /ˈævələntʃ/
 battered /ˈbætəd/
 begin the ascent/descent /brɪˈɡɪn ðə əˈsent/drɪˈsent/
 believable /bəˈliːvəbəl/
 blind /blaɪnd/
 blizzard /ˈblɪzəd/
 captivating /ˈkæptəveɪtɪŋ/
 deforestation /diˌfɒrəˈsteɪʃən/
 disaster movie /dɪˈzɑːstə ˌmuːvi/
 drought /draʊt/
 earthquake /ˈɜːθkweɪk/
 electricity-generating /ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti ˌdʒenəreɪtɪŋ/
 extreme hunger /ɪkˌstriːm ˈhʌŋɡə/
 extreme poverty /ɪkˌstriːm ˈpɒvəti/
 famine /ˈfæmɪn/
 fee /fiː/

gale-force winds /ˌgeɪl fɔːs ˈwɪndz/
 gripping tale /ˌɡrɪpɪŋ ˈteɪl/
 harness /ˈhɑːnəs/
 harsh reminder /ˌhɑːʃ rɪˈmaɪndə/
 hurricane /ˈhʌrɪkən/
 life-threatening injuries /ˌlaɪf ˌθretənɪŋ ˈɪndʒərɪz/
 on a positive note /ɒn ə ˈpɒzətɪv ˌnəʊt/
 on the edge of your seat /ɒn ði ˈedʒ əv jə ˌsiːt/
 overturn /ˌəʊvəˈtɜːn/
 physically demanding /ˌfɪzɪkli dɪˈmɑːndɪŋ/
 rough /rʌf/
 severe weather conditions /səˈviə ˈweðə kənˌdɪʃənz/
 snowfall /ˈsnəʊfɔːl/
 spare parts /ˌspeə ˈpɑːts/
 split up /ˌsplɪt ˈʌp/
 (be) swept overboard /ˌ(bi) ˌswept ˈəʊvəbɔːd/
 suffer agony /ˌsʌfə ˈægəni/
 summit /ˈsʌmɪt/
 tsunami /tsuˈnɑːmi/
 twist /twɪst/
 water tank /ˈwɔːtə ˌtæŋk/
 whiteout /ˈwaɪtaʊt/
 wildfire /ˈwaɪldfaɪə/
 windmill /ˈwɪndˌmɪl/

8.5 Grammar 🔊 4.61

accusation /ˌækjəˈzeɪʃən/
 carbon dioxide /ˌkɑːbən daɪˈɒksaɪd/
 devastating scene /ˌdevəsteɪtɪŋ ˌsiːn/
 flood /flʌd/
 funding /ˈfʌndɪŋ/
 greenhouse effect /ˈɡriːnhaʊs ɪˌfekt/
 industrialisation /ɪnˌdʌstriəlaɪˈzeɪʃən/
 ridiculous /rɪˈdɪkjələs/

8.6 Speaking 🔊 4.62

astonishingly /əsˈtɒnɪʃɪŋli/
 astounding /əˈstaʊndɪŋ/
 audience /ˈɔːdiəns/
 awe-inspiring /ˈɔːr ɪnˌspaɪrɪŋ/
 cave/cavern /keɪv/ˈkævən/
 demolish /dɪˈmɒlɪʃ/
 diameter /daɪˈæmɪtə/
 drain /drem/
 miner /ˈmaɪnə/
 natural wonder /ˌnætʃərəl ˈwʌndə/
 wonder /ˈwʌndə/

8.7 Use of English 🔊 4.63

anti-nuclear /ænti ˈnjuːkliə/
 antisocial /ˌæntiˈsəʊʃəl/
 carbohydrates /ˌkɑːbəʊˈhaɪdreɪts/
 comforting /ˈkʌmfətɪŋ/

curl up /,kɜ:ɪl 'ʌp/
disallow /,dɪsə'laʊ/
disapprove /,dɪsə'pru:v/
disbelieve /,dɪsbə'li:v/
downturn /'daʊntɜ:n/
hyperactive /,haɪpər'æktɪv/
hypersensitive /,haɪpə'sensətɪv/
illegal /'li:ɡəl/
illiterate /ɪ'lıtərət/
illogical /ɪ'lədʒɪkəl/
immature /ɪ,mə'tʃʊə/
improbable /ɪm'prɒbəbəl/
inadequate /ɪn'ædəkwət/
incapable /ɪn'keɪpəbəl/
irrelevant /ɪ'reləvənt/
irresponsible /,ɪrɪ'spɒnsəbəl/
misbehave /,mɪsbɪ'heɪv/
misinformation /,mɪsɪnfə'meɪʃən/
misjudge /,mɪs'dʒʌdʒ/
multicultural /,mʌltɪ'kʌltʃərəl/
multipurpose /,mʌltɪ'pɜ:pəs/
nap /næp/
off-balance /,ɒf 'bæləns/
off-colour /,ɒf 'kʌlə/
onstage /,ɒn'steɪdʒ/

outdo /aʊt'duː/
outnumber /aʊt'nʌmbə/
overactive /,əʊvər'æktɪv/
overestimate /,əʊvər'estəmeɪt/
overpaid /,əʊvə'peɪd/
post-match /,pəʊst mætʃ/
pre-election /,priː rɪ'lekʃən/
pre-storm /,priː stɔːm/
pro-democracy /,prəʊ drɪ'mɒkrəsi/
raindrop /'reɪndrɒp/
recall /rɪ'kɔːl/
reconsider /,riːkən'sɪdə/
remarry /,riː'mæri/
renewable /rɪ'njuːəbəl/
self-awareness /,self ə'weənəs/
self-esteem /,self rɪ'stiːm/
self-obsessed /,self əb'sest/
sharpness /'ʃɑːpnəs/
substandard /,sʌb'stændəd/
unable /ʌn'eɪbəl/
unaware /,ʌnə'weə/
uncomfortable /ʌn'kʌmfətəbəl/
uncontrollable /,ʌnkən'trəʊləbəl/
underestimate /,ʌndər'estɪmeɪt/
understaffed /,ʌndə'stɑːft/

undo /ʌn'du:/
unemployment /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt/
unsafe /,ʌn'seɪf/
unusual /ʌn'ju:ʒuəl/
unwilling /ʌn'wɪlɪŋ/
upturn /'ʌptɜ:n/
violent /'vaɪələnt/

8.8 Writing 4.64

coastline /'kəʊstlaɪn/
concession /kən'seʃən/
cultural heritage /,kʌltʃərəl 'herətɪdʒ/
diverse landscape /daɪ,vɜ:s
 'lændskeɪp/
facilities /fə'sɪlɪtiz/
lay eggs /,leɪ 'egz/
natural beauty /,nætʃərəl 'bju:ti/
nesting beach /'nestɪŋ ,bi:tʃ/
speedboat /'spi:dbəʊt/
sustainable tourism /sə,steɪnəbəl
 'tʊərɪzəm/
take priority /,teɪk prai'ɒrəti/
tourist resort /'tʊərɪst rɪ,zɔ:t/
wildlife protection /'waɪldlaɪf
 prə,tektʃən/

MY WORD LIST

NATURE

[illegible]

ECOLOGY

[illegible]

OTHER

[illegible]

VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(ditch drought habitat meadow
orchard severe strong thriving)

- There was a small orchard at the back of our house where we'd pick apples in the autumn.
 - The car skidded on an icy road and ended up in a ditch but thankfully no one was hurt.
 - It was amazing to see tigers in their natural habitat in India.
 - The village is in a remote mountain area and experiences some severe weather conditions.
 - The region is facing its worst drought in decades with no rain in months now.
 - Thanks to conservation efforts, there's now a thriving population of wildcats.
- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct words to replace the words in brackets. The first letter is given.
- The clearance of hundreds of trees has caused irreparable (*impossible to repair*) damage to the forest. 2 There are less than a hundred animals in the wild and just a handful in c (*not in the wild*).
 - Despite its resemblance (*being similar*) to a bat, this creature is actually a type of squirrel.
 - The packaging is biodegradable (*capable of being decomposed*).
 - Many of the villagers live in extreme poverty (*being poor*) getting by on less than a dollar a day.
 - Raccoons are extremely competitive (*that like to compete and win*) animals.
- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.
- If only you sorted out (*sort out*) the recycling properly, I wouldn't have to waste time doing it!
 - It's high time you started (*start*) cycling to school. It's not too far.
 - If only the motorway had not been built (*not build*) near the nature reserve, it wouldn't have affected the local wildlife so much.
 - I'd rather you used (*use*) reusable bags while shopping instead of those plastic ones.
 - I wish my parents had asked (*ask*) me what breed of dog I wanted to get before buying me a poodle.
- 4 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.
- Tim not only saw a school of dolphins, but he also spotted a whale.
Not only did Tim see a school of dolphins, but he also spotted a whale.
 - Claudia needs to mow the lawn before she goes on holiday.
What Claudia needs to do is (to) mow the lawn before she goes on holiday.
 - We have never experienced such cold weather while skiing.
Never have we experienced such cold weather while skiing.
 - Josh only recommended you should buy more organic food.
All Josh recommended was that you/Josh did was recommend that you should buy more organic food.

USE OF ENGLISH

- 5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- Don't you agree that it is _____ time you started training your dog?
A best B high C right
- Never before _____ so many robins in our garden.
A do we see B we saw C have we seen
- Pollution might be tightly controlled in one country, whereas _____ country regulations may be less strict.
A in another B in other C others
- Under _____ are you to leave home now. There is a tornado approaching so we need to stay inside.
A no circumstances B no way C no conditions
- I wish _____ to my brother when he told me not to swim in the river with such a strong current.
A I had listened B I listened C I have listened
- If only _____ a presentation about endangered species! I'm struggling with the topic of acid rain.
A I have chosen B I had chosen C I chose

- 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- The country is struggling to deal with the outbreak of malaria due to _____ healthcare facilities. **ADEQUATE**
- Max was facing the other direction and was completely _____ of what was happening behind him. **AWARE**
- Where a person comes from should be _____; what's important is whether they have the skills for the job. **RELEVANT**
- We don't want to lose Sophia and have asked her to _____ her decision to resign. **CONSIDER**
- The company has been forced to close some shops due to a sharp _____ in sales. **TURN**
- There have been complaints about vandalism and other _____ behaviour. **SOCIAL**
- He's a strict vegetarian and _____ of keeping animals for meat. **APPROVE**
- The clinic is severely _____ with often only one or two nurses on duty. **STAFF**
- The idea that space exploration has led to the loss of the ozone layer is a common _____ . **CONCEIVE**
- The bird's north-south _____ route is 3,000 miles from Canada to Southern Mexico. **MIGRATE**

READING

- 7 Read texts A–D and match them with questions 1–6. Two texts match two of the questions.

Which text mentions an environment where ...

- 1 young creatures are protected from potential harm? ☐
- 2 temperatures can change dramatically during a single day? ☐
- 3 water levels change several times a day? ☐
- 4 a very wide range of species thrive? ☐
- 5 there are no distinct seasons? ☐
- 6 few plants and animals can live? ☐

A

DESERTS

Contrary to popular perception, temperature alone does not directly define whether an area of land is described as a desert. The key factor instead is rainfall, with desert areas averaging less than 254 millimetres of rain a year. There are, in fact, what are known as 'cold deserts', such as in the Antarctic, where temperatures can be below freezing. Even the hot, dry deserts we most typically think of, such as the Sahara, can experience very dramatic temperature drops at night. This is because the lack of cloud cover allows hot air to escape very quickly once the sun has set.

B

RAINFORESTS

As their name suggests, rainforests are found in areas with consistently high levels of rainfall, typically in tropical regions of the world around the equator. They may receive more than 2,000 millimetres of rain a year and with an average daily temperature of around 28 degrees Celsius, they are hot and humid. This climate is consistent all year round which creates the perfect habitat for an incredibly diverse range of plants and animals and makes them some of the most biodiverse environments on the planet.

C

TUNDRAS

One of the world's harshest environments are tundras, treeless ecosystems found in the Arctic and on the tops of mountains. These areas are very cold and windy with little rainfall, making it difficult for both plants and animals to survive. Most of the plants found on the tundra are very low-lying, growing in gaps in the rocks where they have some protection from the wind. The Arctic tundra is covered in snow for much of the year, with the soil below the surface permanently frozen. Tundra plants have a very short growing season of just fifty to sixty days during the short Arctic summer.

D

MANGROVE FORESTS

Mangrove forests are found in coastal areas around the world where trees and shrubs grow with their roots submerged in water that is a mix of freshwater and seawater. Mangrove forests are typically tidal, so water levels rise and fall twice a day. They play a vital role in preventing coastal erosion as well as providing a home to numerous species of fish, which use them as nurseries because the mass of roots creates a safe space for young fish away from the reach of larger predators.

SPEAKING

- 8 Look at the photos. You and your friend would like to spend some time helping the environment during the summer holidays. Choose the option which, in your opinion, is the best, and give reasons for your choice.

A



B



C



- 9 Ask and answer the questions.

- 1 What could be done to persuade people to recycle more?
- 2 How can you use social media to promote an environmentally-friendly lifestyle?
- 3 Is the work of environmental organisations effective? What makes you think so?
- 4 What are the advantages of living next to large green areas?

WRITING

- 10 Read the writing task and write a letter to an editor.

Read the question asked in a newspaper and Brian's reply. Write to the editor of the newspaper expressing your critical opinion to Brian's comment.

Have your say ...

As air travel contributes almost 10 percent of the world's carbon emissions, should we be travelling in ways that have less of an impact on the environment?

While I agree that we need to cut air travel, in an era of cheap flights other forms of transport, such as rail travel, are disproportionately more expensive and also significantly slower. Until there's an affordable alternative, I'm afraid people are still going to fly away on holiday. *Brian, 17*

 Learning a new skill


BEFORE YOU WATCH

- 1 **SPEAKING** In what order do children typically learn these life skills? Discuss how old you were when you learnt how to do them.

Learning how to ...

(read ride a bike speak swim
tie your shoelaces type walk write)

- 2 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions.

- What new skills have you learnt since you became a teenager?
- Is it easier to learn a new skill as a child, a teenager or an adult? Why?
- Have you ever learnt how to juggle? Would you like to? Why/Why not?

WHILE YOU WATCH

- 3  1 Watch Chris (38) and Tahoe (8) learning how to juggle. Who is learning faster and why?
- 4  1 Choose the correct option and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F). Then watch the video again and check your answers.
- Chris decides to up the ante by pitting himself against / with Tahoe. ☐
 - The catch / trick is that Tahoe is three decades younger than Chris. ☐
 - Scarves help to find / form a juggling network because they speed the process up. ☐
 - The practice stage is enjoyable. One step onward / forward, two steps back. ☐
 - Chris claims that he's not a big / large one for excuses, but he hasn't done enough practice. ☐
 - Chris is not impressed when he says to Tahoe: 'Give it your best shot / throw'. ☐
 - White matter fixes new brain pathways creating a sense of everything clicking into point / place. ☐

- 5 Replace the underlined phrases with the correct form of an appropriate phrase in Exercise 4.

- If something seems too good to be true, it's because there is a hidden problem.
- Learning a language is often a case of getting better and then getting worse.
- I don't like reading about things. I prefer listening to podcasts.
- When you are faced with a difficult challenge, always try your best. Never walk away.
- Learning a new skill is so satisfying – that moment when everything starts to work perfectly.
- In some sports – e.g. motor-racing – women should compete with men in an equal contest.
- Whenever you meet interesting people, it's worth collecting their phone numbers so that you can create a group of useful contacts.

- 6 **SPEAKING** Discuss the statements in Exercise 5. Do you agree with them?

- 7  1 Watch the video again. What is happening during stages 1–3?

- The cognitive stage
- The practice stage
- The automatic stage

AFTER YOU WATCH

- 8 **SPEAKING** Think about your experience of learning English and discuss the questions.

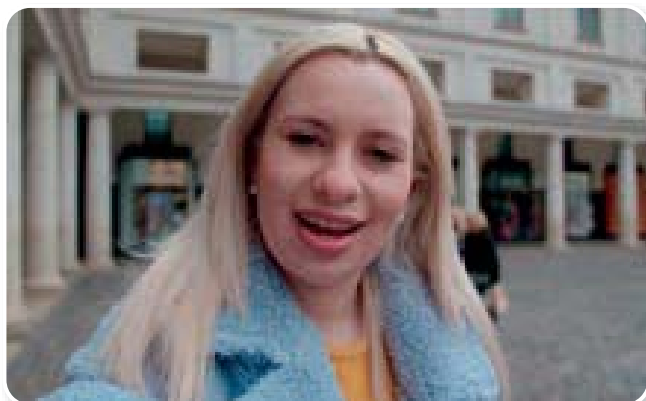
- What is the best age to start learning a language? Why?
- Which learning stage do you think you are at now?
- How does learning English compare with other learning experiences such as learning how to dance, to drive, to play the piano, to ski, etc.?

Focus Vlog About daily routines

1.2 GRAMMAR

What was your daily routine when you were younger and how does it compare to now?

What did you use to do when you were a teenager that you miss doing now?



- 1 Name a person you know well who is in their twenties or older. Think about their daily routine when they were teenagers. Which statements could describe what they used to do?

1 He/she used to have a structured routine.

2 He/she used to make their own breakfast.

3 He/she used to play football with friends.

4 He/she used to belong to an athletics club.

5 He/she used to go to dance classes.

6 He/she used to chill at home in the evenings.

7 He/she used to do stretches in the morning.

8 He/she used to drive around listening to music.

- 2 Does the person you know do any of the things in Exercise 1 now?

- 3 Watch the video and match the statements in Exercise 1 with the teenage daily routine of the speakers in the box.

(Aaron Hannah Harriet Natasha
Nobuse)

- 4 **SPEAKING** Compare your daily routine now with the one your parents had. Discuss how similar or different they are.

- 5 Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then watch the first part of the video (up to 3:18) again and answer the questions.

1 Hannah / with / Who / to / would / school / walk ?

2 school / would / to / Aaron / How / get ?

3 use / Why / 'quite intense' / be / routine / Natasha's / to / daily / did ?

4 eat / school / home / to / way / use / the / What / Nobuse / did / from / on ?

5 routine / structure / to / What / some / Harriet's / used / daily / give ?

- 6 Discuss the questions. Then watch the rest of the video (3:19–4:26) and check your answers.

1 What would Hannah like to get back into?

2 Why did Aaron use to drive around a lot?

3 Why did Natasha use to see her friends much more?

4 What does Nobuse miss doing?

5 Why did Harriet use to get more things done?

- 7 **SPEAKING** Are you a person who likes to have structure or variety in your day-to-day life? Why?

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Critical thinking

- 8 **SPEAKING** Discuss these sayings about youth. What do they mean and how much do you agree with them?

- School days are the best days of your life.
- Youth is wasted on the young.
- Youth is the best time to be rich and the best time to be poor.

- 9 Think about how life as a teenager was different for your grandparents. Write notes under the headings. Think about daily routines, free time, friends, school and your own ideas.

Ways life is easier for teenagers now

Ways life was easier for teenagers in the past

- 10 **SPEAKING** Discuss your notes. What is your conclusion?

Nature or nurture?



BEFORE YOU WATCH

- 1 **SPEAKING** Look at the photo and the title of the video you're going to watch. Discuss what you think the video is about. Use some of the key words and phrases in the box to help you.

(genes growing up apart identical twins
nature nurture upbringing)

WHILE YOU WATCH

- 2 **5** Watch the video and check your ideas in Exercise 1.
- 3 **5** Complete the commentary with the words in the box. There are two extra words. Then watch the first part of the video (up to 0:55) and check your answers.

(between born collection environment
experienced gathering nurture rare)

We're in London at St Thomas' hospital for a very special ¹ _____ of twins. Scientists love identical twins because they're perfect for examining how nature and ² _____ affect our lives. By studying both the similarities and differences ³ _____ identical twins, scientists can begin to answer the big question – are we ⁴ _____, or are we made the way we are? If twins have grown up in the same ⁵ _____, it's difficult to know whether it's genes or experiences that have made them similar. It would be easier to check if they'd had different lives. Cases of twins growing up apart are ⁶ _____, but they do exist.

- 4 **5** Watch the second part of the video (0:56–2:17) and complete the information about the girls.

	MIA	ALEXANDRA
Nationality at birth	1 _____	2 _____
Age	3 _____	4 _____
Lives in	5 _____	6 _____
Parents	7 Angela and Andy	8 Wenche and Sigmund
Goes to school?	9 _____	10 _____

- 5 **SPEAKING** Whose upbringing, Mia's or Alexandra's, is the most similar to your own up to the age of six? Discuss with your partner.
- 6 **5** Watch the third part of the video (2:18–4:10) with no sound. It shows the moment when Alexandra and Mia meet each other for the first time. Make notes about the following:
- The feelings that Mia has just before Alexandra arrives.
 - Their very first reaction to one another outside the house.
 - The first thing they do when they get inside the house.
- 7 **5** Compare your notes. Then watch the video again with sound and check your ideas.
- 8 **5** Watch the rest of the video (4:11–5:30) and notice Mia's mother's reflections about the following:
- genetics
 - her own role as a parent
 - parental control
- 9 **SPEAKING** Discuss whether you agree with Mia's mother's reflections in Exercise 8.

AFTER YOU WATCH

- 10 **SPEAKING** Are the following human attributes determined more by nature or nurture?

(health intelligence life expectancy looks
musicality personality size sporting ability)

Focus Vlog About important people

Could you tell me about a family member or friend you look up to?

What have you learned from a friend or family member that has helped you later in life?



- 1 **SPEAKING** Discuss who has influenced you most in your life. Refer to people in the box or your own ideas.

aunt brother cousin famous person
father friend (great-) grandmother
(great-) grandfather mother roommate
sister teacher uncle

- 2 **8** Watch the first part of the video (up to 2:17) in which the speakers say who has influenced their lives most. Match a person from the box in Exercise 1 with each speaker.

1 Lilee - _____ 4 Aaron - _____
2 Hassan - _____ 5 Shaelyn - _____
3 Hannah - _____

- 3 **8** Match the reasons why each speaker in Exercise 2 looks up to their family member with the names of the people. Then watch the first part of the video (up to 2:17) again and check your answers.

1 She was the first woman pilot in West Virginia.
Aaron's great-grandmother
2 She's kind-hearted and honest. _____
3 He's following his dreams. _____
4 He encourages me to keep going. _____
5 She inspired me to be mature and responsible and make good decisions. _____

- 4 **8** Watch the rest of the video (2:18–3:41). Which two speakers mention a friend rather than a family member?

- 5 **8** Complete the quotes with appropriate verb forms. Then watch the whole video again and check your answers.

1 Lilee: She _____ out of home and she _____ everything really well and she _____ me up on her own.
2 Hassan: He's _____ his dreams and that _____ me to follow mine as well.
3 Shaelyn: I'm _____ acting in the UK and I can always phone him back home and he's always able to _____ me to keep going.
4 Lilee: She always told me to _____ up for what I believe in and be who I _____ to be.
5 Aaron: Small leaks _____ big ships ... And the same can be _____ to finances as well. Buying small things here and there _____ up very quick.
6 Shaelyn: My grandfather taught me how to _____ independent, which has helped me since _____ to the UK from Canada to feel like I can _____ on my own two feet.

- 6 **SPEAKING** Lilee and Aaron both mention women who were ahead of their times. Do you have any family members who were or are ahead of their times?

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Critical thinking • Collaboration • Digital skills

- 7 **SPEAKING** Work together to put the qualities of a good role model in order from 1 to 7 (1 being the most important). Add ideas of your own.

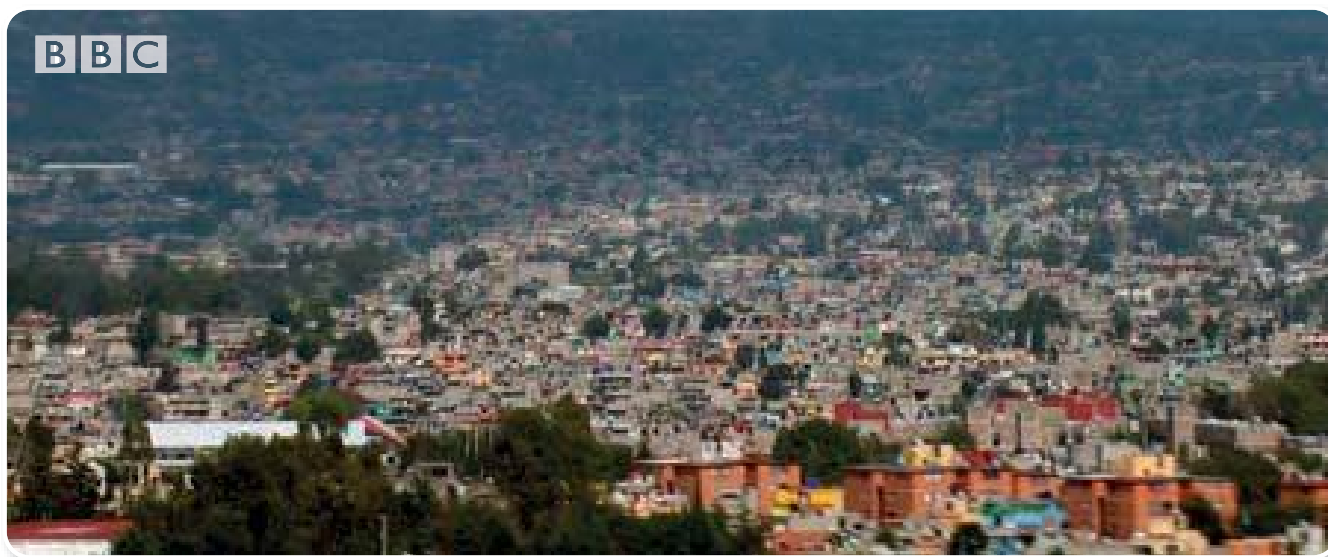
A good role model is someone who ...

- is independent
- is a good communicator
- is educated and hard-working
- believes in themselves
- prioritises the important things in life
- is brave and takes risks
- is kind-hearted and honest

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

- 8 Present your ideas in Exercise 7 to the class and give reasons for the order you have chosen.
- 9 Prepare a multimedia presentation introducing a person you admire the most and explaining what makes this person your role model. Share the presentation with the class.

BBC Smog-free Mexico City



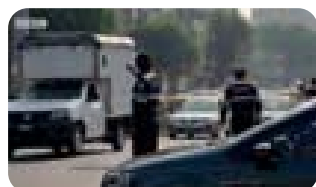
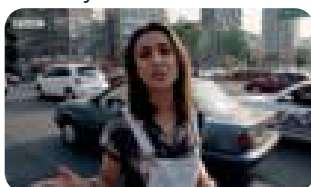
BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 **SPEAKING** Imagine living in the metropolis of Mexico City, home to 22 million people. Discuss the questions.

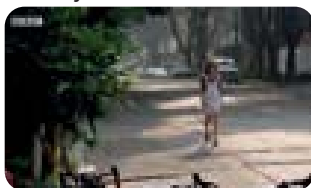
- How different would your life be?
- What kind of problems would you encounter?
- What kind of things could the city authorities do to tackle traffic pollution?

2 **SPEAKING** Compare the streets in Mexico City on Monday and Sunday. What difference do you notice? Why do you think that is?

Monday



Sunday



WHILE YOU WATCH

3 **9** Watch the video and check your ideas in Exercise 2.

4 **9** Match 1–8 with a–h to make phrases and collocations used in the commentary. Then watch the video again and check your answers.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| 1 close | ☐ | a of a city |
| 2 cycling | ☐ | b down |
| 3 the heart | ☐ | c enthusiast |
| 4 one-off | ☐ | d levels |
| 5 smog | ☐ | e of life |
| 6 tackle | ☐ | f measures |
| 7 take | ☐ | g a problem |
| 8 walks | ☐ | h event |

5 Complete the newspaper article about what Mexico City is doing about pollution. Use the phrases and collocations in Exercise 4.

In an attempt to ¹ _____ its traffic problems and reduce ² _____ levels, the Mexican authorities have ³ _____ measures to ⁴ _____ down several main streets in the ⁵ _____ of Mexico City on Sundays so that cyclists can have the streets to themselves. Mexico City now has a bike mayor, the campaigner and ⁶ _____ enthusiast Areli Carreón. This is not a ⁷ _____ event. Every Sunday, 50,000 people enjoy the car-free centre. Areli Carreón says that one of the things she likes best is that it doesn't matter who you are, people from all ⁸ _____ of life come together and enjoy car-free Sundays.

6 **9** Make a list of all the non-polluting means of transport you can use in a city. Then watch the video again and tick the ones you see.

7 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions.

- What does Anita Rani mean by 'progressive civic planning'?
- What are the pros and cons of banning cars from main streets for one day a week?
- What do you think of the idea of a 'traffic-free Sunday'?

AFTER YOU WATCH

8 **SPEAKING** Imagine your local city authorities want to have a 'traffic-free Sunday'. First, they want to conduct a survey to measure public opinion. Complete the task.

- Write a questionnaire with at least six questions.
- Interview other students in the class and record their responses.
- Write a summary of the results and make a recommendation.

Focus Vlog About dreams

3.2 GRAMMAR

Where do you think you'll be living five years from now?

What life goals will you have achieved by the time you turn fifty?



- 1 Complete the three sentences and make one of them false. Can your partner guess which one is false?

- 1 My dream is to one day ...
- 2 In five years' time, I'll be living in ...
- 3 By the time I'm fifty, I'll have ...

- 2 11 Watch the video. Does anyone mention the things you wrote in Exercise 1? Who do you think has the most ambitious plans?

- 3 11 Read the future predictions and complete them with the names of the speakers in the box. Then watch the first part of the video (up to 2:07) and check your answers.

(Hannah Kat Lilee Lucy Natasha Nick Nobuse)

In five years' time ...

- 1 _____ will still be working freelance.
- 2 _____ hopes to be living in a house with a music studio.
- 3 _____ doesn't know what he/she'll be doing.
- 4 _____ will be enjoying the outdoor life of Australia.
- 5 _____ would like to be living in a hot country.
- 6 _____ hopes to be living in a different part of London.
- 7 _____ will be living in his/her mum's house.

- 4 11 Match verbs 1–8 with noun phrases a–h to make collocations. Watch the rest of the video (2:08–3:26) and check your answers.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 play | ☐ | a a family |
| 2 be in a | ☐ | b a book |
| 3 travel round | ☐ | c the world |
| 4 raise | ☐ | d TV series |
| 5 publish | ☐ | e yoga teacher training |
| 6 go further | ☐ | f top ten album |
| 7 achieve a | ☐ | g a leading lady |
| 8 complete my | ☐ | h in my career |

- 5 **SPEAKING** What will you have achieved by the time you turn fifty? Use the collocations in Exercise 4 or your own ideas.

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Critical thinking

- 6 **SPEAKING** Think about ten years from now. Answer the questions and compare with a partner.

- 1 What would you like to be doing?
- 2 Where would you like to be living?
- 3 What would you like to have achieved?

- 7 How important are these life goals for you? Write the list of your goals in the diagram and add at least one goal to each circle. Then compare your ideas with a partner.

- be true to yourself
- make a lot of money
- have a big family
- make a difference
- travel the world
- do something I love
- make my parents proud
- be happy
- be famous



 Young entrepreneurs


BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 **SPEAKING** You are going to watch a video about two young entrepreneurs. Discuss the questions.

- 1 What sort of person do you think of when you read 'young entrepreneur'? Describe them.
- 2 What sort of industries do you think a young entrepreneur is most likely to go into?
- 3 Do you know any young entrepreneurs? Tell your partner about them.

2 **SPEAKING** Imagine you have launched an exciting new business. How would you go about marketing your product?

WHILE YOU WATCH

3  14 Watch the video. Are any of the ideas you discussed in Exercises 1 and 2 included in the clip?

4  14 Complete the fact file about the two young entrepreneurs. Then watch the video again and check your answers.

FACT FILE

Name	1 _____	6 _____
Age when she launched	2 _____	7 _____
Job	3 _____	8 _____
Marketing strategy	4 _____	9 _____
Help and inspiration	5 _____	10 Cara Delevingne

5  14 Put the description of Minor Mynas in the correct order. Then watch the first part of the video (up to 1:04) and check your answer.

- a language. Minor Mynas provides a safe ☐
- b Minor Mynas is an online educational platform ☒
- c and make friends across borders. ☐
- d in conversations and learn one another's ☐
- e place for children to communicate, chat ☐
- f that connects children so they can engage ☐

6  14 Replace the underlined words and phrases in the questions with words and phrases in the box. Then answer the questions and watch the second part of the video (1:04–2:54) to check your answers.

(entrepreneurs get along network
profound think big)

- 1 Why does Hillary think it's easier for kids to be friendly than adults?
- 2 What makes it easy to make connections in Hong Kong?
- 3 What makes Hong Kong such a good place for people who start their own business?
- 4 Who encouraged Hillary to have huge ambitions?
- 5 What did Nelson Mandela say that Hillary thinks is deep?
- 7 Put the phrases into the correct order to explain how Georgia first launched and now runs her business. What is her recipe for success?
 - get orders ☐
 - bake cakes ☐
 - big boost ☐
 - Cara Delevingne ☐
 - upload more photos ☐
 - Instagram tag ☐
 - bake more cakes ☐
 - upload photos ☐
- 8  14 Watch the rest of the video (2:55–4:20) and check your ideas in Exercise 7.

AFTER YOU WATCH

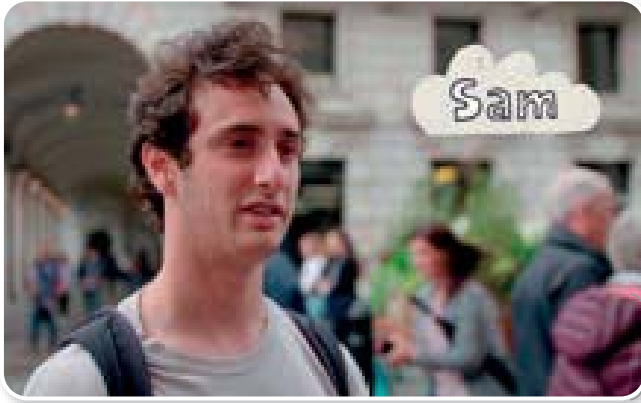
9 **SPEAKING** Look at some businesses young people make money on and add your own ideas. Discuss what you think each business does and whether or not it would be suitable for you. Explain why.

(e-sport player meme creator online reviewer
social media influencer vlogger YouTuber)

Focus Vlog About money

Do you usually pay with cash or card?
What sort of things are you likely to pay for with cash?

What ways of paying are likely to become popular in the future?



- 1 **SPEAKING** Which of the following do people usually pay for by card/in cash in your country? Discuss, then answer the questions.

(clothes coffee groceries hairdressers
public transport taxi tips)

- What are the advantages and disadvantages of paying by card or with cash?
- What other ways of paying can you think of?
- Which way of paying do you use most?

- 2 **18** Watch the first part of the video (up to 1: 58) and complete the sentences with the names of the speakers in the box. Which speakers prefer cash to all other ways of paying?

(Kat Lilee Lucy Sam Shaelyn)

- _____ thinks it's too easy to overspend with a card.
- _____ uses cash for everyday necessities.
- _____ only uses cash for tips.
- _____ uses a card except for paying her nail lady.
- _____ prefers cash, but can't always find an ATM.

- 3 **18** Watch the rest of the video (1:59–3:18). Match the ways of paying the people think will be popular in the future with the explanations. Then watch the video again and check your answers.

Sam: contactless ☐
Kat: a digital currency ☐
Lilee: phone-pay ☐
Shaelyn: e-wallets ☐
Lucy: contactless ☐

- because it will be easy for people to leave the house and not have to take a bag or wallet.
- because it saves people the hassle of having to go for currency exchange and carry loads of cash.
- and maybe if they input that in other devices as well, that might become more popular too.
- using a cellular device and a back-up – maybe a contactless card – if your phone dies.
- but he/she personally hopes that people will stick to cash.

- 4 **SPEAKING** Discuss which predictions in Exercise 3 you agree with. Can you imagine a world without any cash at all?

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Critical thinking

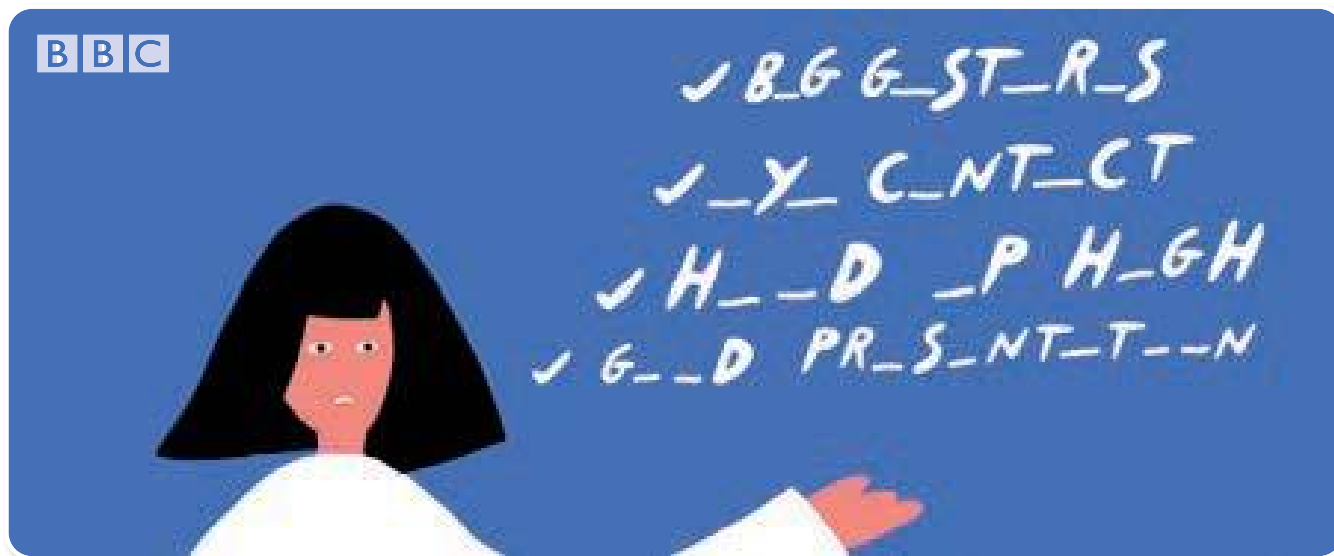
- 5 **SPEAKING** Read the travel advice and discuss questions 1–3 with your partner.

Travel Advice How much to tip in the USA

Meal in a restaurant	15–20% of the bill
Home delivery	10% of the order
Toilet attendant	50c–\$3
Hotel cleaner	\$2–5 a day
Taxi	15–20% of the fare
Hair, nails, etc.	15–20% of the price

- Is it common to leave a tip in your country in the places listed above?
- How much do people usually tip?
- Do you think tipping should be banned? Why/Why not?

BBC Feeling like a leader



BEFORE YOU WATCH

- 1 SPEAKING** You are going to watch an animation video about leadership. Discuss the questions.
 - Which leaders in your school, community, country or the world do you admire? Why?
 - What qualities do you think natural leaders have in common?
 - Are there things you can do to 'fake' leadership qualities?
- 2** Complete the summary in the screenshot from the video about four ways to appear more like a leader.

WHILE YOU WATCH

- 3** **19** Watch the video and check your answers in Exercise 2.
- 4** Match 1–8 with a–h to make phrases or expressions from the video. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 use expansive hand	☐
2 give	☐
3 look as	☐
4 have a profound	☐
5 project	☐
6 social	☐
7 take up more	☐
8 make	☐

 a assumptions
 b leadership qualities
 c effect
 d animals
 e gestures
 f if you own the place
 g the impression
 h room

- 5** Complete the extracts from the commentary with the phrases and expressions in Exercise 4.
 - ... the bigger you are, the easier it is to _____.
 - As _____, we can _____ about a person from the way they look, and the way they behave.
 - If _____, people will think you do!
 - The way you present yourself has a really _____ on the way you think about yourself.
 - If you use big gestures, you _____, and people get the idea that you're more powerful.
 - Politicians or religious preachers use huge _____ and this _____ that these people are bigger than they actually are.
- 6** **19** Watch the video again and check your answers in Exercise 5.
- 7 SPEAKING** Discuss how much you agree with the statements in Exercise 5.

AFTER YOU WATCH

- 8 SPEAKING** Complete the sentence to best sum up the conclusion in the video. Then discuss whether you think it's possible to 'fake it till you make it'.
If you act like a leader, ...

Focus Vlog About job interviews

Have you ever been to a job interview?
What sort of questions did they ask you?
What did you reply?



1 **SPEAKING** Look at the interview questions in Exercise 2 and discuss the following:

- 1 Which questions are easy/difficult?
- 2 Which questions are predictable/unexpected?
- 3 Which questions would you most/least like to answer?

2 **21** Watch the video and match the people with the questions they were asked. What sort of jobs do you think they were being interviewed for?

- | | |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| 1 Hannah | ☐ |
| 2 Sam | ☐ |
| 3 Kat | ☐ |
| 4 Shaelyn | ☐ |
| 5 Harriet | ☐ |
| 6 Lilee | ☐ |

A What do you know about the store?
What can you bring to the table?

B Will you be able to help customers?
Why are you fit for the job?
Why do you want to work for our company?

C What experience do you have with kids?
Do you have a car?

D Why do you want the job?
What are your strengths and weaknesses?

E What is your previous experience working in foods?

F Are you willing to move for the job?
Are you willing to work overtime?
What is your favourite food?
Are you willing to walk up the stairs?

3 Answer the questions with the names of the speakers in Exercise 2.

- 1 Who said he/she would always be there with a smile? _____
- 2 Who told the interviewer that he/she was a good team player? _____
- 3 Who said he/she was willing to work as hard as he/she possibly could? _____
- 4 Who said he/she was used to kids because he/she was from a big family? _____
- 5 Who described how he/she had served foods in his/her previous job? _____
- 6 Who said he/she had been asked some strange questions? _____
- 7 Who told the company that he/she thought they were ecologically-friendly? _____

4 **21** Watch the video again and check your answers in Exercise 3.

5 **SPEAKING** Have you ever had a job interview? What questions were you asked and how did you reply?

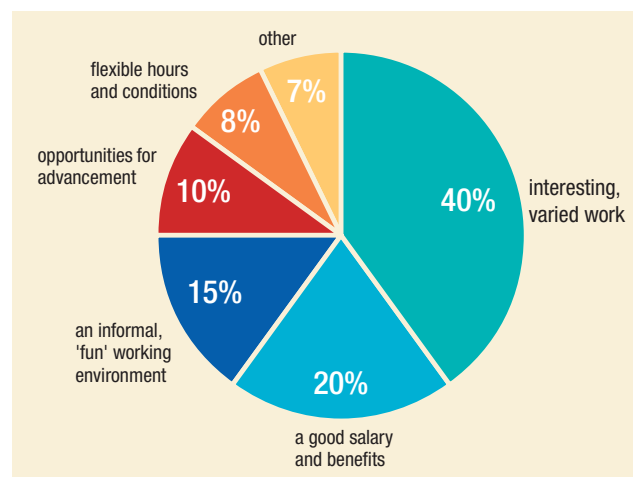
FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Collaboration • Digital skills

6 **SPEAKING** What would be important to you in a job? Discuss the list and add any other ideas you may have. Decide on your top three.

- a good salary and benefits
- opportunities for advancement
- interesting, varied work
- competent, approachable managers
- a positive company culture and mission
- an informal, 'fun' working environment
- flexible hours and conditions

7 Poll other students in your class on their top three. Make notes and count which aspects of work are most important for students. Calculate the percentage. Then use online tools to prepare a bar graph or pie chart to present the poll results.



BBC Is social media killing creativity?



BEFORE YOU WATCH

- Complete the sentences to make them true for you. Then compare with a partner.
 - I carry my phone in ... (e.g. my pocket, my bag)
 - I check my phone ... (e.g. every five minutes, once a day)
 - My favourite social media app is ... (e.g. Instagram, WhatsApp)
- SPEAKING** Discuss some of the questions asked in the video you are going to watch.
 - Is the amount of time we spend on social media a problem?
 - What are some of the ways that you and I can use social media in a better way?
 - Is it true that creativity can actually be good for our health?
 - Do you think that social media can be good for your creativity?

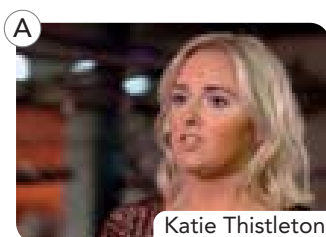
WHILE YOU WATCH

- 25** Watch the video and compare your ideas in Exercise 2 with the answers given in the video.
- Complete the table with some of the comments describing the use of phones in the video. What's the most important advantage/disadvantage of mobile phones for you?

be very careful with your privacy being creative
connectivity easy to get addicted low-quality content
makes you more mindful opened up so many new activities
scrolling through mindlessly

Advantages

Disadvantages



- Look at the photos A–D of the four people in the video. Who ...

- warns that you should educate yourself because you're the publisher of your own data? _____
- doesn't have to plan ahead to bring her phone with her, it's always with her? _____
- can't even count the number of times a day she's on social media? _____
- says creative activities can provide really targeted support for people with mental health conditions? _____
- admits that by nature she's sort of a lazy person? _____
- thinks social media has been fascinating with what it's done to creativity? _____
- is surprised to hear that art on prescription is available on the NHS (National Health Service) already? _____

- 25** Watch the video again and check your answers in Exercise 5.

AFTER YOU WATCH

- SPEAKING** Based on the video and your own ideas, discuss the question which is the title of this lesson: *Is social media killing creativity?* Use ideas and phrases from Exercise 4 and your own ideas.

Focus Vlog About time travel

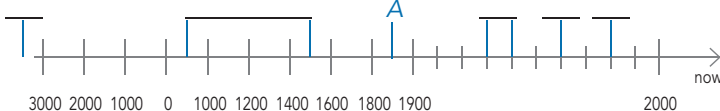
Imagine you could travel back in time. Which decade, century or era would you visit?

Suppose you could meet any famous person dead or alive. Who would you like to meet?



- 1 **SPEAKING** Put the periods in the box on the time line. Discuss why people might want to visit those periods.

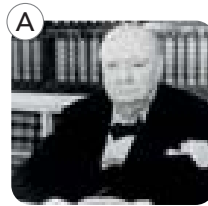
- A Dickensian period (mid nineteenth century)
B The 1980s
C Ancient Egypt
D The late 1930s/early 1940s
E The Middle Ages
F The early 1960s



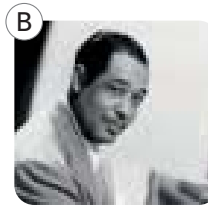
- 2 **27** Watch the first part of the video (up to 2:30) and complete the table. Which periods would the people like to visit and why? Did the answers match any of your ideas in Exercise 1?

	When – which decade, century or era?	Why?
Nick		
Kat		
Sam		
Hassan		
Luke		
Ellie		

- 3 **SPEAKING** Discuss how much you know about the people in the photos. Who would you like to meet?



Winston Churchill
1874–1965



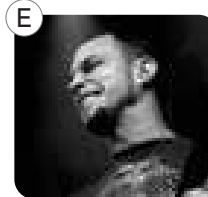
Duke Ellington
1899–1974



Salvador Dali
1904–1989



Frank Sinatra
1915–1998



Mark Tremonti
1974–



Rafael 'Rafa' Nadal
1986–

- 4 **27** Watch the rest of the video (2:31–4:21). Match each speaker with the person they would like to meet.

- 1 Nick ☐ 2 Kat ☐ 3 Sam ☐ 4 Hassan ☐
5 Luke ☐ 6 Ellie ☐

- 5 Answer the questions.

- What would Nick like to ask Mark Tremonti?
- How does Kat think Salvador Dali influenced modern art?
- Why would Sam like to meet Frank Sinatra?
- What does Hassan think of Rafael Nadal?
- Which period does Luke want to ask Winston Churchill about?
- What would Ellie like to know more about Duke Ellington?

- 6 **27** Watch the second part of the video (2:31–4:21) again and check your answers in Exercise 5.

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Collaboration

- 7 **SPEAKING** Think about the history of your own country or the world. Discuss which period you would most like to visit and which person you would most like to meet.

- 8 Prepare a short presentation about the period and the person you chose in Exercise 7.

- Describe the period and say why you would like to visit it.
- Describe the person and say why you would like to meet them.
- Give as much detail as possible and include at least three phrases in the box.

Had I ... If I ... Imagine I ... Provided that ...
Suppose I ... Were I to ...



BBC

Blowing in the wind



BEFORE YOU WATCH

- 1 SPEAKING** Discuss what kind of renewable sources of energy are most common where you live (wind power, solar panels, hydropower, etc.)
- 2** Do the quiz and compare your answers with a partner.

WHILE YOU WATCH

- 3** **29** Watch the video and check your answers in Exercise 2.
- 4** Complete the extracts from the commentary with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(constant engineering nightmare offshore platform skilled turbine wind)

- 1** If you want to harness enough _____ energy to power a town or city you need to go where the wind is at its strongest.
- 2** The largest _____ wind farm in the world is here in Britain.
- 3** Getting these monsters out here presents a whole host of _____ challenges.
- 4** The unpredictable weather conditions and _____ threat of stormy weather makes this an extremely difficult construction site.
- 5** It's an incredibly _____ operation, but they make it look so easy.
- 6** It's just quite awe-inspiring seeing how enormous these _____ blades are.

TODAY'S QUICK QUIZ
Wind Power Points

- 1** The largest offshore wind farm in the world is in **Britain / Denmark / China**.
- 2** The wind farm is built **1 / 10 / 20** miles from the coast (1.6km / 16km / 32km).
- 3** It takes **12 / 24 / 48** hours to construct one turbine in the sea.
- 4** A wind turbine is **50 / 100 / 120** metres wide.
- 5** A single wind turbine can power **30 / 300 / 3,000** houses.

- 5** Put the description of the ship in the correct order.

- stilts to make a stable
- With everything constantly moving, the wind
- solid to work from a solid
- platform standing on the
- turbines are on board.
- base, and this is the solution. A huge
- going and the waves going, you need somewhere
- parts necessary to build the giant
- of the water and stand on giant
- ship called Discovery. It can lift completely out
- seabed. All of the different

☐
☒
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

- 6** **29** Watch the video again and check your answers to Exercises 4 and 5.

AFTER YOU WATCH

- 7 SPEAKING** What are the advantages and disadvantages of being a wind turbine engineer or a TV presenter like Dallas Campbell? What special qualities would you need for each job?

Focus Vlog About science and technology

What kind of technology would you like to be developed in the future?

What technology should be provided free for everyone?



1 SPEAKING Discuss the questions.

- Would you call yourself technology-dependent, not into technology at all or something in between?
- What technology makes your life better?
- What technology would you like to be developed in the future?

2 31 Watch the first part of the video (up to 1:54). Does anyone mention your ideas from Exercise 1?

3 31 Complete as much of the table as you can from memory. Then watch the first part of the video (up to 1:54) again and check your answers.

	Technology	Reason
Lilee	electric cars	
Luke	teleportation	
Sam	solar batteries	
Nick	digital musical instruments	
Nobuse	virtual learning	

4 31 Watch the rest of the video (1:55–2:27). What technology do the speakers think should be free for everyone?

Lilee: _____
 Luke: _____
 Sam: _____
 Nick: _____
 Nobuse: _____

5 Put the answers in Exercise 4 in order of importance for society from 1 to 5 (1 being the most important). Compare with a partner.

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Critical thinking

6 Read a list of tips to pass on to young people when using the Internet. Discuss what you think each tip means. Then read the explanations below.

- Sharing isn't always caring
- A lasting impression
- Remember the human
- True or False?
- Don't believe the hype

THE FIVE GOLDEN RULES OF NETIQUETTE

Sharing isn't always caring

Ask your friends for permission before you post photos of them on social media. They may not like the way they look or come across.

A lasting impression

If you're sending a message or email to someone, think about how you come across. CAPITAL LETTERS or **bold** can look aggressive. Too many emojis and exclamation marks can look childish or silly. Check spelling and punctuation if it's a formal email.

Remember the human

Think before you post. Never post unkind comments on other people's photos and posts, including celebrities and other famous people. They're human too.

True or False?

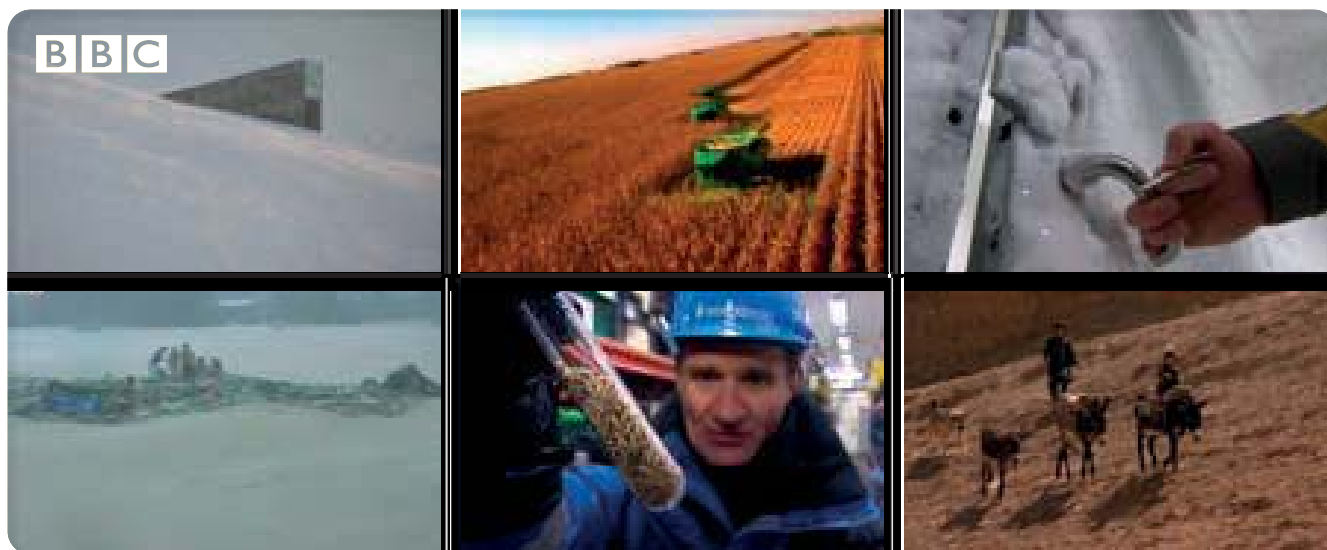
Be careful not to share fake news. Check that something is factually correct and from a reputable source before you share it.

Don't believe the hype

If social media makes you feel that everyone's having more fun and a better lifestyle than you, remember that it's easy to give the impression that life is perfect by choosing photos cleverly. But it's not real life.

7 SPEAKING Discuss whether you agree with the rules of netiquette. Is there anything you'd add or change?

BBC The Global Seed Vault



BEFORE YOU WATCH

1 **SPEAKING** Look at the screenshots from the video and discuss the questions.

- 1 What is the Global Seed Vault?
- 2 Where is it located and why?
- 3 Why do we need it? What is it for?

WHILE YOU WATCH

2 **35** Watch the video and check your ideas in Exercise 1.

3 **35** Complete the sentences with the numbers in the box. Then watch the video again and check your answers.

4,000 12 130 -20 800,000
250 800

- 1 The average temperature inside the vault is _____ degrees Celsius.
- 2 Some seeds will survive for _____ years.
- 3 Most food comes from just _____ varieties of plants.
- 4 The Seed Vault is only _____ miles from the North Pole.
- 5 There are more than _____ plastic packets stored in the vault.
- 6 The Seed Vault is cut _____ metres deep into the permafrost.
- 7 The vault is _____ metres above sea level.

4 **SPEAKING** Discuss the questions about the video.

- 1 Why was the vault built in this **remote, isolated and hostile terrain**?
- 2 Why was the construction of the vault a **major achievement** for Norway?
- 3 Why is the box of seeds carried by the scientists referred to as **precious**?
- 4 Why would the vault survive if global warming melted all the **ice caps**?
- 5 Why does the employee refer to the pharaohs and their pyramids?
- 6 Why does the video show images of **drought, flooding** and **industrial-scale farming**?
- 7 Why is the **Seed Vault** considered to be a 'global insurance policy'?

5 Complete the gaps with the words in bold in Exercise 4. Then complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- 1 My most _____ possession is ...
- 2 A _____ achievement in my life is ...
- 3 The most remote, hostile _____ I've ever experienced is ...
- 4 The worst _____ or flooding in my country was ...
- 5 If all the ice _____ melted, my country would ...
- 6 I think the Global _____ Vault is ...

6 **SPEAKING** Compare and discuss your sentences in Exercise 5.

AFTER YOU WATCH

7 **SPEAKING** The Global Seed Vault is a project to store and preserve seeds 'just in case'. Discuss what else you think the world should store and preserve 'just in case'.

Focus Vlog About regrets

Is there anything you wish you had or hadn't done when you were younger?

How would you like your life to be different from what it is now?



- 1 Complete the two sentences and compare with a partner. Do you share similar wishes and regrets?

When I was younger, I wish I had ...

When I was younger, I wish I hadn't ...

- 2 37 Watch the first part of the video (up to 1:51) and complete the first column of the table.

	As a child ...	Wishes he/she ...
Lilee		
Hannah		
Nick		
Shaelyn		
Kat		
Harriet		

- 3 37 Complete as much of the second column of the table as you can from memory. Then watch the first part of the video again and check your answers. Did the answers match any of your ideas in Exercise 1?
- 4 37 Watch the rest of the video (1:52–3:09). Who do you think is the happiest with their life? Who would like to change where they live?

- 5 37 Complete the quotes with appropriate prepositions. Then watch the rest of the video (1:52–3:09) again and check your answers.

Lilee: I've got some great friends that I've made _____ the way with my travels.

Hannah: I would like to have my friends _____ England living in Sydney so everyone is together.

Nick: I'm very happy with what I have and the people that I have _____ my life.

Shaelyn: I wish I lived _____, say, Mexico, because it has the sea and the surf.

Kat: I think that all my mistakes and choices I made, I made _____ a reason.

Harriet: I'm actually really happy _____ the way my life is now.

- 6 Whose answer do you agree with most? Compare with a partner.

FOCUS ON LIFE SKILLS

Communication • Collaboration

- 7 Take five minutes to do the 'gratitude exercise' below.

- Write down the name of someone in your life who you are grateful to, and why.
- Write down the name of someone in your past who changed your life for the better and explain how.
- Write down three things that have gone well today and explain why.

- 8 **SPEAKING** Compare your answers and discuss the benefits of feeling grateful. Use the phrases below or your own ideas.

I'm grateful to ...
because ...

If it wasn't/hadn't been
for him/her ...

What he/she did
was ...

Not only was
he/she ...

What I really
admire ...

It's ... that really makes
me feel ...

1.2 Present and past habits

To talk about someone's habits and typical behaviour, we can use:

- the Present Simple or the Past Simple to talk about repeated present or past actions or states:
*When I **get** home, I **do** my homework and **practise** the violin. My grandfather **picked** me **up** from school every day.*
- used to** + infinitive to talk about states (e.g. with the verbs *be, have, believe, like*) or actions that happened regularly in the past but are no longer happening in the present. We **do not** use this structure to talk about single past actions:
*When I was at primary school, I **used to be** very eager to learn. I **didn't use to fall behind** with my schoolwork. Did you **use to like** Chemistry?*
- would** + infinitive to talk about past actions or behaviour typical for someone (but **not** states):
*Our Maths teacher **would give** us loads of homework.*
- will** + infinitive to talk about repeated present actions or typical behaviour (but **not** states):
*She'll **watch** TV or **play** games all day instead of studying for her exams.*

Note: We **do not** use the verbs *will/would* in this meaning in questions.

- the Present Continuous or Past Continuous with the adverb *always* to complain about someone's behaviour:
*She's **always putting** things off. My neighbours **were always complaining** about the noise.*

1 Choose the correct option.

- When Marco and I shared a room in a hall of residence, he *was always borrowing / will always borrow* my things without asking.
- When I was a kid, I *would / used to* believe that my dad was a spy.
- Did you ever *use to / used to* cheat in exams?
- It's so annoying. She *will always lose / is always losing* her notebook.
- Martha *would ask / was asking* the teacher plenty of questions after every lesson. She was very curious.
- I *always forget / will forget* to bring a pen. Can I borrow one of yours?

2 Complete the sentences with one word in each gap.

- I **didn't** _____ to worry about exams, but now I do because I need to get the best grades possible.
- When Jim gets home, he _____ start doing his homework until he has something to eat.
- Our Science teacher _____ always tell us to be careful when we do experiments using chemicals.
- Cathy isn't committed to her studies. She _____ always chatting to her friends online for hours instead of doing her homework.
- _____ you use to study a lot when you were at school, Grandpa?' 'Of course! I was an excellent student.'
- When she was a teacher, she _____ correct homework every day after school and at the weekend.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Add extra words where necessary.

- I had a kindergarten teacher who _____ (use/wear) a flower in her hair.
- Have you noticed our History teacher _____ (always/tap) his pen on the desk?
- Our Maths teacher is really forgetful. Sometimes, she _____ (will/set) us homework but forget to collect it.
- Years ago, teachers _____ (not/use/have) the equipment they do now. There was just a blackboard.
- At my secondary school we used to watch videos on an old TV that _____ (always/break down).
- When you were at school, _____ (use/have) a favourite teacher?

4 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the text.

In every class, you get a mix of different personalities. There's generally one kid who's ¹ _____ the centre of attention. They ² _____ something completely inappropriate in the middle of a lesson so everyone laughs. Then there's the shy kid who ³ _____ at the back of the class and ⁴ _____ at their desk when the teacher asks a question. When I was at primary school, I found reading and writing quite difficult and I struggled to keep up with my classmates. I ⁵ _____ much self-confidence. I ⁶ _____ questions because I was convinced I'd get them wrong and look stupid. It seemed like the other kids ⁷ _____ awards for something and I never did. That was until we started studying IT and I suddenly found the thing I was good at. Now I'm regularly top of the class ... at least in one subject anyway.

- A used to be
B always trying to be
C always being
- A 'I'll say
B 're saying
C said
- A 's sitting
B is used to sitting
C sits
- A would always look down
B is always looking down
C won't look down
- A didn't use to have
B wouldn't have
C wasn't always having
- A wouldn't answer
B wasn't answering
C 'm not used to answering
- A used to always winning
B were always winning
C will win

1.5 Verb patterns

Verb patterns

Verbs preceded by other verbs or verb phrases may follow these patterns:

- verb + to + infinitive, e.g. *agree, arrange, can't afford, decide, intend, learn, manage, offer, prefer, refuse, remember, seem, tend*:
I **decided to leave** school and find a job.
My sister **agreed to help** me with my homework.
- verb + object + to + infinitive, e.g. *advise, allow, cause, enable, encourage, expect, force, remind, urge, warn*:
Robert's mother **encouraged him to study** Law.
The teacher **reminded us not to use** our mobile phones during lessons.
- verb + object + infinitive without to, e.g. *make, let*:
Do his parents **let him hang out** with his friends? My parents used to **make me do** a lot of house chores.
- verb + gerund (-ing form), e.g. *admit, avoid, can't help, can't stand, enjoy, fancy, imagine, keep, miss, practise, spend/waste time, stop*:
I **can't stand wearing** a school uniform.
She recently **stopped eating** fast food, and she feels better already.
- verb + gerund (-ing form)/to + infinitive:
After the verbs *begin, continue, hate, intend, like, love, prefer* and *start* we can use both the -ing form and the to infinitive. The meaning stays the same or changes very slightly.
I **started playing** chess. I **started to play** chess.
He **intends using** the school website. He **intends to use** the school website.

Change in meaning

- After the verbs *remember, forget, stop* and *try* we can use both the -ing form and the to infinitive form, however the meaning of the sentence changes:
Jenny **remembers locking** the door. (She remembers that she locked the door.)
Jenny **remembers to lock** the door. (She always remembers to lock the door.)
Dad'll **forget giving** me the money. (He will forget that he gave me the money.)
Dad'll **forget to give** me the money. (He hasn't given me the money and he'll forget to do it.)
Liz **stopped drinking** coffee. (Liz doesn't drink coffee anymore.)
Liz **stopped to drink** some coffee. (Liz stopped doing something in order to drink coffee.)
I **tried turning** the computer off and on again, but it didn't help. (I tried this as an experiment to see if it would work).
I **tried to turn** the computer off, but the shutdown command didn't work. (I made an effort to turn the computer off).
- We use *feel, hear, see, watch* + infinitive without to in order to say we saw the whole action from beginning to end:
I **saw Mary paint** a picture. (I saw Mary start on the painting, paint it and finish painting).
We use *feel, hear, see, watch* + -ing form when we witness only a part of the action.
I **saw Mary painting** a picture. (Mary was painting a picture when I saw her).

- 1 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to five words including the word in capitals.

1 Are you looking for volunteers? You could put a poster up in the school. **TRIED**

Have you _____ a poster in the school?

2 It's really important that you hand in your assignment on Friday. **FORGET**

You must _____ your assignment on Friday.

3 I told him that dropping Spanish was a bad idea. **ENCOURAGED**

I _____ Spanish.

4 Those boots are much too expensive for me to buy. **AFFORD**

I _____ those boots.

5 Janice doesn't go to dance classes any more. She quit two years ago. **STOPPED**

Janice _____ two years ago.

6 We watched the gardener when he planted some flowers in front of the building. They look great. **WATCHED**

We _____ some flowers in front of the building. They look great.

7 Would John like to come to the concert on Sunday? **FANCY**

Does John _____ the concert on Sunday?

8 Jorge has been forbidden from using his dad's computer. **ALLOWED**

Jorge _____ his dad's

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

(add admire bring do drive
eat fix learn splash wear)

1 Thankfully, my sister's really practical and she managed _____ my bike for me.

2 When we arrived at the cabin, it was really dark, but luckily Sam had remembered _____ a torch.

3 When we're at the farm, my uncle sometimes lets me _____ his old van around the fields.

4 I saw some people _____ to kayak on the river and it looked really fun.

5 Of course you can use the bikes, but can you just remind everyone _____ helmets?

6 Everyone needs to wear plastic gloves to avoid _____ the cleaning liquid on their skin.

7 When we reach the top of the hill, we'll stop for a while by that wooden gate _____ the view.

8 Obviously, if you keep _____ white paint to the mix, the colour will get lighter and lighter.

9 My mum makes me _____ lots of fish because it's considered to be brain food.

10 Harry tends _____ his homework at the last minute, which is why he isn't doing well at school.

1.7 Register – formal and informal language

Formal language is used in official documents, letters and emails to people who we do not know very well, and in official invitations. In speech it usually appears in notifications, presentations and speeches.

Informal language is used in private conversations, letters or emails to friends, notes and postcards.

Formal and informal language is expressed through the relevant grammatical structures and suitable vocabulary.

Grammar

- In formal language we use full verb forms, in informal language – contractions, e.g.:
I am contacting you .../I'm contacting you ...
- We do not use abbreviations in formal language, but they are used in informal language:
Could you do it as soon as possible?/Could you do it ASAP?
- Formal language features more passive voice and indirect speech, while in informal language active forms and direct speech are more often used:
The dissertation must be submitted today./You must submit the dissertation today.
It is said/They say that spinach is healthy.
- Formal language also features more indirect questions, beginning with expressions such as:
I was wondering .../Could you tell me ...?/Do you happen to know ...?
We use direct questions in informal language:
I was wondering if there are enough volunteers./Are there enough volunteers?

Vocabulary

- We use more complex expressions and abstract nouns in formal language, while in informal language the expressions or adjectives are simpler:
employment opportunities/a chance to get a job
Is it possible to be happy?/Is happiness possible?
- Many of the words used in formal language are derived from Latin, e.g. **to depart**, **to cease**. Informal language features more vocabulary of Anglo-Saxon origin, e.g. **to go**, **to stop**.
- Formal language features more common verbs, e.g. **appear**. Informal language uses more phrasal verbs, e.g. **turn up**.
- We also use more complex prepositional phrases in formal language, e.g. **in favour of**, and simpler ones in informal language, e.g. **for**.
- Examples of formal linkers are **furthermore/however**. In informal language **and/but** are commonly used.

- 1 Complete the second sentence in each pair by replacing the words in bold with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

(come along go into leave out put off take away)

- Tomorrow's meeting has been **postponed** due to the adverse weather conditions.
We've _____ tomorrow's meeting because of the bad weather.
- Do not **enter** the recording studio when the 'on-air' light is illuminated.
You can't _____ the recording studio if the 'on-air' light's on.
- Kindly inform the centre in advance if you are unable **to attend** the workshop.
Can you please let us know if you can't _____ to the workshop?
- Applicants under the age of eighteen should **omit** section 4.
If you're under eighteen, you can _____ section 4.
- Bottled water may be **confiscated** by airport security.
If you try to take bottled water through security, they might _____ from you.

- 2 Choose the best option for the context.

- An email to a friend:** *Who's coming to / Who is attending the party?*
- An official document:** *More info's / More information is available via the school website.*
- A job application:** *I'm really into / I especially enjoy outdoor activities.*
- A social media comment:** *The whole thing just isn't OK / is unacceptable to me.*
- A conversation:** *Sorry, I've got to go / I must leave now, I'll call you later.*
- An announcement at an event:** *There are toilets / Toilet facilities are located near each exit gate.*

- 3 Read the advertisement and use the information to complete the social media post. Use up to two words in each gap.

Wildlife photography workshop

A one-day photography workshop is being held at the zoo on 28 June with wildlife photographer, Mark Ellis. The event will consist of an introductory session during which Mark will introduce some of the key concepts in wildlife photography and demonstrate a number of techniques.

Then, participants will have the opportunity to photograph some of the zoo's animals. The workshop will conclude with a session during which Mark will critique participants' work. This event is open to all those interested in wildlife photography. Special equipment is not required, but participants should bring their own camera or mobile device.

I've just spotted some info about a wildlife photography workshop. Fancy going? It's on 28th June at the zoo with a top photographer. ¹ _____ an intro session in the morning where the guy will chat a bit about wildlife photography and ² _____ some tips. Then you get to go round the zoo and ³ _____ of the animals. And at the end, he'll take a ⁴ _____ your shots. Anyone can go and you don't ⁵ _____ any fancy gear, just take your ⁶ _____ or camera.

2.2 Past Perfect Simple and Past Perfect Continuous

Past Perfect Simple

We use the Past Perfect Simple:

- to talk about actions that happened before a particular time or event in the past (for which we usually use the Past Simple):
*When I arrived at the wedding reception, the bride's father **had already made** his speech.*
*By the age of sixteen, he **had learnt** to speak three foreign languages.*
- to talk about states that were true or happening before a particular time in the past:
*When my parents got married, they **had known** each other for fifteen years.*

Past Perfect Continuous

We use the Past Perfect Continuous to talk about actions that were in progress up to a particular time in the past (or finished shortly before it):

*The guests **had been waiting** for forty minutes before the bus picked them up.*

*We **hadn't been thinking** about selling the house, but then we got this great offer.*

*How long **had you been sitting** there before I woke up?*

Affirmative			Negative		
I/You/ He/ She/ It/We/ They	had been	sleeping.	I/You/ He/ She/It/ We/ They	hadn't been (had not been)	sleeping.
Yes/No questions			(Short answers)		
Had	I/you/he/ she/it/ we/they	been sleeping?	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they had. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they hadn't.		

Wh- questions				Subject questions		
How long	had	I/you/he/ she/it/ we/they	been sleeping?	Who	had	been sleeping?

Past Perfect Simple vs Past Perfect Continuous

- We use the Past Perfect Simple:
 - to talk about finished actions:
*My father **had visited** his Scottish relatives twice before he finally went to live with them.*
 - to talk about states using stative verbs, e.g. *be*, *have*, *know*, *see*, *believe*:
*I went to see the castle. I **had never seen** such a magnificent building.*
- We use the Past Perfect Continuous to talk about actions, but not states. We stress the duration of the action rather than the result:
*When the head teacher finally arrived, we'd **been discussing** the problem for two hours.*
- When we use time expressions such as *before* or *after*, we do not need to use the Past Perfect Simple or Past Perfect Continuous, because the order of events is clear:
*The children **went** to sleep **before** we came.*

1 Choose the correct option.

- By the time our guests arrived, we *had tidied* / *had been tidying* the living room.
- My neighbours *had played* / *had been playing* music quite loudly all night and I was unable to sleep.
- How long *had you looked* / *had you been looking* for a new apartment before you came across this place?
- My flatmates were annoyed with me because I *hadn't done* / *hadn't been doing* the dishes last night.
- Emma *hadn't saved* / *hadn't been saving* money for long before she bought a second-hand car.
- Had they bought* / *Had they been buying* their new furniture before they moved into their new home?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Past Perfect Simple or the Past Perfect Continuous.

- Robert watches a lot of French cinema but fortunately he _____ (not see) that film before. He loved it!
- I didn't speak to Janet at the reception. By the time I arrived she _____ (already/leave).
- It was such a shame. She _____ (decorate) the tree for about an hour before it fell over.
- I was really tired. I _____ (drive) all the way there without stopping.
- Gina locked the cat in the wardrobe by mistake. The poor thing _____ (cry) for ages before she finally let him out.
- Barbara _____ (not know) that Alex was going to be at the party.
- On the way to the airport I realised that I _____ (leave) my passport at home.
- The streets were all wet because it _____ (rain) heavily since the morning.

3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs and verb phrases in the box.

(get on get to know move out share stay work)

Last year, I moved to a new city to start a job with a big insurance company. I ¹ _____ there for a couple of weeks when I met Natalie in the coffee shop one lunchtime. Up to that point, I ² _____ okay with my job, but I ³ _____ many people. We immediately hit it off. We had lots of things in common and we were soon chatting away. I told her that I ⁴ _____ in a hostel since I'd arrived and that I was looking for a place to live. Coincidentally, her previous flatmate ⁵ _____ just a few days before, so she was looking for someone else to share with. I went to see the flat that evening and I moved in a few days later. I was a bit unsure at first because I ⁶ _____ a flat with anyone before, but we got on really well and we soon became best friends.

2.5 Relative clauses

Defining relative clauses

- They provide information integral to the sentence (without which the sentence makes no sense):
*A stepfather is a man **who** is married to your mother but isn't your father.*
- We do not use commas to separate a defining relative clause from the rest of the sentence:
*The girl **who** is sitting next to the bride is her sister Kerry.*
- Defining relative clauses can start with:
 - *who* or *that*, when talking about people:
*Mrs Wilkes is the person **who/that** moved in last week.*
 - *which* or *that*, when talking about things:
*Would you like to see the house **which/that** is for sale?*
 - *whose*, when talking about possession or ownership:
*I know a girl **whose** parents own a yacht.*
*You shouldn't drive a car **whose** bumper is about to fall off.*
 - *where*, when talking about places:
*This is the place **where** my parents first met.*
- We can leave out the relative pronouns *who*, *which* and *that* when they are followed by a noun or a pronoun:
*He is the man (**who/that**) I want to marry.*
BUT: *This is the man **who/that** wants to marry me.*

Non-defining relative clauses

- They always include a relative pronoun:
*Hector, **who** is a brilliant actor, took the main role.*
- They give additional information, without which the sentence still makes sense:
*Jill, **who** used to be my neighbour, is going to marry my nephew.*
- They are separated by commas from the rest of the sentence:
*The new film, **which** stars Leonardo DiCaprio, will be a huge success.*
- They begin with the same relative pronouns as defining relative clauses, with the exception of *that*:
*My father, **who** lives in Montreal, couldn't come to the funeral.*
*Joyce's new Lexus, **which** she bought last month, cost a fortune.*
*The college building, **where** the event is going to be held, was built in 1645.*
*Yesterday I bumped into Angus, **whose** brother is studying Medicine.*
- Non-defining relative clauses can also comment on the rest of the sentence and are then begun with the pronoun *which*:
*Tom was late for dinner again, **which** made his mother furious.*
*The waiter continued to stare at me, **which** I found extremely annoying.*

Reduced relative clauses

- We use the Present Participle (in the active voice) or the Past Participle (in the passive voice) instead of the relative pronoun and the verb:
*Elderly people **living** alone (= who live alone) should have friends or family to care for them.*
*Children **raised** (= who were raised) in a bilingual environment may begin to speak a little later.*

- They can be both defining and non-defining:
*Do you know the man **talking** (= who is talking) to Mr Schwartz? (defining)*
*Rich people, **accustomed** (= who are accustomed) to luxurious living, will never understand poor people. (non-defining)*

1 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- Kim's the one _____ likes to be the centre of attention the whole time. That's her in the red dress.
A who B whom C which
- There's a new magazine on the market _____ you how to play guitar.
A what teaches B teaches C teaching
- Barbara is an only child, _____ a lot about her behaviour at times.
A explaining B which explains C that explains
- Isn't this the same place _____ we saw on the way here?
A what B – C where
- The wedding I went to, _____ was in Porto, was actually very nice. And the bride was beautiful.
A where B that C which
- According to some, children _____ to break rules become more independent thinkers.
A taught B teaching C that taught
- That's the man _____ conducted the ceremony last night. Doesn't he look different in casual clothes?
A – B that C which

2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the number of words shown in brackets.

- My older brother, who is studying in Australia, doesn't get home very often.
My older brother, _____, doesn't get home very often. (3)
- Children who grow up with two languages at home find it easy to switch between them.
Children _____ two languages at home find it easy to switch between them. (3)
- Spanish and French are the languages which were spoken by my family as I was growing up.
Spanish and French are the languages _____ as I was growing up. (4)
- My mother, who was sent away to school at a young age, didn't have a close relationship with her parents.
My mother, _____ at a young age, didn't have a close relationship with her parents. (4)
- My sister, who was diagnosed with dyslexia at school, went on to get a PhD in Physics.
My sister, _____ at school, went on to get a PhD in Physics. (3)

2.7 Collocations

Collocations are formed when two or more words are used together to form a logical expression. Unlike in idioms, the meaning of a collocation is derived from the meaning of its parts. Collocations may be divided into two categories: weak, where one word can form many collocations with other lexical items, e.g. **take a photo/notes/a break** and strong ones, where the separate words do not form many other collocations, e.g. **common sense**. Often collocations are made from more than two words, e.g.:

healthy lifestyle

lead a healthy lifestyle

When we use collocations correctly, the language we speak or write seems more natural.

Types of collocations:

• **adjective + noun:**

My brother has a **vivid imagination**.

I only wear these earrings on **social occasions**.

• **verb + noun:**

Try not to **lose touch** with your friends after high school.

Make sure you **keep an eye** on Maggie.

• **noun + verb:**

Be careful when the **doors open** so that you don't get hit.

Snow has been falling heavily recently.

• **noun (of/and/for) + noun:**

Tim's **desire for knowledge** is impressive.

What's your **home town** like?

• **verb + adjective/numeral:**

Who **came first**?

You **looked beautiful** at the ball.

• **adjective + adjective:**

The rooms looked **neat and tidy**.

We were told **loud and clear** what to do in an emergency.

• **verb + adverb:**

Hold tightly onto me when you're going down those stairs.

She **smiled politely**.

• **adverb + adjective:**

We want to rent a **fully furnished** flat.

It's **perfectly normal** that you're afraid of the operation.

1 Choose the correct option.

- Max has a *mean / nasty* habit of coughing without covering his mouth.
- Her incredible *sense / feeling* of humour has made her popular among her colleagues.
- Yesterday's flooding of several neighbourhoods was the result of *hard / heavy* rainfall.
- He had raised his voice and I could hear him loud and clearly / *clear* from the other room.
- Sam *shook / shrugged* her shoulders in reply when I asked her if she wanted to go out.

2 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- When I finally heard the news I just _____ into tears. It was such a relief.
A fell B broke C burst
- Diana is _____ shy and she absolutely hates speaking in public.
A bitterly B painfully C perfectly
- When the lights suddenly _____, several people in the hall screamed.
A went out B switched off C closed down
- Make sure you hold the fabric _____ in place while you stitch around the edges.
A clearly B tightly C strongly
- If everyone's prepared to compromise, I'm sure we can _____ an agreement.
A reach B find C make
- If they start talking about the competition, just _____ quiet and pretend you don't know anything.
A come B keep C hold
- The company expects _____ standards of all its staff, especially those dealing directly with customers.
A high B full C good
- Joanna's always had a _____ imagination. It's no surprise she became a novelist.
A strong B creative C vivid

3 Complete the text with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(attention come interest leave neat
normal quiet smart spare strong)

Empty Nest Syndrome

When children ¹ _____ home to go off to university, many parents are looking forward to a ² _____ life without all the noise and disruption of a houseful of teens. They dream about how easy it'll be to keep the house ³ _____ and tidy at last. They plan to turn the kids' bedrooms into ⁴ _____ rooms so that friends can come and visit. They can't wait to do things as a couple again without the kids being the centre of ⁵ _____.

But when the time comes and the house is suddenly quiet, it can ⁶ _____ as a bit of a shock. Many parents experience ⁷ _____ feelings of loss. Others suffer anxiety about how their off spring are coping without them. All these emotions are perfectly ⁸ _____ though and just part of adjusting to a new stage of life. There's even a name for it: Empty Nest Syndrome.

3.2 Future forms including the Future Perfect Continuous

Future Continuous

We use the Future Continuous:

- to talk about actions which will be in progress at a particular time in the future:
This time tomorrow we'll be flying to the Maldives.
- to talk about planned or routine future events, actions or situations:
I'll be going to the supermarket after work.
- to form polite questions or requests:
Will you be doing the first aid course this month?
Will you be using your car tomorrow? (because I'd like to borrow it)

Affirmative			Negative		
I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	'll (will)	be sleeping.	I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	won't (will not)	be sleeping.
Yes/No questions			Short answers		
Will	I/you/ he/she/ it/we/ they	be sleeping?	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they will. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they won't.		

Wh- questions			Subject questions		
How long	will	I/you/he/ she/it/ we/they	be sleeping?	Who	will be sleeping?

Future Perfect Simple

We use the Future Perfect Simple to talk about actions or situations which will be completed before a certain time in the future:

They will have left by 6 o'clock.

Affirmative			Negative		
I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	'll (will)	have finished by 10.	I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	won't (will not)	have finished by 10.
Yes/No questions			Short answers		
Will	I/you/ he/she/ it/we/ they	have finished by 10?	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they will. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they won't.		

Wh- questions			Subject questions		
How long	will	I/you/he/ she/it/ we/they	have finished?	Who	will have finished by 10?

Future Perfect Continuous

We use the Future Perfect Continuous to talk about actions or states which will have been in progress for some time by a certain time in the future:

By the end of the year, we will have been living in Toronto for eight years.

Affirmative			Negative		
I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	'll (will)	have been working for twelve hours.	I/You/ He/She/ It/We/ They	won't (will not)	have been working for twelve hours.
Yes/No questions			Short answers		
Will	I/you/ he/she/ it/we/ they	have been working for twelve hours?	Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/they will. No, I/you/he/she/it/we/they won't.		

Wh- questions			Subject questions		
How long	will	I/you/ he/she/ it/we/ they	have been working?	Who	will have been working for twelve hours?

Typical time expressions used with the Future Perfect Simple and Future Perfect Continuous are:

- by 2030/next month/next year
- by then
- by the time
- in two days'/three weeks'/one month's/ten years' time

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Future Continuous, the Future Perfect Simple or the Future Perfect Continuous.

- This time next week I _____ (work) here for three years. Doesn't time fly?
- Robert can't meet us at 6 p.m. He _____ (not finish) his homework by then.
- _____ (you/read) that book by Friday? I promised to lend it to Ana.
- Sasha _____ (visit) her grandfather tomorrow, so we can't meet for coffee like we usually do.
- I _____ (volunteer) as a lifeguard for three years in a row after this summer.
- This article says we _____ (not live) in space for at least another 200 years.
- _____ (you/collect) Pietro from the train station tomorrow or do I need to go?
- By June next year, we _____ (come) to France for our annual holiday for ten years.

3.5 Quantifiers

Quantifier	Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns
each/every	each/every Each/Every book costs 10 pounds.	
all	all All the books were quite cheap. All the furniture was quite cheap.	
most	most Most books were quite cheap. Most of the furniture was quite cheap.	
whole	whole I've read the whole book.	
many/much/ a great deal of	many Questions/negative: Have you got many books? I haven't got many books.	much/a great deal of Questions/negative: Have you got much/a great deal of furniture? I haven't got much/a great deal of furniture.
a lot of/ lots of/ loads of/ plenty of	a lot of/lots of/loads of/plenty of I've got a lot of/lots of/loads of/plenty of books. I've got a lot of/lots of/loads of/plenty of furniture.	
a number of/several/ a few/ a couple of/a little	a number of/several/ a few/a couple of I've got a number of/ several/a few/ a couple of books.	a little I've got a little furniture.
some	some I've got some books/furniture.	
few/little	few I've got very few books.	little I've got little furniture.
both	both Both these books are mine.	
either	either (for two people/things) You can buy either book.	
neither	neither (for two people/things) Neither book was expensive.	
no/none of	no I've got no books/furniture. none of None of the books/furniture belongs to me.	

- The following quantifiers are always used with the preposition *of*: *a number of*, *a couple of*, *a great deal of*, *a lot of*, *lots of*, *loads of*, *plenty of*, *none of*.
- All other quantifiers (except *no* and *every*) can be used with the preposition *of*, if it is followed by: a personal pronoun, a pronoun (possessive or demonstrative) + noun or the article *the*:

Most shops/**Most of the** shops were open.

John spent **most of his** life on a farm.

A few of us took a taxi home.

1 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- I'm afraid only _____ people decided to come, so we won't be putting on the show.
A a few B little C few
- I hear that _____ people are still unaware of the plans to build a multi-storey car park in the city centre.
A most of B most C none of
- The head teacher said that _____ of the students that caused the fire will be allowed to go on the trip next week.
A none B no C very little
- This flat has a slightly bigger living room than the other one, but I'm afraid _____ of them have cable TV.
A either B both C neither
- Why is there only _____ water left? Barbara bought three bottles for the trip.
A any B a few C a little
- Jenny can come in our car too – there's _____ of space.
A plenty B some C a couple
- There's a great _____ of traffic on the roads today, so I'm going to take the underground to work.
A number B lot C deal
- There are _____ vacant shops on the high street, which is a bad sign for the local economy.
A plenty B several C few

2 Complete the sentences with the quantifiers in the box. There are three extra words.

(a couple all each either few little many much neither no none plenty some whole)

- There are two single beds in the spare room, but _____ of them have sheets on them at the moment, I'm afraid.
- You'll find _____ of cups and mugs in the cupboard above the kettle. There should be enough for everyone.
- There isn't _____ space left in the wardrobe, but you could put a box of stuff under the bed.
- We have a separate heating control in _____ room, so you can keep the rooms you use warm without wasting energy.
- Modern kitchen appliances are pretty energy efficient and use very _____ electricity.
- Annoyingly, there's _____ mobile signal inside the flat, so you have to go out on the balcony if you want to make a call.
- When we got home, _____ of the lights were working. It turned out there was a power cut, so we had to find _____ candles.
- We've only got _____ of chairs in the kitchen, so Maggie and Jan took those and I brought in a stool from the other room.
- How greedy of Tom to eat a _____ family-sized pizza by himself!
- There are two ways to get to the capital from the village and we can take _____ route.

3.7 Determiners

Both

Both is used to refer to two people or things. It may be used with countable nouns or pronouns:

Both (of the) cities are interesting.

I've visited **both of them**.

Each, every and all

- The determiners **each** and **every** are used with singular nouns. **Each** is used when we separately refer to two or more things/people in a group, while **every** is used to talk about the whole group of three or more people or things together (similarly to **all**):

Each tourist learnt to say a few words in the tribe's native language.

The tourists listened attentively to **every word** the guide said.

- Every** and **all** (but not **each**) may be modified by the adverbs *almost*, *nearly*, *practically*:
Kate has seen **nearly every** art gallery.
- All** is used with plural nouns or pronouns and refers to three or more items/people:
All (of) the guidebooks were interesting.
All of them were interesting.
- Both**, **each (one)**, **every one** and **all** may be followed by **of** when they precede either a personal pronoun, or a pronoun (possessive or demonstrative) + plural noun, or a definite article + plural noun:
Both maps were useful.
Both of my maps were useful.
Both of the maps were useful.
Both of them were useful.

All and whole

- Whole** is used with countable singular nouns:
I spent **a whole day** on the beach.
- All** is usually used with uncountable nouns. When used with countable nouns, it refers to a period of time:
All the accommodation is booked.
He stayed there **all winter**.

Another, other, the other(s), the other ones

- Another** is used with singular nouns or the pronoun *one*:
Let's think about **another place** to meet.
I've already had a sandwich, so I don't want **another one**.
- Other** is used with plural countable nouns, uncountable nouns or the pronoun *ones*:
We need **other people** to help us.
I think you should pick **other furniture** – it should be easy to clean.
These curtains are ugly. We need **other ones**.
- The other** is used with countable nouns or the pronoun *one/ones*. It also refers to one item out of two:
I booked this hotel because **the other ones** are full.
Can you show me **the other side** of your hand?
- The others** is not followed by any nouns or pronouns:
I can see some tourists from our group. Where are **the others**?

Each other/one another

We use **each other** and **one another** to describe a relation or an activity performed by two or more persons, and when the subject and object are different:

The tourists helped **each other/one another** with their bags.

1 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the words in capitals.

- The biscuits are delicious. Do you mind if I have one more? **ANOTHER**
The biscuits are delicious. Do you mind if I _____ ?
- The cottage isn't suitable for wheelchair users because the two bedrooms are located on the first floor. **BOTH**
The cottage isn't suitable for wheelchair users because _____ .
- There's enough room at the dining table for all the family to eat together. **WHOLE**
There's enough room at the dining table _____ .
- All the rooms in the hotel are unique and decorated in a different style. **EACH**
_____ unique and decorated in a different style.
- The buses from the city centre to the castle leave at twenty-minute intervals. **EVERY**
The buses from the city centre to the castle _____ .
- Some of our friends are here, but where is everybody else? **OTHERS**
Some of our friends are here, but where are _____ ?
- The plans for the bridge were approved by every person on the committee. **ALL**
_____ on the committee approved the plans for the bridge.

2 Complete the text with the words and phrases from the box. There are two extra options.

(all of another both of each each of
every other others)

Unique stays

Have you ever dreamed of staying in a treehouse in the middle of the Black Forest? Or perhaps you'd like to fall asleep looking up at the stars high in the Arctic Circle from the comfort of a warm bed? Now you can. We offer the chance for you to stay in ¹_____ these unique locations plus ²_____ equally special places across Europe and beyond.

We have more than twenty unique holiday rentals; ³_____ them has their own special charms. There are cosy cabins hidden deep in the woods, glass cubes with 360° wilderness views and even a hut that rotates to follow the sun. We have properties in almost ⁴_____ type of landscape imaginable; forest, mountains, coast, Arctic wilderness, even desert.

⁵_____ property sleeps two to six people and ⁶_____ them offer luxury accommodation.

Visit our website to start your adventure now.

4.2 Question tags and reply questions

Question tags

- Question tags are short questions added at the end of the sentence to ask for confirmation (falling intonation) or ask a question (rising intonation):

*She's gorgeous, **isn't she?***

- We form question tags using auxiliary verbs *be*, *have*, *do*, *will* or modal verbs, e.g. *can*, *should*, and the pronoun corresponding to the subject, e.g. *I*, *you*, *she*, *they*.

- Question tags for affirmative sentences usually take the negative form:

*You've already been to this café, **haven't you?***

*They made a formal complaint, **didn't they?***

- Question tags for negative sentences usually take the affirmative form:

*Olivia **can't** swim, **can she?***

*You **aren't** going to reduce the price, **are you?***

Other forms of question tags

- In sentences with *I'm* we use the question tag **aren't I?**:

*I'm late, **aren't I?***

- In sentences with *Let's* we use the question tag **shall we?**:

*Let's meet for a coffee later, **shall we?***

- In sentences with negative adverbs, such as *never*, *rarely*, *seldom*, *hardly* or *barely*, or the words *no* or *nobody*, we use an affirmative question tag:

*I **hardly** know you, **do I?***

*They **never** listen to you, **do they?***

- In affirmative imperative sentences we use *will*, *would*, *can/can't* or *could*, depending on the context. In negative imperative questions we always use the question tag **will you?**:

*Wait for me here, **will you/could you?***

*Don't spend too much, **will you?***

- In sentences where the pronoun *something* or *nothing* is the subject, we use a question tag with the pronoun *it*. If the subject is *nothing*, we always use an affirmative question tag:

*Something is wrong, **isn't it?***

*Nothing can be done, **can it?***

- In sentences with *everybody*, *everyone*, *no one* or *nobody* as the subject, we use a question tag with the pronoun **they** and the plural form of the verb. If the subject is *no one* or *nobody*, we always use an affirmative question tag:

*Everybody/Everyone will ask questions, **won't they?***

*Nobody/No one signed up for the dressmaking course, **did they?***

- In sentences with the pronoun *that* as the subject, we use a question tag with the pronoun **it**:

*That's your new car over there, **isn't it?***

- In sentences with *there is/there are* (in all tenses), we repeat the pronoun *there* in the question tag:

*There was a security alarm in the store, **wasn't there?***

*There won't be any problems with the complaint, **will there?***

Reply questions

We use reply questions to show interest in what somebody is saying and to signal that we want more details.

Affirmative sentence + affirmative reply question:

'I went to the new shop in Green Street yesterday.' 'Did you?'

'Your dad lent me some money.' 'Did he?'

Negative sentence + negative reply question:

'Chris and Lisa aren't flying to Japan after all.' 'Aren't they?'

'I never buy shoes online.' 'Don't you?'

1 Choose the correct option.

- She hates being criticised, *isn't / doesn't* she?
- Don't buy the first coat you see, *will / could* you?
- I'm the last to arrive, *don't / aren't* I?
- Nobody in the complaints department helped you, *did / didn't* they?
- There wasn't anything affordable in that shop, *was it / there*?
- He's just placed his order, *hasn't / didn't* he?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct question tag.

- You've forgotten to post my letters, _____?
- I think I'm going to have to start again from the beginning, _____?
- No matter what we do, nothing will change, _____?
- Don't get lost, _____?
- I guess there'll be no buses going to Woodside on New Year's Day, _____?
- Everybody loves chocolate cake, _____?
- Nobody's in the changing room at the moment, _____?
- Let's get something to eat first, _____?

3 Write the correct reply questions to complete the dialogues.

- A: I'm not going to the theatre tomorrow.
B: _____?
- A: My brother never buys anything online.
B: _____?
- A: I think the shop on the corner sells bus tickets.
B: _____?
- A: I don't think you can book a table in advance.
B: _____?
- A: They don't allow you to take your own drinks into the stadium.
B: _____?
- A: Don't worry, most foreign films have subtitles.
B: _____?

4.5 Present and past modal structures

The present

To give advice, express necessity or lack of necessity, we use:

- modal verbs **should/shouldn't** and **ought to/oughtn't to**:
You **should/ought to eat** more fruit and vegetables.
You **shouldn't/oughtn't to spend** so much money on clothes.
- modal verb **must/mustn't**:
You **must try** that spa – it's really wonderful!
You **mustn't spoil** her.
- verb **need to/needn't**:
You **need to have** the receipt if you want to return the dress.
I can hear you, you **needn't shout**.
- the structure **had better/had better not**:
You'd **better check** the price online before you buy a phone here.
You'd **better not be** late this time.

The past

- To say that something was or wasn't necessary, we use **had to/didn't have to**:
Ella's car broke down, so she **had to** take a taxi.
There was nobody at the desk, but luckily I **didn't have to** wait long.
- To express regret or criticism about something that happened or didn't happen, or to give advice, we use **ought (not) to/should (not) + have + Past Participle**:
We **should have booked/ought to have booked** a different hotel. This one is terrible.
My parents **shouldn't have sold/oughtn't to have sold** their camper van.
- To say that an action was not necessary, we can also use **didn't need to + infinitive** or **needn't have + Past Participle**. There is a difference in meaning:
I **didn't need to cook** dinner for the children yesterday because they were away. (So I didn't cook it.)
I **needn't have cooked** dinner for the children yesterday because they weren't hungry and didn't touch anything. (I cooked it but didn't have to.)
- The modal verb **must** and the structure **had better** are not used in the past.

1 Match the sentence halves.

- We really ought ☐
- You'd better ☐
- We should have ☐
- You mustn't ☐
- She needn't ☐

- not wait too long before you book your flight.
- have made a cake as I'd bought one earlier.
- to reduce our spending and try to save.
- taken the train instead of driving; just look at the traffic!
- speed when you drive; it's quite dangerous.

2 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the sentences.

- We got a travel card when we arrived in the city so that we _____ tickets every time we went on the metro.
A didn't have to buy B needn't have bought
C shouldn't have bought
- Of course, we _____ in the city centre. The car parks are ridiculously expensive.
A didn't have to park B needn't have parked
C shouldn't have parked
- We booked a table in advance, but when we arrived, the restaurant was fairly empty, so we _____.
A didn't need to bother B mustn't have bothered
C needn't have bothered
- If you're going to be queuing for a long time, _____ some water with you. It's going to be a really hot day.
A you'd better take B you had to take
C you needn't take
- Legally, if the customers were under sixteen, the venue ought _____ sold them tickets without permission from an adult.
A to have not B not have
C not to have
- I bought a ticket for the bus, but I _____ it to anyone when I got on or during the journey.
A needn't have shown B didn't need to show
C shouldn't have shown

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to five words including the word in capitals.

- It was wrong that you told her that I was leaving. I thought I could trust you. **OUGHT**
You really _____ her that I was leaving. I thought I could trust you.
- It's not very wise to write your PIN number on your credit card. **BETTER**
You _____ your PIN number on your credit card.
- My train was cancelled but fortunately another one came quite quickly. **HAVE**
My train was cancelled, but fortunately I _____ long for another.
- It was a mistake to buy the tickets for the auction in advance. There were still plenty on sale on the door. **NEEDN'T**
It wasn't until they got to the auction that they realised they _____ the tickets in advance.
- Patty returned the shoes because the sole came off. **HAD**
Patty _____ the shoes because the sole came off.
- The car isn't here. I'm sure Jake took it. **MUST**
The car isn't here. Jake _____ it.

4.7 Modality – alternative structures

We can also use alternative structures to express modality in situations when modal verbs are not usually used (e.g. in past or future tenses, or infinitive clauses):

*I **must** help him.*

*I **had to/was obliged to** help him.*

Probability

Modal verbs: **can, can't, could, may, might, must** and:

- **be likely unlikely to do that:**

*Tim **is likely to** sell the house.*

*It **was unlikely that** Jenny's offer would win.*

- **be bound to do:**

*You're **bound to** feel nervous before the auction.*

- **be sure to do:**

*She **is sure to** pay a lot if she wants to buy that flat.*

- **be certain to do:**

*The manager **is certain to** ask difficult questions.*

Ability

Modal verbs: **can, can't, could** and:

- **be able/unable to do:**

*Zoe **was unable to** open a bank account.*

- **manage to do:**

*Will you **manage to** help her?*

- **succeed in doing:**

*I **succeeded in** exchanging the trousers with no receipt.*

Permission

Modal verbs: **can, could, may** and:

- **be allowed to do:**

*Will I **be allowed to** join the club?*

- **be permitted to do:**

*Students **were permitted to** open a charity shop.*

Prohibition

Modal verbs: **can't, couldn't, may not, shouldn't, mustn't** and:

- **not be allowed to do:**

*The school shop **isn't allowed to** sell any sweets.*

- **be forbidden to do/from doing:**

*Guests **are forbidden to** use the pool after 11 p.m.*

- **be banned from doing:**

*Students **were banned from** taking food into the room.*

Obligation

Modal verbs: **must, should** and:

- **have to do:**

*You **have to** pay for extra luggage.*

- **need to do:**

*We **need to** borrow money to go on a holiday.*

- **ought to do:**

*Producers **ought to** choose names for their products carefully.*

Ought to is a 'semi-modal' verb. Although unlike modal verbs, it is used with the *to* + infinitive and it shares the other features of modal verbs.

- **be obliged to do:**

*Is he **obliged to** pay for the damage?*

- **be required to do:**

*They **are required to** be punctual.*

- **be supposed to do:**

*You're **supposed to** sign both copies.*

- **be meant to do:**

*I **meant to** text you but I forgot.*

- 1 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use between three and five words including the words in capitals.

1 Unfortunately, they didn't manage to meet their crowdfunding target. **SUCCEED**

Unfortunately, they _____ their crowdfunding target.

2 The band's very popular, so the tickets will probably sell out quickly. **LIKELY**

The band's very popular, so the tickets _____ quickly.

3 You can't go into the backstage area without a security pass. **ALLOWED**

You _____ into the backstage area without a security pass.

4 We couldn't get the book you wanted because it was out of stock. **MANAGE**

We _____ the book you wanted because it was out of stock.

5 The phone should come with a charger, but it wasn't in the box. **MEANT**

The phone _____ a charger, but it wasn't in the box.

6 Alex can't train with the team because he insulted one of the instructors. **BANNED**

Alex _____ with the team because he insulted one of the instructors.

7 It's highly likely he'll withdraw from the tournament due to his injury. **BOUND**

He _____ from the tournament due to his injury.

8 Karl couldn't answer the professor's tricky questions. **ABLE**

Karl _____ the professor's tricky questions.

9 Students can't leave the school without parental permission. **FORBIDDEN**

Students _____ the school without parental permission.

5.2 Reported speech

- In Reported Speech we change the following:
 - time expressions and words referring to places (depending on the context)
 - demonstrative pronouns, personal pronouns, object pronouns and possessive adjectives (depending on the context)
 - most tenses in affirmative sentences and in questions, but only when the reporting verb is in the past tense (e.g. *he said, she told me, he asked*).
- If the reporting verb is in the present tense (e.g. Present Simple or Present Perfect), we **do not** change the tense in the reported statement:

'I'm not satisfied with your performance.' → *The teacher has said she is not satisfied with my performance.*

'How do you handle stress?' → *She wants to know how I handle stress.*
- Even when the reporting verb is in the past tense, we do not change the following in the reported statement:
 - verbs in the Past Perfect Simple and Past Perfect Continuous:

'Before my resignation I had been working on an environmental project.' → *The candidate said that before his resignation he had been working on an environmental project.*

'Had you ever been to a job interview before that last one?' → *I asked my neighbour if she had ever been to a job interview before that last one.*
 - modal verbs *would, should, could, might, must*:

'During the interview you should try to make eye contact.' → *The advisor told me that during the interview I should try to make eye contact.*

'We must all try harder.' → *The manager said that we must all try harder.*

1 Report the statements. Tick the statements which DON'T move back one tense when reported.

- 'You need to fill out an application form.'
She says _____ ☐
- 'Candidates must speak good English.'
The job advert said _____
_____. ☐
- 'I really want to improve my career prospects.'
Ben's told me _____
_____. ☐
- 'I'd like to express my interest in this vacant post.'
He said _____
_____. ☐
- 'Magda hasn't really achieved her goals.'
Rob told me _____
_____. ☐
- 'I had never had a job interview before.'
Paula said _____
_____. ☐
- 'We're struggling to meet our deadline.'
Matt said _____ ☐
- 'They have found the perfect candidate for the job.'
She said _____
_____. ☐

2 Report the questions and requests.

- 'Can you wait here for a few minutes?'
She wants to know _____.
- 'Please, sign in at reception when you arrive.'
They told me _____.
- 'Have you already sent us a copy of your qualifications?'
She asked _____.
- 'Log on to our website to update your contact details.'
The job agency has asked us _____.
- 'Could you give me the report by noon today?'
John asked _____.
- 'Will I need to wear a uniform?'
I asked the interviewer _____.

3 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the dialogue.

- Max:** How did your interview go?
- Nina:** I think it was okay, but I struggled with some of the questions.
- Max:** Like what?
- Nina:** Well, she asked me what ¹ ____.
- Max:** Oh, that's difficult. What did you say?
- Nina:** I said that I ² ____ at speaking in public. I told her that I ³ ____ in front of a big group of people.
- Max:** That sounds okay. But do you need to speak in public for the job?
- Nina:** Not really. I asked her ⁴ ____ in front of people and she told me ⁵ _____. She said that I might ⁶ ____ presentations in meetings occasionally, but she said that it ⁷ ____ in front of a lot of people.
- Max:** It was a good answer to the question, then.
- You were honest, but you didn't say ⁸ ____ a weakness that's going to affect your ability to do the job.

- A** my biggest weakness was **B** was my biggest weakness
C is my biggest weakness
- A** haven't been very good **B** hadn't been very good
C wasn't very good
- A** 've got nervous **B** 'd got nervous
C got nervous
- A** if I need to speak **B** will I need to speak
C whether I'd need to speak
- A** to not worry **B** not to worry
C don't worry
- A** have needed to give **B** need to give
C need to have given
- A** won't be **B** wouldn't have been
C wouldn't be
- A** you've had **B** you had
C you'd had

4 Now write the conversation between Nina and the interviewer in Exercise 3.

- Interviewer:** What's _____ ?
- Nina:** I _____ .
_____ ?
- Interviewer:** _____ .

5.5 Reporting verbs

Although we usually use the verbs *say* or *tell* to report statements, there are also many other reporting verbs that may be used in different forms.

Verbs without a direct object

- verb + (that) (e.g.: *add, admit, agree, claim, complain, deny, explain, insist, promise, propose, recommend, regret, suggest*):
'I wasted a lot of money.' → Sue **complained (that)** she had wasted a lot of money.
- verb + (not) to + infinitive (e.g.: *agree, claim, decide, offer, promise, refuse, threaten*):
'I'll hire two new employees.' → The manager **decided to** hire two new employees.
- verb + (not) -ing (e.g.: *admit, deny, propose, recommend, regret, suggest*):
'I didn't take the money.' → The cashier **denied taking** the money.
- verb + preposition + (not) -ing (e.g.: *apologise for, insist on, object to*):
'I'm sorry I was rude.' → I **apologised for being** rude.

Verbs with a direct object

- verb + object + (that) (e.g.: *advise, assure, convince, inform, persuade, promise, remind, tell, warn*):
'The meeting will start in an hour.' → The secretary **reminded them (that)** the meeting would start in an hour.
- verb + object + (not) to + infinitive (e.g.: *advise, ask, beg, convince, encourage, invite, order, persuade, recommend, remind, tell, warn, urge*):
'You really should apply for this job.' → Everybody **encouraged me to apply** for that job.
- verb + object + preposition + (not) -ing (e.g.: *accuse sb of, blame sb for, criticise sb for, congratulate sb on, praise sb for, suspect sb of, thank sb for*):
'It's your fault that the car was damaged.' → Joe's boss **blames him for damaging** the car.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use a preposition if necessary.

- She reminded me _____ (fulfil) my duties.
- Jonathan suggested _____ (hire) an interior designer.
- She persuaded me _____ (not/step down).
- I was blamed _____ (cause) unnecessary problems.
- He threatened _____ (tell) the boss about my lack of experience.
- She congratulated me _____ (win) first prize.
- Would you advise me _____ (do) a course in accountancy?
- He is suspected _____ (sell) top-secret information.

2 Complete the text with the correct form of the reporting verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

agree congratulate explain invite persuade
promise suggest thank warn

Recently, my cousin asked me to help him sell his homemade cookies at a music festival. I wasn't very keen at first, but he ¹ _____ me to do it, saying it would probably only take a couple of hours. He ² _____ that he only had a few boxes of cookies to sell and that they'd sell really quickly. He also ³ _____ to split the profits fifty-fifty. I ⁴ _____ to help out, but I ⁵ _____ him that I wouldn't stay longer than two or three hours. To my surprise, the cookies proved to be really popular and they sold out in just over an hour! My cousin was delighted and ⁶ _____ me for making his new business such a success. He's also ⁷ _____ me to work with him again at the next festival.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions or write Ø if no preposition is needed.

- The company later apologised _____ misleading its customers.
- Some people object _____ receiving marketing emails from companies.
- The store denied _____ selling fake goods.
- The manager thanked everyone _____ their hard work.
- At least one person has admitted _____ using a fake ID to get into the venue.
- He blamed problems with the IT system _____ missing the deadline.
- Several experts have proposed _____ cutting the working day to just five hours.

4 Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first. Use the reporting verbs in brackets.

- 'The service here is terrible!'
She _____ . (complain)
- 'You really must invest in the company,' he said to me.
He _____ . (convince)
- 'Put your wallet away; we're going to pay for dinner.'
They _____ . (insist)
- 'Take your umbrella,' she said to him.
She _____ . (remind)
- 'I bought shares in that company; what a stupid thing to do!'
He _____ . (regret)
- 'You committed fraud,' they said to her.
They _____ . (accuse)

5.7 Phrasal verbs – advanced points

Three-part phrasal verbs

Three-part phrasal verbs are usually formed with a common verb and a variety of adverbial and prepositional particles:

Tom **dropped out of** school after failing his exams.

You should **stand up for** what you believe in.

Kate couldn't **keep up with** other students.

Three-part phrasal verbs are inseparable; the object (a noun or pronoun) follows the whole phrasal verb:

We are sure to **come up against** a lot of opposition.

~~We are sure to come up a lot of opposition against.~~

Word building with phrasal verbs

• Nouns

- **verb + adverbial/prepositional particle**: clear out – a clear-out, let sb down – a letdown, warm sth up – a warm-up, burn out – burnout

I had a **clear-out** because I needed more space for some new equipment.

A friend of mine took a year out to avoid **burnout**.

In such words, the stress falls on the 'verb' part.

- **adverbial and prepositional particle + verb**: bring up → upbringing, pour down → downpour, set out → outset, put in → input

Please, allow me to say a few words at the **outset**.

They had the greatest **input** into our company

In such words, the stress falls on the 'particle' part.

• Adjectives

- **adverbial/prepositional particle + verb + -ing**: put off → off-putting, lift up → uplifting, stand out → outstanding

Our teacher told us an **uplifting** story.

For such **outstanding** work, you deserve a pay rise.

- **verb (Past Participle) + adverbial/prepositional particle**: run down → run-down, build up → built-up, wear out → worn-out

You are driving through a **built-up** area.

The boys grew up in this **run-down** building you see.

Note: remember to check the spelling of such nouns and adjectives in a dictionary before you use them.

- 1 Rewrite the sentences replacing the underlined verb with the correct form of a phrasal verb from the box. There is one extra verb.

(come up against come up with drop out of
get on with get out of look up to put up with)

- 1 You should not tolerate such working conditions.
- 2 I try to avoid early shifts if I can.
- 3 Two students quit the course.
- 4 Of course we encountered problems, but we found ways to deal with them.
- 5 We found an efficient way of dealing with applications.
- 6 He's aware that young athletes admire him as a role model.

- 2 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the sentences.

1 To prevent injury, make sure you _____ before you do any physical exercise.

A heat up B warm up C keep up

2 The position looked quite interesting, but the low salary _____.

A wore me out B looked me up C put me off

3 He doesn't know when he'll _____ completing the annual report as he has so much other work.

A get round to B get out of C get over

4 We've _____ printing paper. Could you order some more?

A come up against B made up for C run out of

5 I dislike dealing with difficult customers, but I can't _____ it as it's one of my duties.

A drop out of B get out of C get on with

- 3 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Hanna did well at school, but she decided not to ¹ _____ on to further education. Instead, she got a job in a local restaurant working in the kitchen. She got ² _____ really well with her colleagues and loved working as part of a team. Although she didn't have any formal qualifications, she ³ _____ up for that with her enthusiasm and willingness to learn. Over the next few years, she first worked her way up to become a chef and eventually went on to run her own restaurant. She now goes into schools to talk about her career path. She explains that people looked ⁴ _____ on her because of her lack of education. She talks about how she had to stand up ⁵ _____ herself and prove her abilities.

- 4 Complete the sentences using a noun or adjective form of the phrasal verb in brackets.

1 The film was a bit of a _____ – not as good as I'd expected. (let down)

2 We got caught in a complete _____ without an umbrella. (pour down)

3 It's important that everyone knows what's involved from the _____. (set out)

4 The smell is a bit _____, but it actually tastes really good. (put off)

5 The cupboard in my office is full of old paperwork, it needs a _____. (clear out)

6 He grew up in a rather _____ neighbourhood. (run down)

7 She had a fairly traditional _____ and education. (bring up)

8 Messi pulled a muscle during the _____ and couldn't play. (warm up)

6.2 Conditional clauses – alternatives to if

To form Zero, First, Second and Third Conditionals, we can use the following words and structures, apart from **if**:

- conjunction **unless**:
*I won't tell you what happened **if** you **don't** promise to keep it secret. → I won't tell you what happened **unless** you promise to keep it secret.*
- conjunction **provided (that)/providing (that)**:
*You can go with us **if** you pay for your own meals. → You can go with us, **provided that** you pay for your own meals.*
- expressions **Imagine ...** or **Suppose/Supposing ...** used in questions:
*If someone published a private email from you on Facebook, would you be angry? → **Imagine/Suppose/Supposing** someone published a private email from you on Facebook, would you be angry?*

Inversion

- We use inversion in formal language (mostly in writing) to emphasise the rhetorical effect of the sentence.
- We can use inversion in sentences with the auxiliary verbs *were* and *had*, and the verb form *were* is also used with the first and third person singular. In order to transform a conditional clause using inversion, we do not use *if*, but start the sentence with the auxiliary verb:
*If it **were** my photograph, I wouldn't let anyone publish it. → **Were** it my photograph, I would not let anyone publish it.*
*If I **had considered** all the aspects more carefully, I would probably have made the right decision. → **Had** I **considered** all the aspects more carefully, I would probably have made the right decision.*
- We can also use inversion with *should* if we want to say that the condition is rather improbable. In such cases the conditional clause must first be transformed into a more formal sentence using *should* + infinitive, which replaces the verb in the Present Simple. At the next step we use inversion, starting the sentence with *should* and omitting *if*:
*If you **are dissatisfied** with the product, you are entitled to a refund. (the least formal) → If you **should be** dissatisfied with the product, you are entitled to a refund. (more formal) → **Should** you **be** dissatisfied with the product, you are entitled to a refund. (the most formal)*
- When using inversion, we do not use contractions with negatives in the dependent clauses:
*If I **hadn't told** the police the truth, an innocent person would have been arrested → **Had** I **not told** the police the truth, an innocent person would have been arrested.*

1 Choose the correct option.

- 1 I won't help you *if / unless* you stop misleading me.
- 2 I'll lend you the book *providing / supposing* you give it back to me on Friday.
- 3 You would never have read the news story *unless / if* I hadn't sent you the link.
- 4 *Providing / Supposing* I refused to tamper with the picture, what would you do then?
- 5 *Imagine / Provided* you had your own TV show, what would it be about?
- 6 *Had I not / Hadn't I* distorted the truth, there would have been even more trouble.
- 7 *Should / If* you be unhappy with the portrait, you can always get a photo taken.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to four words including the word in capitals.

- 1 I don't generally believe a news story online if it isn't from a reputable source. **UNLESS**
I don't generally believe a news story online _____ a reputable source.
- 2 You can only use statistics in your essay if you state where they're from. **PROVIDED**
You can include statistics in your essay _____ where they're from.
- 3 If a company used your image in an advert, what would you do? **SUPPOSE**
_____ your image in an advert, what would you do?
- 4 We won't publish someone's photo unless we get their permission first. **IF**
We will only publish someone's photo _____ their permission first.
- 5 If someone posted lies about you on social media, how would you feel? **IMAGINE**
_____ about you on social media, how would you feel?
- 6 Everything should be okay unless it rains. **PROVIDING**
Everything should be okay _____ rain.

3 Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm sure that, _____ (here / she / today / were), she'd be shocked by this behaviour.
- 2 _____ (had / used / you) a stronger password, your account might not have been hacked.
- 3 _____ (customers / need / should) further help, there's a customer service desk in store.
- 4 _____ (contacted / had / not / someone) the media, the story wouldn't have become public.
- 5 _____ (we / to / use / were) his real name in the story, he might be put in danger.
- 6 Don't hesitate to call me, _____ (arise / ever / problem / should / the same) again.

6.5 Mixed conditionals

We can mix Second and Third Conditional forms, creating mixed conditional sentences of Type I or Type II.

Mixed conditionals Type I

If + Past Simple, would/wouldn't have + Past Participle

We use Type I mixed conditionals to speculate about permanent states or situations which had a result in the past, and the verb form *were* can be also used with the first and third person singular:

*If Sergio **didn't speak** English with an Italian accent, he **wouldn't have been recognised** and arrested last month.* (But because he speaks with an accent, he was arrested.)

*If I **was/were taller**, I **would have got** the main role in the school play a year ago.* (But I didn't get the role because I'm not taller.)

Mixed conditionals Type II

If + Past Perfect, would/wouldn't + infinitive

We use Type II mixed conditionals to speculate about past situations which didn't happen, and this has certain effects or consequences in the present:

*If she **hadn't changed her job** two years ago, Gina **wouldn't be** so unhappy now.* (But she did and now she is unhappy.)

*He **would be** a free man now if the police **had stopped** looking for him then.* (But the police didn't stop looking and he isn't free.)

As with all types of conditionals, we can use *could*, *might* or *should* instead of *would* in mixed conditional sentences.

1 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 If someone had proofread the article, | ☐ |
| 2 She probably wouldn't have got it wrong | ☐ |
| 3 If he wrote a bit more slowly, | ☐ |
| 4 The text would be more natural | ☐ |
| 5 If they checked their facts, | ☐ |
| 6 They could reach a wider audience | ☐ |
- a if they'd paid for a proper translator.
b if she was more willing to ask for advice.
c if they'd created an English version of their website.
d he might have made fewer spelling mistakes.
e it wouldn't contain so many errors.
f they'd have known the figures were out of date.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use mixed conditionals.

- If you _____ (not move), the photo _____ (not be) so blurred.
- Jared _____ (be) a much better actor today if he _____ (take) lessons when he was younger.
- The paper _____ (not report) the story if it _____ (not involve) a celebrity.
- If you _____ (not eat) so much for dinner, you _____ (feel) sick now.
- She _____ (not be) angry with you now if you _____ (tell) her the truth this morning.
- If Gina _____ (be) a better liar, they _____ (might/believe) the story she told them.

3 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the text.

Scrolling through your social media feed, it's easy to think that everyone's holidays are perfect. However, if those same people ¹ _____ so selective about what they shared, the impression would be very different. For example, you see a shot of your friend sitting on a beach in the sun, but if they'd taken a picture a few hours earlier, it ² _____ grey clouds. Or you see them alone looking out at a stunning view, but if they had turned the camera round just a few degrees, it ³ _____ crowds of other tourists. Personally, I like to have a more realistic record of my travels. If I had only captured the 'picture perfect' moments of my recent trip to Asia, I ⁴ _____ laugh at some of the disasters now. If I ⁵ _____ photographic evidence of me walking through water up to my knees when the monsoon rain arrived early, my friends just wouldn't believe my story.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 A hadn't been | B haven't been | C wouldn't be |
| 2 A will show | B would show | C will have shown |
| 3 A would reveal | B had revealed | C reveals |
| 4 A didn't | B wouldn't be able to | C wouldn't have been able to |
| 5 A hadn't got | B didn't get | C haven't got |

4 Rewrite the two sentences as a single sentence using a mixed conditional.

- My dad threw away the receipt. I can't take the T-shirt back to the shop. **If my dad**
- Maria's not very tall. She couldn't become a professional basketball player. **If Maria**
- The editor didn't give me his contact details. I can't send him copies of the photos. **If the editor**
- The venue doesn't have good public transport links. Lots of people drove to the concert. **Fewer people**
- The signs at the airport aren't very clear. We got lost and missed our flight. **If the signs**
- The organiser didn't book tickets in advance. We're standing in this long queue. **We**
- We didn't take your advice. We're in trouble. **If we**
- Lucy is very shy. She didn't ask for a promotion. **She**
- He doesn't get good roles. He didn't go to drama school. **If he**
- I didn't see the film because I don't like the leading actor. **I**

6.7 Compound nouns and adjectives

Compound nouns

Compound nouns are usually made up of two words. The first word describes or modifies the second word, e.g. *time travel* (= travel in time) and *travel time* (= travel duration).

Compound nouns structures include:

- **noun + noun:**
*We always watch a **news bulletin** first thing in the morning.*
- **adjective + noun:**
*Everybody should be interested at least a little bit in **foreign affairs**.*
- **verb -ing + noun:**
*Have you seen my **reading glasses**?*
- **preposition + noun:**
*Our local radio station is located **on the outskirts** of town.*
- nouns derived from phrasal verbs:
*Don't forget to ring me if you need any **backup**.*

Compound nouns are written as one word, two separate words or two words with a hyphen.

Compound adjectives

Compound adjective structures include:

- **numeral + noun:**
*We were extremely tired after the **twenty-hour flight** to Australia.*
- **adjective + noun:**
*The setting of the film is **present-day London**.*
- **noun + adjective:**
*The evening **blood-red sun** promises good weather the next day.*
- **noun/adjective/adverb + -ed/-ing participle:**
*It was such a **heart-warming message**.
I **got tongue-tied** when I saw that so many people came to hear me speak.*
- **verb + preposition/adverb:**
*Nowadays, there are a lot of **made-up stories** on social media.*

Compound adjectives are usually hyphenated.

Some compound adjectives are made from more than two words, e.g. *fifteen-year-old*, *state-of-the-art*.

Note: the noun in a compound adjective is usually singular:
two-minute conversation NOT ~~two-minutes conversation~~
flat-footed NOT ~~flat-footed~~

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

(actual affairs art breaking commercial)
present science stop

- 1 People now learn about the latest _____ news via social media.
- 2 Our journalists cover both domestic news and foreign _____.
- 3 People are fed up with the non_____ coverage of the elections.
- 4 They use state-of-the-_____ camera technology to capture the action.
- 5 After the _____ break, we'll hear from our reporter on the scene.
- 6 This ancient tradition is still practised in _____-day Turkey.

2 Replace the underlined phrase in the first sentence with an appropriate compound adjective in the second one.

- 1 They've produced a video that lasts for five minutes.
They've produced a _____ video.
- 2 We're using a name we made up to protect the woman's identity.
We're using a _____ name to protect the woman's identity.
- 3 People had to walk through water that was as high as their waist to get to safety.
People had to walk through _____ water to get to safety.
- 4 The hospital has an emergency department that is open for twenty-four hours a day.
The hospital has a _____ emergency department.
- 5 We've created a new online booking system that's very easy for people to use.
We've created a new _____ online booking system.

3 Choose the correct option.

- 1 Ford, the US *car company* / *company car*, is planning to open a factory in the town.
- 2 The job also comes with a *car company* / *company car* and private health insurance.
- 3 There's a jug of *tap water* / *water tap* on the table or you can order mineral water.
- 4 There's an outside *tap water* / *water tap* we use to water the garden.
- 5 If *time travel* / *travel time* were possible, I'd go back to Ancient Egypt.
- 6 The new high-speed rail link cuts *time travel* / *travel time* to two hours.
- 7 You turn off the main road and go down a small *roadside* / *side road*.
- 8 A group of schoolchildren were standing by the *roadside* / *side road* waiting for a bus.

7.2 Advanced passive forms

Passive forms with modal structures

We can use the Passive:

- with modal verbs in the present (**modal verb + be + Past Participle**):
The project **must be completed** by tomorrow.
Mobile phones **may be used** as directed by the staff.
- with modal verbs in the past (**modal verb + have been + Past Participle**):
The competition **should have been cancelled** after the accident. (But it wasn't, and the competition continued).
The server **couldn't have been repaired** properly yesterday. (And it still isn't working properly).
Her Facebook profile **must have been removed** because I can't find it.

Passive forms with verbs that take two objects

- Some verbs, e.g. *ask, bring, buy, give, hand, offer, pay, promise, sell, send, show, teach, tell*, etc. can take a direct and an indirect object.
They promised **a bonus and a pay rise** (indirect object) to **John** (direct object).
The pupils gave **the teacher** (direct object) **a bunch of flowers**. (indirect object)
- Depending on what we want to emphasise, we can form passive statements by beginning with either the direct or the indirect object:
A bonus and a pay rise **were promised** to John. (indirect object becomes the subject with emphasis on 'a bonus and a pay rise'):
John **was promised** a bonus and a pay rise. (direct object becomes the subject with emphasis on 'John')
A bunch of flowers **was given** to the teacher by the pupils. (indirect object becomes the subject with emphasis on 'a bunch of flowers')
The teacher **was given** a bunch of flowers by the pupils. (direct object becomes the subject with emphasis on 'the teacher').

Passive forms with verbs + -ing and verbs + to infinitive

- To form the Passive of verbs and phrases followed by a gerund, e.g. *be interested in, can't stand, don't mind, enjoy, get tired of, hate, like/dislike, love, miss*, etc., we use **verb/phrase + being + Past Participle**:
My IT teacher **doesn't mind being asked** millions of questions.
I **got tired of being** constantly criticised.
- To form the Passive of verbs and phrases followed by to + infinitive, e.g. *can't afford, choose, decide, hope, need, prefer, pretend, refuse, want, would like*, etc., we use **verb/phrase + to be + Past Participle**:
Millions of people **hope to be cured** of the disease.
At some point your son will **need to be told** the truth.
- To form the Passive of the phrase *make sb do sth* we use **form of be + made + to infinitive**:
My mother **made me clean** the bathroom and the kitchen. (active sentence)
I **was made to clean** the bathroom and the kitchen (by my mother). (passive sentence)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verb **be** and the verbs in brackets.

- Your phone might _____ (set) to silent mode. Have a look in the settings.
- These samples can't _____ (checked) properly. There are far too many errors.
- The laptop must _____ (leave) on overnight. The battery's completely dead.
- The volume can _____ (adjust) using the button on the side of the tablet.
- All mobile devices should _____ (switch) to flight mode during the flight.
- When the drug was originally developed, these side effects couldn't _____ (predict).

2 Put the words in brackets in the correct order to complete the sentences.

- Hopefully, _____ (an email / been / everyone / has / sent) with a link to the video.
- They claim _____ (made / they / to / sign / were) the contract without reading it first.
- Customers said _____ (any / been / explanation / had / not / offered / they) for the delay.
- Remember that I _____ (be / from / laptops / need / removed / to / your bag) at security check.
- _____ (already / been / had / more money / promised / the school) for science equipment.
- _____ (been / have / I / kept / should) more up-to-date with what was going on.
- The package _____ (customer / to / been / must / the / sent / have) by now.
- Honestly, _____ (stand / I / interrupted / can't / being) when I'm concentrating on my work.

3 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use up to four words including the word in capitals.

- It is a bad idea not to address all of the issues. **OUGHT**
All of the issues _____ addressed.
- Everybody could hear the music despite my closing the windows. **COULD**
The music _____ despite my closing the windows.
- She had shown me the password for the site the previous afternoon. **HAD**
I _____ the password for the site the previous afternoon.
- They said that I mustn't surf the Internet. **TOLD**
I _____ surf the Internet.
- I don't like it when someone orders me around. **BEING**
I dislike _____ around.
- The babysitter made the kids go to bed early. **MADE**
The children _____ to bed early.

7.5 Passive reporting structures

To talk about general opinions and views, we use verbs such as *agree, believe, claim, consider, expect, feel, hope, know, report, say, think, understand*, etc. and the following structures:

• it + passive verb (present or past) + that:

People claim that optimists live longer. → **It is claimed that optimists live longer.**

People believed that mathematics was the link between the supernatural and the world of men. → **It was believed that mathematics was the link between the supernatural and the world of men.**

• subject + passive verb (present or past) + to infinitive:

Computer scientists consider wearable technology to be the future of computing. → **Wearable technology is considered to be the future of computing.**

Doctors knew that almonds protected against diabetes. → **Almonds were known to protect against diabetes.**

The infinitive may also be replaced by **be + Present/Past Participle**:

They expect that over three million smartphones will be sold. → **Over three million smartphones are expected to be sold.**

People thought that the Ministry of Health was preparing new regulations. → **The Ministry of Health was thought to be preparing new regulations.**

• subject + passive verb (present or past) + to have + Past Participle

Experts estimate that the earthquake has killed more than 1,000 people. → **The earthquake is estimated to have killed more than 1,000 people.**

The press previously reported that the company's profit had reached £100 million. → **The company's profit was previously reported to have reached £100 million.**

• there + passive verb (present or past) + to be:

Analysts expect that there will be a rise in the number of jobs offered across the UK. → **There is expected to be a rise in the number of jobs offered across the UK.**

• there + passive verb (present or past) + to have been:

Historians think that there were over twenty inventors before Edison who invented various light sources. → **There are thought to have been over twenty inventors before Edison who invented various light sources.**

1 Choose the correct option.

- Some years ago, the university's Physics department was *considered that* / *was considered to be* the best in the country.
- The ancient treasure *was thought to lose* / *was thought to have been lost*, until it was unexpectedly discovered.
- Our government *is said to look* / *is said to be looking* into ways to lower carbon emissions.
- Chemicals from factory waste *are estimated to have caused* / *are estimating to cause* the death of thousands of river fish.
- A 5G network for faster communication *is expected to be established* / *is expected to establish* within months.

2 Rewrite the sentences using passive reporting structures.

- Many people consider Bob Dylan to be the most influential musician of the 20th century.
Bob Dylan _____.
- In February, newspapers reported that crime levels were falling faster in Poland than in other EU countries.
It _____.
- Linguists expect that by 2050 another 7,000 languages will disappear.
It _____.
- Nutritionists say that salmon is one of the most nutrient-dense foods there is.
Salmon _____.
- Palaeontologists think there were over 500 different species of dinosaur.
There _____.
- Experts believe that 1.24 million people were killed in road traffic accidents in 2010.
Road traffic accidents _____.
- We now know that cats are able to produce about ninety different sounds more than dogs.
Cats _____.

3 Choose the correct option, A, B or C to complete the text.

How safe are your passwords? In a recent study, 123456 ¹_____ the most commonly used password. In the study data, there ²_____ more than 23 million rather unimaginative people using it. The equally easy-to-guess 'password' ³_____ in the top five. Names of people, football teams and bands were popular because ⁴_____ they're easy to remember. However, people who use well-known words or names as passwords ⁵_____ themselves at high risk of being hacked. A string of three random words together ⁶_____ a strong password that will best protect you from fraud.

- A was found that it was
B is found to have been
C was found to be
- A showed to have been
B was shown to be
C were shown to be
- A was reported that it appeared
B was reported to appear
C is reported to be appearing
- A it is thought that
B there were thought
C were thought that
- A are said to be putting
B are said that they put
C are said to have been put
- A it is considered that it makes
B is considered to be made
C is considered to make

7.7 Easily confused words

- Words that look or sound similar but have different meanings, e.g.:

cite (quote), **site** (place), **sight** (view)

conscious (aware/awake), **conscientious** (dutiful)

dessert (something sweet), **desert** (dry land with no vegetation)

late (unpunctual), **lately** (recently)

principal (main/head teacher), **principle** (rule)

proceed (go ahead), **precede** (come first)

sensible (reasonable), **sensitive** (delicate)

weather (atmospheric conditions), **whether** (if)

The **principal** talked to the parents.

The **principle** of being a vegetarian is not eating meat.

- Words that look or sound similar and have similar meanings (and often belong to the same word family), e.g.:

alike (similar), **likely** (probable),

advise (give advice), **advice** (noun)

alone (on your own), **lone** (one), **lonely** (alone and unhappy)

assure (promise that sth will happen), **ensure** (make certain),

insure (provide insurance)

breathe (draw breath), **breath** (noun)

dependant (sb dependent on sth/sb else), **dependent** (needing sth to exist)

economic (related to the economy), **economical** (cost-effective)

effect (result), **affect** (influence sth/sb)

historical (relating to the past), **historic** (important as part of the past)

lay (put sth down, e.g. on a bed), **lie** (be placed flat, e.g. on a bed)

migrate (move), **immigrate** (move to another country),

emigrate (move out of a country)

raise (lift/move sth higher), **rise** (increase), **arise** (happen)

Please, **lay** your phones on the desks.

My grandfather likes to **lie** on the couch after lunch.

- Words that look or sound different but have similar meanings, e.g.:

after all, **finally**, **lastly**

eventually, **comprise**, **consist of**, **include**

occasion, **opportunity**

After all, it's simple.

Finally/Eventually, he started the car.

Finally/Lastly, add some salt.

The course **comprises/consists of** a coursebook and a CD.

The course **includes** a CD.

It was the only **opportunity**.

I bought it for a special **occasion**.

- False friends are words that look or sound similar to words in your language, but have different meanings, e.g.:

data (information):

I lost all the **data**.

date (a point in time):

I'd like to fix the **date**.

realise (know/understand):

Do you **realise** how dangerous it is?

carry out (do/perform):

We used to **carry out** a lot of experiments.

actually (in fact):

This flat looks smaller, but **actually** is bigger.

currently (now):

The company **currently** employs 1,000 people.

1 Complete the sentences with the words in capitals.

1 Maria works _____ studying wildlife in Alaska.

She admits to feeling _____ occasionally, but she loves her job. **ALONE / LONELY**

2 Of course, trains sometimes arrive a few minutes _____,

but on some routes _____, the delays have become extreme. **LATELY / LATE**

3 We _____ people to bring warm clothes, but

there are people who don't listen to _____ and turn up in shorts. **ADVISE / ADVICE**

4 At first _____ it looks just like an empty field,

but it's actually the _____ of one of Europe's most significant battles. **SITE / SIGHT**

5 If any significant issues _____, you should

_____ them with your manager later. **RAISE / ARISE**

6 Today our teacher is absent, so we're having a class

with the _____, who's a physicist. We're going to discuss the most important _____ of quantum physics. **PRINCIPAL / PRINCIPLE**

7 Unfortunately, the _____ being what it is

today, we won't be able to go hiking. We'll see tomorrow _____ it will be safer to hike.

WHETHER / WEATHER

8 We need to _____ that all equipment is

cleaned and put away after use. The lab director wants us to _____ him that we'll leave the lab tidy.

Otherwise, he won't let us in again. **ASSURE / ENSURE**

2 Complete the words in the text with the correct endings.

VOLUNTEER RESEARCHERS NEEDED

We can't live without water, but for those living in

¹ des_____ regions with little or no rainfall, water is a constant challenge. What's more, these areas are

typically more ² sens_____ to the effects of climate change. Communities here often have very limited

access to clean water. Our project is looking to recruit hardworking, ³ consc_____ volunteers to help design

water filtering systems that are both effective and

⁴ econ_____ to run. This would be ideal work

experience for engineering students. Our research is entirely ⁵ dependen_____ on charitable donations, so we

aren't able to offer payment, but you'll gain valuable experience putting the engineering ⁶ prin_____ you've

studied into practice, as well as making a really valuable contribution to this vital area of development.

8.2 Unreal past and regrets – wish, if only, it's time and would rather

Present and future

- To express regret about a present situation which seems to be impossible to change, we use **wish/if only + subject + Past Simple**:
I wish I knew more about ecology.
I wish oceans weren't used as rubbish tips.
If only we could save sea animals from starvation.
If only I didn't have to work so much.
- To say that we believe somebody should do something in the present or in the near future, we use **it's (high) time + subject + Past Simple**:
It's high time people stopped driving cars in cities.
It's high time you started recycling your rubbish.
- To talk what we would prefer somebody to do in the present or in the future, we use **would rather + subject + Past Simple**:
I'd rather we switched to organic fruit and vegetables.
My mum would rather I studied more.

Past

- To express regret about a past situation, we use **wish/if only + subject + Past Perfect**:
I wish we had done more to prevent this tragedy.
My sister wishes we hadn't moved to this area, but I'm happy about it.
If only the city council hadn't reduced the funds for environmental protection.
If only I had listened to you when you advised me not to go on that expedition!

1 Choose the correct option.

- If only I lost / hadn't lost / didn't lose my camera on the beach.
- It's high time we stop / stopped / had stopped dumping waste in the seas.
- My back's all red. I wish I had / did / would put more sun cream on.
- I'd rather she couldn't / didn't / won't go alone, to be honest.
- If only I hadn't to / had to / didn't have to go camping. I hate sleeping in tents.
- I wish you all knew / had known / know just how much effort I put into this trip.
- If only I had seen / saw / did see her earlier. I'd have asked her to join us.
- I'd rather we use / used / had used less plastic than we currently do.
- If only the fire doesn't destroy / didn't destroy / hadn't destroyed the forest.
- I wish I could / did / will do more to protect endangered species.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- If only more people _____ (leave) a patch of their garden to grow wild, it would help wildlife.
- So many products damage the environment. It's time consumers _____ (take) more interest in how the things they buy are made.
- It's difficult to know what products contain. I'd rather companies _____ (label) them more clearly.
- Some species are now at risk of extinction. I wish we _____ (do) more to protect them earlier.
- I wish supermarkets _____ (not/sell) fruit and vegetables wrapped in plastic.
- The new road blocks a migration route for animals. If only they _____ (consult) wildlife experts, it could have been avoided.
- We all contribute to pollution. It's high time we _____ (recognise) that fact.
- The heat is terrible! If only it _____ (not/be) so hot today!
- It sounds like the lecture you attended was fascinating. I wish I _____ (know) about it.
- I'd rather we _____ (not/discuss) the issue right now if you don't mind.

3 Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

(do know not assume not fly switch warn)

I love travelling, but lately I've become more conscious of my environmental footprint. When I look back on the amazing places I've visited, I have fond memories, but I also wish I ¹ _____ quite so many air miles. It's time more of us ² _____ to less polluting forms of transport. I've been trying to cut my air travel, but it's not always that easy. I wish big travel companies ³ _____ that everyone wants to fly. Of course, they don't offer other transport options, because they'd rather everyone ⁴ _____ the same to keep things simple. Researching different routes yourself can be fun, but it doesn't always work out. When I planned to take a ferry from Spain to Morocco last year, for example, I wish I ⁵ _____ that it sometimes gets cancelled in bad weather. I got stuck in Cádiz for two days and missed the train I'd booked from Tangier to Marrakesh. If only someone ⁶ _____ me about possible delays, I'd have waited to buy my train ticket when I arrived.

8.5 Emphasis – cleft sentences and inversion

In order to add emphasis to a sentence, we may use cleft sentences or inversion.

Cleft sentences

- Cleft sentences are formed from two parts, and usually start with the pronouns *what*, *it* or *all*. Although the meaning they convey could be expressed in a simpler way, cleft sentences are used to give emphasis to the person performing an action or to the place, time or reason of the action:

I love helping other people. → **What I really love** is helping other people.

The company covered up the scandal. → **What the company did was (to) cover up** the scandal.

I raised the subject of sewage being dumped into the river.

→ **It was me who raised** the subject of sewage being dumped into the river.

We helped the flood victims clean up the debris. → **All we did was (to) help** the flood victims clean up the debris.

You need love. → **All you need is** love.

Inversion

- We use inversion in sentences which start with negative adverbs, e.g. *never*, *rarely*, *seldom*, *hardly*, *barely*, *scarcely*, *no sooner* or phrases with *no* or *not*, e.g. *under no circumstances*, *on no condition*, *on no account*, *at no time*, *in no way*, *not until*, *not only*, etc. In these sentences an affirmative sentence takes on the order and verb form of a question, i.e.

negative adverb/phrase with no or not + auxiliary verb + subject + main verb:

He had never been so devastated. → **Never had he been** so devastated.

We rarely hear about such powerful mother and child bonds in animals. → **Rarely do we hear** about such powerful mother and child bonds in animals.

He had entered the house and the phone rang. → **No sooner had he entered** the house than the phone rang.

She had not only survived the disaster, but she saved two other people as well. → **Not only had she survived** the disaster, but she saved two other people as well.

You are not permitted to leave the building under any circumstances. → **Under no circumstances are you permitted** to leave the building.

1 Match the sentence halves.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 The figure that surprised me | ☐ |
| 2 What's happened in some countries | ☐ |
| 3 Never have our rivers | ☐ |
| 4 It's people in the hottest parts of the world | ☐ |
| 5 Not only | ☐ |
| 6 What many of us see as a basic necessity | ☐ |

- a is the population has migrated to cities putting pressure on resources.
- b who are already experiencing water shortages.
- c is becoming a luxury in some regions.
- d was the amount of water wasted through leaking pipes.
- e been under such pressure from human water use.
- f is water scarce in these areas, but it's frequently contaminated.

2 Choose the correct option.

- All / It's / What's* meat production that accounts for most of the world's agricultural land use, representing around 80 percent of farmland worldwide.
- Not only *are / did / do* cattle take up land themselves, but farmland is also used to grow animal feed.
- It's / What / What's* many people find shocking is that huge areas of forest are being cleared just to grow grain to feed to cows.
- In some parts of the world, *what farmers are doing / are doing is / do are* cutting down previously wildlife rich forests just to keep up with our demand for meat.
- It's / What's / What* this loss of habitat that especially concerns environmentalists.
- With a growing population and changing eating habits, never before *has demand for meat been / has been demand for meat / is demand for meat* so high.
- To protect natural habitats, *all / it's / what's* we need to do is declare them areas for conservation.
- What this teen eco-warrior is doing is / is doing / does* raising awareness about a problem that adults should be dealing with.
- What / It's / What's* increased industrialisation that has greatly contributed to the problem of global warming.

3 Rewrite the sentences changing the emphasis.

- Tess promised to help tidy up the garden.
It was _____.
- We are only handing out leaflets in protest.
All _____.
- She has never been so disappointed by the results.
Never _____.
- You are not going out in that raging storm under any circumstances.
Under _____.
- The protestors started the violence.
What _____.
- We rarely see such extreme temperatures at this time of year.
Rarely _____.
- They had only just got back to the flat when they heard the news.
Hardly _____.
- I don't believe in telling lies.
What _____.
- He asked the question and answered it too.
Not _____.
- I can't stand your ignorance of the issue.
It's _____.

8.7 Word families – prefixes

Prefixes

Prefixes may be added to the same root word to create new words, e.g. **take**, **retake** and **overtake**.

Common prefixes:

- **un-, in-, dis-, il-, im-, ir-** are usually added to adjectives, to create a negative adjective.
The prefix **il-** precedes adjectives beginning with **l-**, **ir-** precedes adjectives beginning **r-**, while **im-** goes with adjectives beginning with **m-** or **p-**: **unwilling, incurable, disobedient, illegible, immoral, impatient, irrelevant**
- **un-, dis-** are used with verbs to create opposites: **unlock, discontinue**
- **re-** means to do something again: **reapply, rebuild**
- **hyper-** means something extreme: **hypertension, hypersensitive**
- **mis-** means something bad or wrong: **misunderstand, misbehave, mismanagement**
- **on-/off-** denote either a specific place, or 'not the case': **onshore, offshore, on-site, off-site**
- **out-** often precedes verbs and means 'more than or better': **outlive, outnumber**
- **over-/under-** mean either 'too much' or 'not enough': **overdeveloped, underdeveloped, overweight, underweight**
- **anti-/pro-** are used for 'against' or 'in favour': **antisocial, anti-ageing, pro-family, pro-ecological**
- **pre-/post-** are used to describe that something happened before or after something else: **preschool, pre-tax, post-tax, post-match**
- **self-** describes actions done to or by yourself: **self-control, self-portrait**
- **sub-** means something inferior or lower: **sub-standard, sub-zero**
- **up-/down-** denotes an increase, improvement or fall: **upturn, downturn**

1 Complete the words in the sentences with appropriate prefixes.

- 1 We can cut waste by __using plastic bags and bottles rather than throwing them away.
- 2 The number of kids cycling to school has grown and they now __number those being dropped off by car.
- 3 It's hard to persuade people to leave their cars at home because they're __willing to give up the convenience of driving.
- 4 There's been an __turn in demand for organic products as people become more eco-conscious.
- 5 In the winter, the area experiences heavy snow and __zero temperatures.
- 6 People are naturally __patient and they don't like having to wait for things.
- 7 We __estimated the number of people who might come and we soon ran out of chairs.
- 8 All the students took a __-course test to decide which class they should join.

2 Choose the correct option.

- 1 The builders painted the room the wrong colour and they had to *undo* / *redo* the work.
- 2 Workers are asking for more money, complaining they're *overpaid* / *underpaid*.
- 3 We have strict security to prevent the *misuse* / *reuse* of confidential information.
- 4 People get frustrated by politicians' *inability* / *disability* to give a direct answer.
- 5 The hall is a *multi-purpose* / *repurpose* space that can be used for all kinds of events.
- 6 The books are aimed at *preschool* / *postschool* children aged between three and five.
- 7 In private, she's quite shy; the complete opposite of her *offstage* / *onstage* personality.
- 8 A group of *anti-nuclear* / *pro-nuclear* activists were protesting against plans for a new power station.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in capitals.

- 1 Inspectors found the company had _____ safety training for staff. **ADEQUATE**
- 2 It's a very _____ community, with students from all over the world. **CULTURE**
- 3 The wildfires spread and quickly became _____. **CONTROL**
- 4 It seems _____ now that we'll get finished by the deadline. **PROBABLE**
- 5 His arguments are completely _____ and don't make any sense. **LOGICAL**
- 6 They were living in _____ conditions with no electricity or clean water. **STANDARD**
- 7 Such high levels of air pollution are clearly _____ and need to be tackled urgently. **SAFE**
- 8 All kinds of wildlife is now treating this _____ factory as a home. **USED**

4 Complete the text using the correct forms of the words in brackets.

The Earth is in grave danger from decades of

¹ _____ (development) that has resulted in the destruction of forests and other habitats. Such ² _____ (manage) of our planet cannot be tolerated any longer. If governments continue to act so ³ _____ (responsible), not only will all animal life face extinction, but humans will as well. Politicians who are ⁴ _____ (willing) to put the survival of the planet above short-term profits should be ashamed of themselves. In order to ⁵ _____ (build) confidence in our governments, they should make greater efforts to fight global warming and pollution.

PRONOUNS AND NUMERALS

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Personal pronoun as a subject	Personal pronoun as an object	Possessive pronoun (+noun)	Possessive pronoun (no noun)
I'm a student.	Come with me .	It's my house.	It's mine .
Have you got a cat?	I like you .	It's your bike.	It's yours .
He works at home.	Can you help him ?	It's his book.	It's his .
She's been to Prague.	Listen to her .	It's her room.	It's hers .
Is it a famous city?	I can't find it .	Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.	—
We live in Poland.	Wait for us .	It's our tablet.	It's ours .
You can't sit here.	Can I talk to you ?	It's your car.	It's yours .
Are they working?	Do you know them ?	It's their money.	It's theirs .

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS, INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS, RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Demonstrative		Interrogative	Relative
Singular	Plural		
this that	these those	What? Who? Whose? Which? Where? When? Why? How? (How often? How long? How far? How much? How many?)	who which that whose when where

NUMERALS

Numbers: 1 – 100

Cardinal numbers	Ordinal numbers	Cardinal numbers	Ordinal numbers
1 – one	first (1st)	20 – twenty	twentieth (20th)
2 – two	second (2nd)	21 – twenty-one	twenty-first (21st)
3 – three	third (3rd)	22 – twenty-two	twenty-second (22nd)
4 – four	fourth (4th)	23 – twenty-three	twenty-third (23rd)
5 – five	fifth (5th)	24 – twenty-four	twenty-fourth (24th)
6 – six	sixth (6th)	25 – twenty-five	twenty-fifth (25th)
7 – seven	seventh (7th)	26 – twenty-six	twenty-sixth (26th)
8 – eight	eighth (8th)	27 – twenty-seven	twenty-seventh (27th)
9 – nine	ninth (9th)	28 – twenty-eight	twenty-eighth (28th)
10 – ten	tenth (10th)	29 – twenty-nine	twenty-ninth (29th)
11 – eleven	eleventh (11th)	30 – thirty	thirtieth (30th)
12 – twelve	twelfth (12th)	40 – forty	fortieth (40th)
13 – thirteen	thirteenth (13th)	50 – fifty	fiftieth (50th)
14 – fourteen	fourteenth (14th)	60 – sixty	sixtieth (60th)
15 – fifteen	fifteenth (15th)	70 – seventy	seventieth (70th)
16 – sixteen	sixteenth (16th)	80 – eighty	eightieth (80th)
17 – seventeen	seventeenth (17th)	90 – ninety	ninetieth (90th)
18 – eighteen	eighteenth (18th)	100 – one/a hundred	hundredth (100th)
19 – nineteen	nineteenth (19th)	101 – one/a hundred and one	hundred and first (101st)

Numbers over 100

1,000 – one/a thousand
3,555 – three thousand, five hundred and fifty-five
56,223 – fifty-six thousand, two hundred and twenty-three
725,000 – seven hundred and twenty-five thousand
1,000,000 – one/a million
1,000,000,000 – one/a billion

IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle
be [bi:]	was/were [wɒz/wɜ:]	been [bi:n]
beat [bi:t]	beat [bi:t]	beaten ['bi:tən]
become [br'kʌm]	became [br'keɪm]	become [br'kʌm]
begin [br'gɪn]	began [br'gæn]	begun [br'gʌn]
bite [baɪt]	bit [bɪt]	bitten ['bɪtən]
bleed [bli:d]	bled [bled]	bled [bled]
blow [bləʊ]	blew [blu:]	blown [bləʊn]
break [breɪk]	broke [brəʊk]	broken ['brəʊkən]
bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]
broadcast ['brɔ:dka:st]	broadcast ['brɔ:dka:st]	broadcast ['brɔ:dka:st]
build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]
burn [bɜ:n]	burned [bɜ:nd]/burnt [bɜ:nt]	burned [bɜ:nd]/burnt [bɜ:nt]
burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]
buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]
can [kæn]	could [kʊd]	been able to [bi:n 'eɪbl tə]
catch [kætʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃəʊz]	chosen ['tʃəʊzn]
come [kʌm]	came [keɪm]	come [kʌm]
cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]	cost [kɒst]
cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]
deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]
dig [dɪg]	dug [dʌg]	dug [dʌg]
do [du:]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]
dream [dri:m]	dreamed [dri:md]/ dreamt [dremt]	dreamed [dri:md]/ dreamt [dremt]
drink [drɪnk]	drank [drænk]	drunk [drʌnk]
drive [draɪv]	drove [drəʊv]	driven ['drɪvn]
eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tən]
fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen ['fɔ:lən]
feed [fi:d]	fed [fed]	fed [fed]
feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	felt [felt]
fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]
find [faɪnd]	found [faʊnd]	found [faʊnd]
fit [fɪt]	fit [fɪt]	fit [fɪt]
fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	flown [fləʊn]
forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɒt]	forgotten [fə'gɒtn]
forgive [fə'gɪv]	forgave [fə'geɪv]	forgiven [fə'gɪvən]
freeze [fri:z]	froze [frəʊz]	frozen ['frəʊzən]
get [get]	got [gɒt]	got [gɒt]
give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	given ['gɪvən]
go [gəʊ]	went [went]	gone [gɒn]/been [bi:n]
grow [grəʊ]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəʊn]
hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]
have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]
hear [hɪə]	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]
hide [haɪd]	hid [hɪd]	hidden ['hɪdn]
hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]
hold [həʊld]	held [held]	held [held]
hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]
keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]
know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	known [nəʊn]
lead [li:d]	led [led]	led [led]
learn [lɜ:n]	learned [lɜ:nd]/ learnt [lɜ:nt]	learned [lɜ:nd]/ learnt [lɜ:nt]
leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle
lend [lend]	lent [lent]	lent [lent]
let [let]	let [let]	let [let]
lie [laɪ]	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]
light [laɪt]	lit [lɪt]	lit [lɪt]
lose [lu:z]	lost [lɒst]	lost [lɒst]
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]
overtake [,əʊvə'teɪk]	overtook [,əʊvə'tʊk]	overtaken [,əʊvə'teɪkən]
pay [peɪ]	paid [peɪd]	paid [peɪd]
put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]
ride [raɪd]	rode [rəʊd]	ridden ['rɪdn]
ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]
rise [raɪz]	rose [rəʊz]	risen ['rɪzən]
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]
say [seɪ]	said [sed]	said [sed]
see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]
seek [si:k]	sought [sɔ:t]	sought [sɔ:t]
sell [sel]	sold [səʊld]	sold [səʊld]
send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]
set [set]	set [set]	set [set]
shake [ʃeɪk]	shook [ʃʊk]	shaken [ʃeɪkən]
shine [ʃaɪn]	shone [ʃɒn]	shone [ʃɒn]
show [ʃəʊ]	showed [ʃəʊd]	shown [ʃəʊn]
shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]
sing [sɪŋ]	sang [sæŋ]	sung [sʌŋ]
sit [sɪt]	sat [sæt]	sat [sæt]
sleep [sli:p]	slept [slept]	slept [slept]
slide [slaɪd]	slid [slɪd]	slid [slɪd]
smell [smel]	smelled [smeld]/ smelt [smelt]	smelled [smeld]/ smelt [smelt]
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spəʊk]	spoken ['spəʊkən]
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]
spill [spɪl]	spilled [spɪld]/spilt [spɪlt]	spilled [spɪld]/spilt [spɪlt]
split [splɪt]	split [splɪt]	split [splɪt]
spread [spred]	spread [spred]	spread [spred]
spring [sprɪŋ]	sprang [spræŋ]	sprung [sprʌŋ]
stand [stænd]	stood [stʊd]	stood [stʊd]
steal [sti:l]	stole [stəʊl]	stolen ['stəʊlən]
stick [stɪk]	stuck [stʌk]	stuck [stʌk]
sting [stɪŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]
strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]
swell [swel]	swelled [sweld]	swollen ['swəʊlən]
swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]
take [teɪk]	took [tʊk]	taken ['teɪkən]
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]
tear [tiə]	tore [tɔ:]	torn [tɔ:n]
tell [tel]	told [təʊld]	told [təʊld]
think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]
throw [θrəʊ]	threw [θru:]	thrown [θrəʊn]
understand [,ʌndə'stænd]	understood [,ʌndə'stʊd]	understood [,ʌndə'stʊd]
upset [ʌp'set]	upset [ʌp'set]	upset [ʌp'set]
wake [weɪk]	woke [wəʊk]	woken ['wəʊkən]
wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]
win [wɪn]	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]
write [raɪt]	wrote [rəʊt]	written ['rɪtn]

KEY TO PHONETIC SYMBOLS

CONSONANTS

p	pen, copy, happen
b	back, bubble, job
t	tea, city, button
d	day, ladder, odd
k	key, school, duck, cool
g	get, giggle, ghost
tʃ	church, match, nature
dʒ	judge, age, soldier
f	fat, coffee, tough, physics
v	view, heavy, move
θ	thing, author, path
ð	this, other, smooth
s	soon, cease, sister
z	zero, zone, rose, buzz
ʃ	ship, sure, station
ʒ	pleasure, vision
h	hot, whole, behind
m	more, hammer, sum
n	nice, know, funny, sun
ŋ	ring, long, thanks, sung
l	light, valley, feel
r	right, sorry, arrange
j	yet, use, beauty
w	wet, one, when, queen

VOWELS

ɪ	kit, bid, hymn
e	dress, bed
æ	bad, cat, trap
ɒ	lot, odd, wash
ʌ	love, but, duck
ʊ	foot, good, put
iː	sea, feel, machine
eɪ	face, day, steak
aɪ	price, high, try
ɔɪ	boy, choice
uː	two, blue, goose
əʊ	goat, show, no
aʊ	mouth, now
ɪə	near, here, serious
eə	fair, various, square
ɑː	start, father
ɔː	thought, law, north
ʊə	cure, poor
ɜː	nurse, stir
i	happy, radiation, glorious
ə	about, common
u	situation, annual, influence